

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 1 V3 (3).docx

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 ATLAS SkillTech University

Document Details

Submission ID

trn:oid::3618:127505126

Submission Date

Feb 4, 2026, 12:04 PM GMT+5:30

Download Date

Feb 4, 2026, 12:07 PM GMT+5:30

File Name

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 1 V3 (3).docx

File Size

330.7 KB

34 Pages

9,204 Words

55,411 Characters

1% Overall Similarity

The combined total of all matches, including overlapping sources, for each database.

Filtered from the Report

- ▶ Bibliography
- ▶ Quoted Text
- ▶ Cited Text
- ▶ Small Matches (less than 15 words)

Match Groups

- **5 Not Cited or Quoted 1%**
 Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- **0 Missing Quotations 0%**
 Matches that are still very similar to source material
- **0 Missing Citation 0%**
 Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- **0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
 Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 1% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 1% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Integrity Flags

0 Integrity Flags for Review

No suspicious text manipulations found.

Our system's algorithms look deeply at a document for any inconsistencies that would set it apart from a normal submission. If we notice something strange, we flag it for you to review.

A Flag is not necessarily an indicator of a problem. However, we'd recommend you focus your attention there for further review.

Match Groups

- 5 Not Cited or Quoted 1%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- 0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
- 0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- 0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 1% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 1% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Top Sources

The sources with the highest number of matches within the submission. Overlapping sources will not be displayed.

- Internet
www.coursehero.com <1%
- Internet
www.breakcold.com <1%
- Internet
sos-irunaveleia.org <1%
- Submitted works
Moneague College on 2023-12-05 <1%
- Internet
www.fastercapital.com <1%

Unit 1: SEO Foundations – Understanding Digital Marketing Basics

Learning Objectives:

1. Define digital marketing and describe its reach, importance, significance influence on business world.
2. Evaluate the link between digital and business transformation including how digital tools and platforms enable organizational change and innovation.
3. Differentiation of paid, owned and earned media and their impact on generating exposure, engagement and customer confidence.
4. Identify the elements of a digital marketing strategy – objectives, audience, message and metrics.
5. See how the sales funnel complements digital marketing to reveal how awareness, consideration, and conversion stages integrate with online campaigns.
6. Use digital marketing to point out and describe real world businesses ability to gain competitive advantage by adopting digital tools.

Content:

- 1.0 Introductory Caselet
- 1.1 Definition of Digital Marketing
- 1.2 Digital and Business Transformation
- 1.3 Paid, Owned, and Earned Media
- 1.4 Introduction to Digital Marketing Strategy
- 1.5 Sales Funnel & Digital Marketing Alignment
- 1.6 Summary
- 1.7 Key Terms
- 1.8 Descriptive Questions
- 1.9 References
- 1.10 Case Study

1.0 Introductory Caselet

Ritika, a marketing manager in the fashion retail company knew how to promote her brand until now through old-school advertising efforts—print ads in magazines and newspapers, billboards on highways, television commercials. For years, the tactics worked well, luring customers into brick-and-mortar stores. But ever since the emergence of e-commerce platforms and social media, Ritika witnessed a big change in consumer preferences. Instead, shopping behavior was influenced not just by newspaper advertisements but also by Instagram-inspired fashion trends, influencer YouTube reviews and peer recommendations from bloggers.

It was not long before the company's sales revenue started to plateau, while rival firms with more advanced online offerings grew at an even faster clip. Fearing the worst, when Ritika presented what would become a digital transformation plan, it finally clicked. With the design of its website, while obsessing over frictionless customer service. The company had fun content for both social and paid to target by demographic. They also asked satisfied buyers to leave feedback and testimonials, getting earned media from individuals who already trusted them.

The effect has been felt over time. Web traffic was up, so were online sales, and the brand's following on social media had blossomed. What started as basically a cutesy response to slow sales, instead ballooned into a multi-faceted digital marketing campaign that was fully integrated with our sales funnel — from top-of-funnel awareness via targeted advertising down through conversion-driving retargeting and email promotion.

Ritika's experience was an epiphany; about how digital marketing is not a replacement for advertising (or a "cheap" means to begin creating awareness for your brand). And it showed that paid, owned and earned media must be integrated for measured success.

Critical Thinking Question

If you were in Ritika's place, would you spend additional budget on paid media for immediate attention OR go with tactics of earned media like customer reviews or word-of-mouth over the long term? Justify your choice with reasoning.

1.1 Definition of Digital Marketing

1.1.1 Definition and Characteristics of Digital Marketing

Digital marketing is the advertisement of products, such as the company's services. Whereas with traditional marketing you're basically hitting the town with wild darts hoping to hit a bulls eye in your ad campaign. Digital marketing is defined as promoting of brands or products and services using digital distribution channels to reach consumers in a timely, relevant and cost effective manner.

Meaning of Digital Marketing

Fundamentally, digital marketing is about meeting businesses and customers where they are — at their internet-connected devices.

It's not all about ads, it's also about relationships and connecting with people and providing value in an online interaction. Digital marketing is a mix of technology and psychology, where you have to know how the customer behaves, what products they choose and when you should reach out with personalised messages.

Digital marketing is also data-driven. Every click, view and conversion is trackable across multiple channels, giving businesses the info they need to measure campaign success and adjust strategies on the fly. This sets it apart from classofar ways of doing things where measuring exact impact could frequently be challenging.

3 Scope of Digital Marketing

Search Engine Marketing (SEM) – This is the paid advertising on search engines such as Google and Bing to increase visibility and attract relevant traffic.

SEO (Search Engine Optimization) – Improving websites with the goal of having better ranking for specific keyword on search engines to gain more organic traffic.

Content Marketing – Writing, sharing and generally distributing valuable content like blogs, articles, videos or infographics to attract and retain customers.

Social Media Marketing: Utilizing Facebook, Instagram, LinkedIn, and Twitter to engage with customers or clients, sell product and services, and develop a community through your brand.

Email Marketing – Utilising customised emails that are targeted to create a relationship with the customer and re-engage them into purchasing more.

Influencer Marketing – Working with influential people to market products or services to their followers.

Affiliate Marketing – Getting affiliates (people who promote a product in return for commission) to sell your products.

Mobile Marketing – Engaging consumers via mobile apps, SMS campaigns or location-based promotions.

Analytics and Measurement – Leveraging tools such as Google Analytics to measure the campaign, track your customer through their journey and apply optimization strategies.

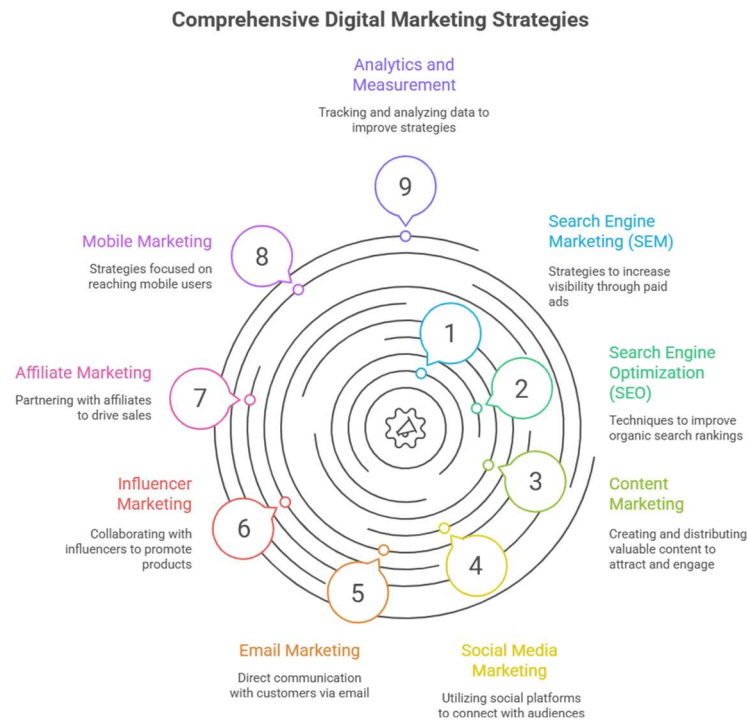


Figure 1.1

Extended Subpoints

- **Interaction:** In contrast to a traditional advertisement, digital marketing can be used for two-way interaction through Internet connectivity.
- **World-wide with Local Relevance:** Companies will be able to reach worldwide demographics all the while targeting specific profiles.
- **Personalization:** Technology makes possible highly targeted marketing campaigns that speak directly to a customer's particular situation.
- **Affordable – Digital is less expensive** compared to the traditional marketing mediums and offers a better return on investment.

In this sense digital marketing is different from traditional marketing, and to develop in the discipline we have a resource which can serve as a "guide" through those set of media implemented on-line, whose aim is to achieve strategic objectives respectively in an integrated market.

1.1.2 Digital Marketing and the modern day business traditional Businesses have also turned to digital marketing as an avenue into this new way of reaching customer through digital media which led to its growth.

In this interlinked world of today, digital marketing has become imperative for all kinds of businesses. Consumer behaviour has shifted and as people are spending more time online; both on browsing shopping and content interaction accesses. Businesses not keeping up with digital marketing have no choice but to invest in it due to the competitive pressure, harmful for their brand and customer relationship eventually.

Importance in Customer Reach

Global Access

Nowadays, through digital platforms the businesses can reach out to audience beyond borders. But it turns out even tiny companies can find customers around the globe without ever having to set up a physical store there.

Targeted Audience Engagement

Why digital marketing allows you to target specifically You can target specifically, and by demographics (age/ sex), interest based or online behavior. This helps to make certain campaigns are delivered to the people most likely to purchase.

24/7 Availability

Websites, apps and social media pages never close meaning business are open 24/7 to customers.

Importance in Business Growth

Cost-Effectiveness

Digital marketing is less expensive than print or TV ads and offers several low-cost choices such as pay-per-click options, advertising on social media platforms and email outreaches. Both of them are ROI-focused — even if you don't have a big budget to work with.

Performance Tracking Business can monitor performance of businesses including conversion rates and ROI etc with apps like analytics dashboards so that they bring in continuing improvements.

Sales Funnel Integration Digital marketing has touch points at every phase of the customer journey: Top-of-funnel awareness with search ads; mid-funnel consideration with content marketing; and bottom-of-funnel conversion through retargeting.

Importance in Customer Relationships

Personalized Experiences

Somewhere in the middle: Brands can use previous engagements to better inform their messages and try to create a more meaningful interaction with customers. Personalised product recommendations, for example are also driving greater interaction.

CommunityBuilding

A strong sense of community could be built around brands on social media, where people would feel like they belonged with the brand and everything it represented.

CustomerFeedbackandInsights Feedback about your business reviews, social media comments and polls allow us to better decisions by updating on the company's strategies.

Extended Subpoints

- Flexibility- digital marketing can easily be controlled by businesses, which allows for swift responses to market conditions and consumer trends.

Competitive Market: In a competitive digital market you drive engagement with potential customers by providing them value through products/services before they know your brand.

- Competitive edge: Businesses promoting themselves online have an advantage over those that do not.
- Enable innovation: Digital platforms support experimentation for new ideas, and enable new formats and innovative customer experiences.

And the importance of digital marketing is that you can reach your market where they are – in a digital world closely entwined to modern day business.

1.1.3 Transition from conventional to digital marketing

The transition from analog to digital marketing is among the most significant changes in the history of business. Old marketing was about print advertising, telemarketing, billboards and reaching the masses to holler at them.” “New marketing is about engaging with the community on a one-to-one or one-of-a-few basis.

Traditional Marketing Characteristics

MassCommunication

Messages were distributed to as many people as possible, with little targeting. TV commercials, for instance, were seen by millions, yet could not guarantee relevance to every viewer.

HighCosts

It cost a lot of money to get on print or tv and this excluded small businesses from the game who could not afford that space.

LimitedFeedback

Traditional campaigns lacked real-time feedback. Businesses had to wait weeks or months to measure their effectiveness in sales reports.

One-Way Communication

The former was not really interacting at all with customers through the more traditional channels. Users had to read the messages without getting any feedback as they were received.

Emergence of Digital Marketing

The internet era, smartphones and social media have changed the way businesses reach out to customers. Digital advertising is a reaction to the online habits of consumers who were spending more and more time on their computers.

Interactive Engagement

Brands' messages can now be 'liked, shared or commented on and replied within seconds by customers educated in their brands due to the previous three reasons.

Real-Time Measurement

Businesses will be able to measure impressions, clicks and conversions in real time so they can optimize campaigns on the fly.

The access for all Now small businesses have the same reach in marketing tools that were privileged, ed to big companies with large budgets.

Personalization

With digital, you could target a single person. Personal recommendations, custom emails and personalized ads promote engagement.

Hybrid Era: Traditional Heritage and Digital Novelty.

Conventional tactics may register! Similarly although digital marketing is king for the sector there. Many businesses adopt integrated strategies. Maybe a TV ad is driving people to a Web site or social media effort, for example. It's a half-measure that plays on the distribution network of analog in the distance but does allow targeting as you'd expect from digital.

Extended Subpoints

- The Emergence of Mobile Marketing- Digital evangelists believe they have actually been able to speed up this process by leveraging digital campaigns and smartphone which enable business to interact round the clock in any part of the world.

- **Consumer Landscape Change:** When we push consumer to make decision in online (they do), they need to research the information about that product or services, which is requested by competitors to increase digital footprint of consumers.
- **Customer Insight:** Although digital marketing is all about managing data (customer insight) and using the same to predict demand and give people what they want unlike traditional marketing which does not.
- **Social Influence:** We are all walking brand ads on Instagram and TikTok, a new study suggests — a change in the form that marketing is taking, aimed at peer influence.

The move from old-world marketing to digital is just one part of a broader tide turning in business; the more consumers become involved, the more businesses have to adapt or get left behind in an increasingly-digital-first world.

1.2 Digital and Business Transformation

1.2.1 Digital technologies and its effect on business development

In today's business world, life is gradually being digitised. They're not just productivity tools but lightning-fast paths to the innovation infrastructure that powers customer engagement, scale and competitive advantage.

differentiation. From garage-shop powerhouses to globe-spanning behemoths, companies are now applying the promise of digital tools to recast their business models and reinvent the kinds of customer experiences that flip into powerful new sources of revenue.

Driving Innovation

Digital also allows companies to experiment faster. When cloud computing, AI, ML and data analytics combine, it becomes incredibly easy for organizations to collude together to experiment and accelerate product go-to-market with “warp” speed. They, such as those incorporating AI technology, predict consumer trends and decide what changes they need to make to their product offerings based on the new demands.

Enhancing Customer Experiences

These days, customers expect personal, instant interactions that are smooth as glass. In order to fulfill these demands, businesses can offer omnichannel experiences thanks to digital technologies. Messaging apps, chatbots and self-service portals that are convenient Transformative as recommendation engines personalize the most relevant product for each person. They resonate and draw your customers in emotionally – so strongly that it encourages them to buy, but more importantly to come back again.

Increasing Operational Efficiency

Your business runs more smoothly when automation, RPA and data-based business decision-making help to streamline the way you do things. Automating payroll, customer support inquiries or supply chain management frees up human resources to work at a higher level. This value-added is due to the cost reductions and time-to-market benefits resulting in higher revenue returns.

Expanding Market Reach

Business is globalised via the digital world – on e-commerce marketplaces and social media networks. Big cost of entry is now small-biz game. From the perspective of digital advertising, this allows advertisers to deliver highly targeted ads to the best audience and extend reach and revenues.

Data as a Strategic Asset

Big data analysis has drawn back the curtain to reveal new ways businesses act in markets. With every online engagement, we produce data that can be analyzed to reveal what customers want and how they feel. Enter predictive analytics — the huge terabytes in the sky that can help companies forecast when customers are likely to clamor for a new product, tweak prices and maybe even slash churn.

Creating New Business Models

There are also new service forms enabled by digital, the so-called sharing economy platforms and subscription services / digital ecosystems...Think of how Netflix’s model works or an Uber’s ride-hailing platform. These are the models that disrupt incumbent industries and then grow on their own.

Digital Technologies' Impact on Business

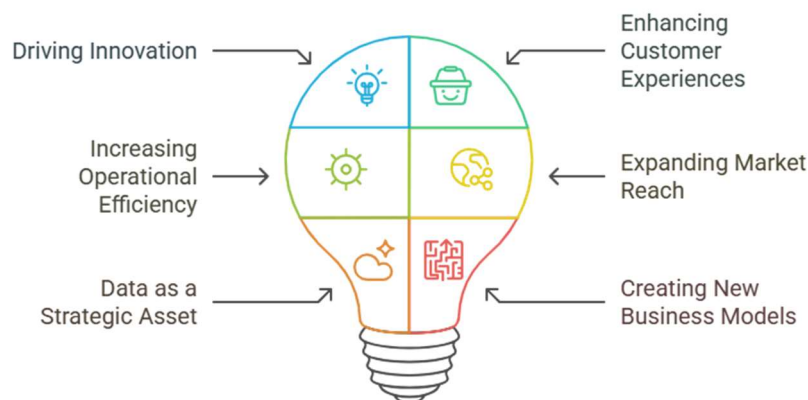


Figure 1.2

Extended Subpoints

- **Flexible:** The cloud is nimble businesses that operate at full speed with no large upfront costs, being able to scale up on the fly.
- **Agility:** The digital realm lets you respond more rapidly to changes in the market or consumer tastes.
- **Collaborate:** With videoconferencing and other collaboration tools being more powerful than ever, the possibilities are endless.
- **Green technology and sustainability:** Works like the IoT with analytics are used in resource efficiency that enables green and sustainable ways.

Did You Know?

Studies show that digital mature business are 23% more-profitable than their less digitally-mature competitors. These companies are investing in things including artificial intelligence, cloud computing and big data analytics not just to do things better but to do entirely new things.

1.2.2 Examples of Digital Transformations

And what does digital transformation look like? The best way to describe it really isn't through vague definitions and industry gibberish but, in fact, with real companies and examples of people who've used technology to completely transform their operations, touch customers and pursue growth. These are examples of what digital technology can do to revolutionise and boost innovation and competitiveness across all sectors.

Case Study 1: Netflix

Netflix is a case in point to how digital transformation can disrupt an industry. A mail-order DVD service transformed by streaming technology and the internet into a platform for playing content directly on televisions, computers and a variety of other devices. Tailoring and Recommendations Personalized Content Recommendation To offer content recommendation and ensure a more engaging experience for their customers, the company implemented data analytics. Its digital-first approach disrupted traditional television and cinema distribution, making Netflix one of the most powerful media companies in the world.

Case Study 2: Starbucks

Starbucks leveraged mobile app for enriched customer experience using digital technology platform. It will let customers order food, pay for it and redeem rewards. Through associating loyalty programs with personalization, Starbucks developed more engagement from customers. The app also gathers information about customers used to make menu changes, promotions and localized offerings.

Case Study 3: Domino's Pizza

Domino's became less a pizza chain in the traditional sense and more of a technology company. Its "Domino's AnyWare" platform lets customers order through various digital channels, from apps to smart speakers to social media. The company made significant investments in order tracking via AI and predictive analytics technology to improve delivery times and customer satisfaction.

Case Study 4: Tesla

The passion for all things digital further binds Tesla to its destiny. From the 'over-the-air' software updates of its car to its newest offerings in AI-based self-driving capabilities – digital technology seep into everything Tesla does. It disrupted the old-fashioned way to retail cars by a business-to-consumer direct sale via online, as opposed to brick-and-mortar car dealerships.

Case Study 5: Expanded on subpoint a (Government and Public Services).

- Health care: Doctors can connect with patients without being in the same place through telemedicine, which keeps up continuity of care.
- Education: EdTech firms' virtual classrooms have brought education at the doorstep of individuals across the world.
- Retail: Amazon has demonstrated that data-driven invigoration and personalization can be the baptism or death knell of a company in e-commerce.

These are small examples in the scheme of things but it is indicative that digital transformation isn't a technology add-on – rather, it rethinks many processes, customer experiences and even business models.

1.2.3 Transformation: challenges and opportunities

The potential of digital adoption is a sprawling canvas — but there are scale challenges that corporate enterprises have to overcome. And success will depend on how artfully you maneuver the trade-offs between risk and opportunity, how dexterously you finesse internal resistance and where — or whether — you make strategic bets.

Challenges in Digital Transformation

Cultural Resistance

People are afraid of new technology, they always tend to think it is gonna take their job (we've always been on the very edge when we started feeling that a computer will soon be able to do everything we know) or simply because people fucking hate change. Good change management will rescue digital initiatives from the dustbin that they would otherwise end.

Digital Transformation Is Costly It comes with a hefty price tag to start down the path of Digital Transformation because it requires software, setup (infrastructure and platform), training as well as security. For small businesses, it might be difficult to justify the cost.

Data Privacy and Security Risks Additional digital transformation means more opportunities for data to be compromised and privacy breached.” But even then, paid-for ransomware is still a huge issue and as long as it’s working, organisations need to be embedding cybersecurity in their wider transformation projects.

Integration Issues

Old systems often do not plug cleanly into new digital platforms, making them expensive and slow to transform.

Skill Gaps

And a lack of workers with skills in A.I., analytics and digital tools could hobble the implementation. It’s all about upskilling and reskilling, but this is an investment long term for us to develop the talent pool we have.”

Opportunities in Digital Transformation

Customer-Centric Growth

Through the shortcutized digital channel, corporation would be savvy enough to provide end services of a tailored nature and of amass for customer satisfaction and loyalty. It’s definitely a race to the sky when it comes to companies who utilize their customer data intelligently.

When you Go Digital Work Faster“With digital, the speed of innovation is like 10 times what it normally is”**Agility and Innovation** In a software driven world it’s never been easier to create and launch products, pilot them and pivot (if necessary). Agility grows out of the business nuance in marketing.

Operational Excellence

Automation and analytics reduce waste in a business, lowering costs and resulting in savings through productivity increases that can be invested elsewhere toward the strategic.

Global Expansion

The world is shrinking; you can now reach new geographies with minimal investment in physical infrastructure E-commerce and ecosystems like social media.

Sustainability Opportunities

Digital solutions that respond to energy savings and efficiencies, taking organisations a step closer towards a number of global sustainability goals.

Extended Subpoints

- **EC Partnerships and Ecosystems:** Partnerships, initiatives in tech partnerships, collaborations and fintech innovation may be a lever for speeding digital change.
- **Customer Engagement:** We also know that online content, including digital channels, provide more of a conversation with the customer to enhance brand relationships with consumers.
- **Competitive Distance:** The faster companies grow, the closer to their competitors they end up in terms of market share and profit.

Opportunities and challenges diverging are rooted in the inevitability of digital transformation, not as an option but a necessity. If managed thoughtfully — not without pain and difficulty — it can be the key to long-term resilience and growth for companies that embrace it.

1.3 Paid, Owned and Earned Media

1.3 Definition and Instances of Paid Media

That is, it is one of the foundations of digital marketing as it allows companies to scale their audience rapidly, and segment audience with accuracy and send traffic to owned media (like a website or landing page). Paid media opens up imaginable and scalable channels for businesses to spread awareness, create engagement, and drive conversions.

Characteristics of Paid Media

Control on Messaging: The brand is paying for the exposure; therefore, it can dictate what is said (the message), how it is done (format) and who hears it (the target audience).

Immediate Exposure: Unlike unpaid tactics that are of a longer term nature, paid media offers immediate exposure with real-time results.

Targeted Reach Advanced advertising technology offers micro-segmentation by demographic, location, interest and online behavior.

Verifiable Results: All campaigns are measurable in terms of impressions, clicks, conversions and ROI.

Examples of Paid Media

Search Engine Advertising (PPC) PPC campaigns function as an auction to be at the top of search results such as Google Ads. For example, an e-commerce business can bid on keywords like “best running shoes” to send traffic to its product pages.

Display Ads

Such websites show banner ads, video ads and rich media hosted and paid like videos. These can increase brand exposure and help drive remarketing campaigns.

SocialMediaAdvertisement You can also run targeted campaigns on Facebook, Instagram, LinkedIn and TikTok. Choices of sponsored posts, video ads, carousel ads and influencer partnerships under paid deals.

NativeAdvertising

Sponsored content that is written directly into editorial feeds—such as articles, blog posts, or recommendation widgets—can be used to engage users in a non-promotional way.

InfluencerPartnerships

Sponsored ads with influencers who sell their products to thousands of followers give gravitas as well as exposure. This is already being utilised by lifestyle, fashion and tech companies.

Extended Subpoints

- **Retargeting Ads:** Sponsored programs that follow visitors that failed to convert and shows ads to them in the hope they will test again.
- **Programmatic Advertising:** The automated process of buying and selling ads using an intelligent system (AI) algorithms to decide which ad to purchase at what price, instantly.
- **Cost Metrics:** Such as cost per click (CPC), cost per mille (CPM) and cost per action/acquisition (CPA).

Paid media is an essential marketing channel to reach new customers, create leads and drive traffic, albeit even more effective when it's complemented by owned and earned media.

1.3.2 Role of Owned Media (Websites, Blogs and Social Media)

Owned media is a term that refers to online properties a brand owns. These include web sites, blogs, social media channels, electronic newsletters and apps. Unlike paid media that needs to be continually invested in to inspire action, owned media is a permanent infrastructure with profound roots for businesses to reach out and engage with audiences as often they like and without curtailment from third parties.

Characteristics of Owned Media

Absolute Control: The company owns the message, timing, depth and look of every form of communication.

Cheap: There's some maintenance / dev cost but no 'rent' cost

exposure as in paid media.

Long-Term Value: Owned media This one is also pretty standard procedure but beneficial. The content from what you have in the form of blog posts and items on websites can still generate traffic for a very long time even though it was published.

Brand Identity Building: Owned media is who a brand is, their voice and where they stand.

Key Owned Media Channels

Websites

Webpages have become the “shop windows” for businesses. Who Insiderhub are, what their culture is like and where you will find them. Some of the things that Insiderhub delivers in the form of products and services. Search angle. Ok now the landing pages. Web design is about a whole lot more than look and feel.

Blogs

Blogs essentially only help give us an opportunity to share our thought leadership and community browse your site (pun intended) while also getting an SEO bump in the rankings.

Mobile Applications

Apps enable businesses to offer more convenient services, loyalty programs and personalized messaging, all of which help engage consumers.

Extended Subpoints

- **Content Hubs:** Brands are frequently putting together microsites and resource centers as owned platforms.
- **Community Spaces:** Espace communautaires allow to create online communities and forums that drive long-term customer participation.
- **Measurement:** For owned media, tools such as Google Analytics offer statistics on traffic, behavior and conversions.

Owned media is the backbone of any digital marketing effort, giving every campaign its own real estate with consistent and authentic support for both paid and earned.

1.3.3 Power of Earned Media (PR, Reviews, Word of Mouth)

Earned media is the awareness or credit earned by a brand through something other than paid advertisement and owned channels. It is when customers, media companies, influencers or the public take it upon themselves to promote a brand through

mentions, shares, reviews or coverage. Earned media is sometimes seen as the most trustworthy type of marketing, since it comes from a third party and not from the brand.

Characteristics of Earned Media

Unpaid Exposure – The brand is not paying the publication for coverage or recognition.

Trust and Credibility: Friends of friends between the brand, journalist or influencer gives the endorsement a greater credibility.

Virality; Good Reviews or viral content can spread the word about your brand quite fast.

Uncontrollable: Brands cannot control earned exposure as they can with paid or owned exposure.

Examples of Earned Media

PressCoverage

The earned visibility is brought about by media mentions in print and online news outlets, i.e., newspapers, magazines and. For instance, a young company gaining press with its new product.

CustomerReviews

Your restaurant will get noticed through word-of-mouth on your Google, Yelp, Amazon reviews and more. Good feedbacks help to build trust, while bad reviews call for an intensive reputation management.

WordofMouth The customers refer products to their friends or relatives naturally, bringing the most powerful advertising value.

SocialMediaShares People share what they find engaging and voluntarily repost it for others to see, the more engagement the more reach.

beyond the brand's direct control.

InfluencerEndorsements

Although some influencer campaigns are paid, many influencers naturally support the brands they believe in and create earned media.

Extended Subpoints

- **Viral Campaigns:** If campaigns go viral, brands can reach a large audience of people who have an affinity towards the brand and also share.
- **User-Generated Content (UGC):** When customers produce posts, photos or videos showing off a brand, they're contributing to earned media.

- **Challenges:** Bad press or bad reviews also constitute earned media, and must be managed like a crisis.

Earned media offers brands unparalleled credibility, although it does demand a continued focus on customer satisfaction, PR and delivering value to secure positive exposure over the longer term.

1.3.4 Integrating Paid, Owned, and Earned Media

A good digital marketing mix incorporates paid, owned and earned media to form an integrated ecosystem; whereas each channel feeds off the other. Instead of embracing siloed strategies, these three permutations of media support one another to achieve the widest possible audience, the highest levels of trust and impact Reach Trust.

How Integration Works

Paid Driving Traffic to Owned Paid promotion drives traffic from paid channels to owned assets such as a website or blog where the brand's story can be explored and potentially interacted with.

Owned Supporting Paid and Earned Owned is the baseline for each piece of content. Powerful web sites, blogs and social media pages make credible paid ads easier to run and serve as destinations for earned coverage.

Amplifying Earned and Owned Positive reviews, media placements and social shares lend legitimacy to owned platforms, and make paid efforts more effective.

Benefits of Integration

Consistency

The same message across all channels reinforces the brand, thereby building recognition and trust.

Cost Efficiency

High paid budget dependence will decrease with earned media and owned channels will ensure it stays reduced.

Increased Engagement

And you've got multiple touchpoints to more engagement and more conversion with your customers.

Crisis Management

Integration ensures balanced visibility. If you "earned media" came with some negative clips, you have OWNED to get back into the right place and PAID to go on offense.

Extended Subpoints

- Cross-Channel Campaigns: Promoted ads are used to support owned blog posts, and those often get shared (earned media).

And it begins by having three simple standards:

- Measurement: You have to measure attributes across all three media, so you can see who does well.

- 3d party Journey Mapping: For the lower left half (Awareness to Purchase), you have integration which will give one seamless and cohesive customer journey.

Paid, owned and earned media also means they are not islands – they are part of one connected plan. They both believe that in the digital age, visibility is a byproduct of credibility and sustainability.

Activity for 1.3

Choose a well-known brand and examine its use of paid, owned and earned media. Give one example of each: paid media such as a specific ad campaign, owned media (website/app), earned visibility like all your reviews or viral social shares. Assess how these three elements support each other to build the brand's overall online presence. Write up the report about your findings and discuss with classmates how attention to integration helps in terms of consistency, credibility and reach in digital marketing.

1.4 Digital Marketing Strategy

Not all people use the Internet as a primary source for news and information that is, however; increasingly more and more people turn to the Web first when they need current information about any topic.

1.4.1 Building Blocks of Digital Marketing Strategy

A digital marketing strategy is an organized plan that helps businesses to use online channels, tools and content to their advantage in order to connect with prospective buyers. Vis-à-vis systematised plan, it consists showed a conformance between plan to, is not in ad-hoc with only digital campaign. It's a means of integrating all of the aspects that create digital marketing into one strategy, to gather, engage and convert consumers.

Fundamentals of Digital Marketing Plan

Vision and Item targets Each and every e-marketing plan begins with consciousness from items or solutions who targets buyer, So Through personal digital e-commerce practice in above Decided what to bought through By reason of definitely You know, Important Brand Marketing Strategies And Wording On identification and planning. The objectives can be awareness-driven, lead generation-focused, customer retention want or grow e-commerce sales.

Market Research and Insights Looks at what are their competitors doing, the trends in market, and consumer behaviour. Data analytics make it clear where, how and where customers are consuming content and engaging, but also buying.

Target-Audience-and-Personas A strategy has to be focussed on the target audience. Buyer personas are detailed descriptions of the types of customers you want to sell to, including their demographics, interests and behavior and challenges. This ensures messages resonate effectively.

ContentStrategy

And Content is the soul of digital marketing. A content strategy, specifically one that documents what you intend to produce - be it blogs, videos, infographics or podcasts - as well as how they will align with your customers)' needs at the various stages of the purchasing process.

ChannelSelection

Businesses therefore have to find the optimal mix of channels - search engines, social media platforms, email or apps - that leads to sales.

paid advertising. The decision will relate to wherever your audience is more engaged with and aligned with the organizational goal.

Paid, Owned and Earned Media will converge A mix of owned media being the core platform (paid for reach)and earned as (trust). Integration is really important because it makes sure that everything works together no matter where the customer sees the product or service whether that is online or in a store integration is key to making this happen so integration helps to make sure that the experience is good, across all of these different touchpoints like integration does.

Budgeting and resource allocation tactics are really good.

The best way to do things is to let resources be used in different places like tools and people to get the job done.

This is what you care about the most, like getting leads and making people know about your brand and it should be clear in your budget.

You should be able to see where your money is going for things, like lead generation campaigns and brand awareness programs.

We need to have a plan that shows how we will measure progress. We will look at things like traffic and conversion rate and engagement and customer lifetime value. This way we can always make sure our strategy is working well and make changes to make it even better. We will use these things to see how our strategy is doing and make it better over time. This is so we can get the results, from our strategy and make it work really well for us.

Extended Subpoints

- **Customer Journey Mapping:** We look at all the steps a customer takes from finding out about something, to after they buy it so we can give them exactly what they need.
- **Competitor Benchmarking:** I looked at what my competitors are good and bad at. This helps me figure out what makes my company different from the Competitor. By doing this analysis of the Competitor's strengths and weaknesses I can come up with a strategy that sets me apart, from the Competitor.
- **Tech Stack:** The right tools (CRM, analytics and automation platforms) are execution enablers.

At its core, a digital marketing plan is the master script that binds your business goals together with tracks to measure against so you can have faith that every tweet, blog comment or Facebook post is working towards your overall business success.

1.4.2 Setting SMART Goals

But campaigns will be wandering and aimless and unproductive, without a purpose. "Put it in a SMART" (Specific, Measurable, Achievable, Relevant and Time-bound) also applies to your digital marketing strategy.

Components of SMART Goals

Specific

Objectives should definitely be articulated and unambiguous. For those of you trying to avoid "increase in website visitors," this might be an acceptable example:

"grow organic search website visitors by 20% month-over-month." Specificity eliminates ambiguity.

Measurable

Goals must have quantifiable indicators. For instance, "getting up to 500 eligible leads via LinkedIn campaigns in the next quarter" offers results that are measurable as a yardstick.

Achievable

Goals need to be achievable based on resources, budget and time. Unrealistic targets can demotivate teams, but meeting certain goals does allow that progress and motivation to take place.

Relevant

Work should support broader business goals. For example, a goal to grow Instagram followers is only relevant if your target audience engages on Instagram and if that objective serves the purpose of making profit.

Time-Bound

All goals must have a time frame. Timeframes provide accountability and support progress monitoring. Some examples of these could be, “raise email open rates 10 percent over the next six months.”

Sample SMART Goals in Digital Marketing

- Grow e-commerce revenue by 15% in the next quarter with Google Ads campaigns.
- Get a 5% Instagram engagement rate on posts for 3 months, by creating an interactive content series.
- Increase the subscriber list by 1,000 individuals in six weeks through advertising a Gated content and email marketing.

Extended Subpoints

- Micro vs. Macro Goals: Small campaign-specific goals (micro) should ladder up to bigger organizational aims (macro).

SMART goals convert your traumatic aspirations into precise targets that you can actually work on, measure, and develop in the world of digital marketing.

1.4.3 Target Audience and Segmentation

One of the most important aspects when formulating a strategic plan for Online Marketing is defining and segmenting the target. Once we define who the audience is, businesses can avoid wasting money on campaigns that won't connect.

Personalization is the result of audience segmentation, so with personalization comes increased relevance and greater engagement.

5 Defining the Target Audience

The target audience is the group of people that a business wants to cater its products or services to. It is characterized by a mix of demographic, psychographic, and behavioristic variables.

Segmentation Dimensions

Demographic Segmentation

According to factors such as age, gender and income and education and work. For instance, luxury brands appealing to high earners.

Geographic Segmentation

Customers are categorized by location, meaning countries and cities and in some cases even neighborhoods. E-commerce companies do this to target promotions.

Psychographic Segmentation

Deals with values, interests, lifestyle and personality. For example, eco-friendly brands cater to environmentally aware consumers.

Behavioral Segmentation

On your purchasing patterns, search history, product usage and loyalty. Examples are the targeting of repeat buyers with reward programs.

Technographic Segmentation

In this digital age, it's about knowing the customer devices, platforms and apps they are in to design a campaign.

Role of Personas

Buyer personas are hypothetical models of the ideal customers — which is based on information you've created from research and data mining. They inform content, channel and campaign messaging. For instance, one persona might be a working parent of 35 who is seeking convenience, channeling marketing messages around efficiency and time-saving.

Benefits of Segmentation

- Allows targeted marketing that appeals to individuals.
- Increases ROI by enabling advertisers to spend more efficiently on media.
- Satisfies customers' requirements for personalization that enhance the customer experience.
- Provide targeted feedback to support product development.

Extended Subpoints

- Evergreen audiences: Audiences evolve over time, so those segments need to be re-evaluated periodically.
- Data source: This is where the data comes from, analytics, surveys and CRM etc. to have better segmenting.
- Cross-Segment Strategies - Sometimes strategy implications may overlap across segments.

Definition and segmentation of the target audience Target audience providers, localities and players that create value with highlighting what is important for your recipients.

1.4.4 Measuring ROI in Digital Marketing

Return on Investment (ROI) in online advertising and marketing, for that matter is a metric used to measure the amount of return on a particular investment in generating profit – oppose to how much was spent. In contrast to other traditional marketing methods, digital marketing allows a more precise measurement of input and output.

Importance of Measuring ROI

Justifies Marketing Spend

So let's walk through the method and justify with ROI figures to your stakeholders and senior management how important marketing really is.

Guides Budget Allocation Budget by comparing the ROI of channels, businesses can dedicate their budgets to most profitable campaigns.

Supports Continual Improvement The ability to measure ROI will show you what strategies are working and others that need enhancing, so that decisions are based on facts.

Methods of Measuring ROI

Revenue-Based ROI

Formula: $(\text{Revenue from Campaign} - \text{Cost of Campaign}) \div \text{Cost of Campaign}$. So if a promotion produced \$50,000 in revenue on a \$10,000 spend, the ROI is 400%.

Cost per Acquisition (CPA) It calculates the average cost of acquiring a customer through a campaign. Lower CPA indicates higher efficiency.

CLV ROI is a measure of more than immediate cash flow – it's about the future value of customers using your solution. So even if someone is paying again and again, then your ROI is actually higher than it seems at first.

Attribution Models

Multitouch attribution models analyze which customer journey touchpoints had the greatest impact on conversions. In this way, the value in a single channel is not raised excessively.

Non-Revenue Metrics

ROI can also refer to indirect gains such as brand recognition, trust in your customers or satisfaction that will contribute to revenues over time.

Challenges in Measuring ROI

- Attributing multi-channel complexity in campaigns.
- The difficult task of measuring intangible benefits — for example, brand reputation.

- Distance-protecting privacy laws that limit the tracking.

Extended Subpoints

- Analytics Tools – and if you are already using tools like Google Analytics, or a CRM dashboard or access to social media insights then the pain of measuring ROI becomes so much easier.

Did You Know?

According to reports, companies that calculate ROI successfully are more than 70% likely to receive budget increases in their marketing departments. Seeing stand-out results not only proves the value of digital marketing, it enables businesses to confidently scale campaigns.

1.5 Alignment of Sales Funnel & Digital Marketing

1.5.1 Understanding the Sales Funnel

The sales funnel is a model for understanding the consumer's journey from the first point of contact with a brand to ultimately making a purchase (and beyond). It's called a "funnel" because the number of leads or potential customers in each stage decreases just like a funnel (best known as you pour water into it at the top and it would come out filtered and finally reach your mouth). We will explain what the sales funnel is a bit later, but for now this simple framework can help you align digital marketing with your customer phases of purchase.

Stages of the Sales Funnel

AwarenessStage

The top of the funnel is more about the prospects knowing that this even exists. At a minimum, digital marketing teaches folks how to make sure you are visible to the people who may not even realize they need your product or service since it's all new. Stacks are made up of social media efforts, blog posts, search engine ads and video commercials.

InterestStage

When there is an interest on the part of prospects, they show themselves in search of more information. It's when they're trawling the net, reading blog posts and subscribing to newsletters. Marketers want to provide content that is insightful and educational, but at the same time keeps them wanting more as well shows your brand is a trusted expert.

ConsiderationStage

At this point, prospects are repositioning options once again. Perhaps they download whitepapers, watch webinars, or peruse product comparisons. It's about building trust, overcoming objections and establishing your points of difference. Now, testimonials and case studies, and very targeted guides will work.”

ConversionStage

A conversion happens when leads are converted into buyers.

Here's where digital marketing comes in — it can make that process of friction as low and easy as possible to create action. Tactics include targeted discount offers, a free trial, retargeting ads and clear calls-to-action (CTAs).

LoyaltyandAdvocacy Beyond buying from you again, loyal customers also refer friends and family to you. Digital strategies that build loyalty, like custom email and social connections, pave the way to advocacy.

Extended Subpoints

- The funnel is not a straight stick; customers could skip over or reverse stages.
- Track drop-offs at every stage to learn where in your funnel you're losing people.
- The funnels of today are number one about conversion, but retention and advocacy are really their ultimate purpose.

The sales funnel is a roadmap to guide the actions of marketing and make certain that content, etc., meets the needs of the customer at a particular point.

1.5.2 Match Content with Stages of the Funnel

The best digital marketing follows the buyer's journey through the funnel. And for each stage, you want a message that taps into certain pain points, and builds your trust with them so they can move to the next level.” If your content and where a prospect is in the funnel don't match up, you are probably going to lose them since you're turning them off.

Content for Awareness Stage

- Blogs and Articles: Informative content that covers customer challenges.
- Social Media Posts Quiz: The posts, graphics and virally developed content to create awareness on FMCG quality.
- Videos: Brief videos that capture attention and explain what your brand stands for.
- Paid: Search or display ads that get to broad but still relevant audiences.

At this stage you want to think educational, entertaining/engaging and shareable content – without getting too salesy.

Content for Interest Stage

- Whitepapers/E-books: Provide an in-depth knowledge about the topics, customers are worried about.
- Email Newsletters: Provide ongoing value to cultivate interest.
- Webinars: Allow for interaction in learning and serve as a credibility platform.

This is you showing off what you can do, and harness.

Content for Consideration Stage

- Case studies -Show how your product or service solve real customer problems.
- Product Comparisons: A no nonsense side by side comparison with your competition.
- Free Trial & Demos These provide user a chance to sample what is being offered physically. e Trials and Demos - Give them a taste of your product.

The focus is on removing obstacles and enabling a commitment.

Content for Loyalty and Advocacy

- Customer Onboarding Guides: Helps new users to derive the most out of product.
- Custom Emails: Special offers based on past behavior.
- Refer a friend programs: Provide rewards to customers who bring others into the fold.
- Forums: Encourage chat and interaction with your brand.

Extended Subpoints

- Efficiency: Repurposing content through every stage of the journey.
- Calenders keep content consistent and on track.
- You have to be hyper personal and relevant every step of the way.

When content is created to fit into these stages of the funnel how significantly more obtainable it becomes for you to ensure that your digital marketing efforts are engaging customer needs and making it easy for them to traverse through awareness right through each stage.

1.5.3 SEO, Social Media and Email for each phase

Digital distribution channels drive the sales funnel. Among these, SEO and social media and email marketing are significant as they: Serve customers in different stages of the journey. All of these channels have their own place - and yet they all must hold

hands, play nicely together if the customer is going to move easily through the sales funnel.

SEO in the Funnel

Visibility: Prospects find you when through search if your website is clicked on a solution to the problems they're trying to solve. Organic traffic is drawn in by keyword-targeted blog articles, landing pages and long-tail search terms.

Engagement: Keyword Centric content engage with User's Intent so keeps user more on your site. In particular, internal linking is 1 of those SEO best practices to organize content and drive users to related posts.

Thought: Facilitate choices with high converting product pages, FAQs and comparison articles. Businesses can also attract a local target audience through local SEO.

Conversion: Clean calls-to-action, rapid load time and mobile-friendly design as a whole all lower friction in the purchase process.

Social Media in the Funnel

Discovery: This is what that early engagement looks like, through social media advertising, influencer partnerships and content that's sharable.

Interest: Engagement such as polls, Q&A's and explainer videos maintain interest.

Social proof & trust badges: These can help you build trust by providing the kinds of social proof—reviews, customer stories, influencer endorsements.

Conversion: Prospecting ads can encourage do-it-now behaviour with retargeting and flash sales in social.

Advocacy – Post-purchase experience, community building, and support becomes advocacy.

Email Marketing in the Funnel

Awareness: Lead magnets, free guides or a newsletter, tempt people to subscribe by e-mail.

Interest: Drip campaigns give you even more to learn about your leads and educate them with product dust-gaging yang taiji.

Conversion: Proactive discount codes and abandoned cart reminders by Help.

Loyalty: Regular updates, loyalty bonuses and personalized offers are good tools to keep customers.

Extended Subpoints

- SEO is for discovery, social media is for engagement and email is for retention.
- Integration of data between these channels enables personalized consistent communication.
- Each channel reinforces the others; for example, SEO content can be shared on social media and then sent through email.

Together, these channels work to effectively help qualify prospects who move from one funnel stage to the next.

1.5.4 Case Study: Successful Funnel Alignment

A great example of this in practice is to use digital marketing to fill up your sales funnel, such as the one used by HubSpot: An inbound marketing platform that brands itself... well... an “inbound” marketing platform. HubSpot does a great job aligning the funnel in such a way as to turn prospects into customers and then into evangelists.

Awareness Stage

HubSpot generates tons of free SEO-friendly content with blogs, ebooks and infographics. This content teaches businesses with marketing conundrums how to bring visits in organically, in mass quantities. Facebook and Google ads offer additional reach via paid marketing.

Interest Stage

If leads or prospects are interacting with the content, they'll be funneled through free resources such as newsletters and webinars. HubSpot's tools, for example website graders are not only effective in keeping prospects interested but they also demonstrate the company's expertise.

Consideration Stage

HubSpot offers deep case studies, customer testimonials and product comparisons to drive home the benefits of its offerings. Businesses can test the platform themselves with free trials and demos.

Conversion Stage

At this point in the funnel, HubSpot uses retargeting ads and personalized email offers. Obvious CTAs on landing pages to coax sign-ups. Live chats and sales calls help address those final doubts.

Loyalty and Advocacy Stage

HubSpot helps keep customers happy with customer success programs, training academies, and communities. It's a common saying, “Happy customer becomes the

advocate,” and you will also make them happy by creating an amazing experience and generous referral program.

Extended Subpoints

- HubSpot unifies SEO, social media and email across the funnel.
- Measures are monitored at each level to help adjust performance and modify strategies.
- The funnel approach has been enabling HubSpot's global expansion without compromising customer happiness.

This is just one example of why funnel alignment is SO important. Funnel alignment makes it easier for prospects to progress and converts better at the end AND keeps people coming back for more!

Knowledge Check for 1.5

1. What is the main goal of the awareness stage in the sales funnel?
 - a) Drive purchases
 - b) Build loyalty
 - c) Create visibility
 - d) Offer discounts
2. Which content type best fits the consideration stage?
 - a) Memes
 - b) Case studies
 - c) Flash sales
 - d) Pop-up ads
3. Retargeting ads are most effective in which stage of the funnel?
 - a) Awareness
 - b) Interest
 - c) Conversion
 - d) Loyalty
4. Which channel is most effective for nurturing long-term customer relationships?

- a) SEO
 - b) Social media
 - c) Email marketing
 - d) Print media
5. In a successful funnel alignment, owned content such as blogs primarily supports which stage?
- a) Awareness
 - b) Conversion
 - c) Loyalty
 - d) Advocacy

1.6 Summary

⊞ Digital marketing is the commercialization through digital technologies and media.

⊞ Digital marketing comprises a wide range and diverse set of activities including search engine optimization (SEO), content marketing, search engine marketing (SEM), influencer outreach, email campaigns, mobile marketing and much more.

⊞ Digital marketing is appealing to businesses because it cost effective: trackable, and can specifically reach a targeted audience.

⊞ A transition from traditional to digital marketing signifies a move towards interactivity, individualization and databased methodologies.

⊞ Digital transformation allows the business to become innovative, improve customer experience and re-imagine new business models.

⊞ 60% of paid media is for immediate exposure and ads are part of that, owned media is where assets like a website or blog reside, earned media is organic publicity i.e. it happens when people review or share your business.

⊞ A successful digital marketing plan will involve vision, objectives, audience identification and channel strategy, content planning, budgets and analytics.

⊞ SMART goal setting is one of digital marketing objectives and based on the principle that targets should be Specific, Measurable, Achievable, Relevant and Time sensitive.

⊞ Target audience segmentation, demographics, behavior and psychographics ensures personalized and higher ROI.

⊖ The tracking of the ROI in a digital marketing campaign is critical to ensure that campaigns are achieving profitable returns, and as such informs campaign optimization and budget setting.

Elite business elites pace and match the customer life cycle to help streamline marketing at all stages of the conversion rate.

⊖ SEO, social and email are in great harmony with each other to keep the attention alive through the funnel stages and examples of case studies gives a hands-on experience.

1.7 Key Terms

Digital Marketing – The promotion of brands and products using the internet and technology.

SEO (Search Engine Optimization) – The process of making web content friendly to search engines, to drive a higher ranking in search engine returns.

SEM (Search Engine Marketing) – Paid promotion of your website to appear in search engine results.

Content Marketing – Building and distributing valuable, relevant content to attract and engage a target audience.

Paid Media – What brands pay to share content (e.g., PPC ads, sponsored posts).

Owned Media – Digital properties a brand controls or operates, such as websites, blogs and social media pages.

Earned Media – Natural or in-content exposure secured through reviews, media coverage and social shares.

MANAGEMENT Sales Funnel – Concept of the steps customers take before purchasing your product.

SMART Goals – A framework for goal-setting which dictates that goals should be Specific, Measurable, Achievable, Relevant and Time-bound.

ROI (Return on Investment) – A ratio of the gains from marketing, divided by marketing costs.

Buyer Persona – A fictional customer profile tailored to a business's target audience, such as demographics, interests and behaviour.

Attribution Model – A model or approach to determine which touchpoints had an impact in leading to a conversion.

1.8 Descriptive Questions



Digital marketing and the role it plays in today's business Describe digital and how it fits into the business landscape.

Explain the importance of digital transformation on business development, provide appropriate examples.

Distinguish paid, owned and earned media with real-world examples.

Why is it important to establish SMART goals when planning a digital marketing strategy?

Explain how audience segmentation increases the effects of digital marketing campaigns.

Explain how SEO, SMM and email marketing work in different levels of the sales funnel.

Discuss the difficulties of calculating ROI for digital marketing and how you would address them.

With an actual or imagined example, describe how your content should be related to the sales funnel stages.

1.9 References

1. Kotler, P., & Keller, K. L. Marketing Management. Pearson Education.
2. Chaffey, D., & Ellis-Chadwick, F. Digital Marketing: Strategy, Implementation and Practice. Pearson.
3. Ryan, D. Understanding Digital Marketing: Marketing Strategies for Engaging the Digital Generation. Kogan Page.
4. Strauss, J., & Frost, R. E-Marketing. Routledge.
5. Kingsnorth, S. Digital Marketing Strategy: An Integrated Approach to Online Marketing. Kogan Page.
6. Case materials and industry reports from leading digital marketing agencies.

Answer Key to Knowledge Check (from 1.5)

1. c) Create visibility
2. b) Case studies
3. c) Conversion
4. c) Email marketing
5. a) Awareness

1.10 Case Study / Practical Exercise

Case Study: Aligning Digital Marketing with the Sales Funnel – The Example of FreshBrew Café

FreshBrew Café was a medium-sized coffee chain that lacked the resources to compete in the market with its larger rivals. Its products are good, but it struggled with fragmented marketing: relying heavily on offline and basic social media. Sales plateaued and customer engagement was sporadic. To breathe new life into its growth, FreshBrew chose to implement a formalised digital marketing plan that followed the path of the sales funnel.

Stage-Wise Approach

AwarenessStage

FreshBrew created a blog and, ensured search engines could find it through articles about coffee culture, sustainable sourcing and brewing tips. Paid Google ads focused on keywords such as “best coffee near me” and “organic café”, while social media posts featuring tempting shots upped brand exposure.

InterestStage

The café wrote downloadable e-books on coffee recipes and sustainable practices. Interactive Instagram polls and short videos shared behind-the-scenes stories. Email newsletters that curate a selection of content were launched to train interested followers.

ConsiderationStage

FreshBrew wrote competitor comparison pieces, and told prospects that their coffee was better sourced and more sustainable than competitors. They handed out free samples and gave users of their app a discount for preordering. The video promotions were interspersed with customer testimonials.

LoyaltyandAdvocacy FreshBrew rewarded happy consumers for posting small reviews of their experiences online. Social media challenges, including “Share Your Coffee Moment,” encouraged user-generated content. A referral program was launched where customers would get points for inviting friends.

Problem Statements and Solutions

Problem1:The visibilitywas low The café had no online presence and was not able to bring in new customers. The solution: SEO, paid ads, and regular blog posts led to a 60% traffic increase in six months.

Issue2:PoorCustomerEngagement Limited generic social media engagement was an ineffective interaction. Result: Interactive posts, storytelling and personalised newsletters drove engagement and they increased their Instagram followers by 40%.

Problem 3: Low Conversion and Retention Customers rarely made a purchase when they came to the site, and visits were infrequent. Solution: Retargeted ads, loyalty program and referral campaigns made 30% more customers repeat purchase.

Reflective Questions

How did FreshBrew match its digital content marketing at each level of their sales funnel?

Why did personalization matter when it came to increasing conversions for FreshBrew Café?

How might you further capitalize on earned media (like customer reviews) in FreshBrew's case?

As the handler of this campaign, which part of the funnel would you look to boost up and why?

How did technology (apps, analytics, retargeting etc) help to solve the problems experienced at FreshBrew?

Conclusion

The renaissance of FreshBrew Café provides a real-world example of how digital marketing activity that maps to the sales funnel can drive measurable business growth. By strategizing awareness via SEO, nurturing interest with education and interest, reinforcing consideration with testimonials, driving conversion through personalization and fostering loyalty through advocacy programmes - the café not only rebuilt its sales but built a community of loyal customers.

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 2 V3 (2).docx

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 ATLAS SkillTech University

Document Details

Submission ID

trn:oid::3618:127501591

Submission Date

Feb 4, 2026, 11:10 AM GMT+5:30

Download Date

Feb 4, 2026, 11:47 AM GMT+5:30

File Name

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 2 V3 (2).docx

File Size

237.1 KB

35 Pages

10,479 Words

58,772 Characters

0% Overall Similarity

The combined total of all matches, including overlapping sources, for each database.

Filtered from the Report

- ▶ Bibliography
- ▶ Quoted Text
- ▶ Cited Text
- ▶ Small Matches (less than 15 words)

Match Groups

- 0 Not Cited or Quoted 0%**
 Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- 0 Missing Quotations 0%**
 Matches that are still very similar to source material
- 0 Missing Citation 0%**
 Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- 0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
 Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 0% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 0% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Integrity Flags





0 Integrity Flags for Review

No suspicious text manipulations found.




Our system's algorithms look deeply at a document for any inconsistencies that would set it apart from a normal submission. If we notice something strange, we flag it for you to review.

A Flag is not necessarily an indicator of a problem. However, we'd recommend you focus your attention there for further review.

Match Groups

-  **0 Not Cited or Quoted 0%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
-  **0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
-  **0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
-  **0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 0%  Internet sources
- 0%  Publications
- 0%  Submitted works (Student Papers)

Unit 2: The Internet, ZMOT, and Customer Touchpoints

Learning Objectives:

1. Discuss the development of the Net and its effects on marketing as it is related to how digital connection has changed or modified consumer behavior and business.
2. Examine the digital customer journey to understand how customers engage with brands through various online and offline channels; know where to invest time, energy, and resources.
3. Describe the Zero Moment of Truth (ZMOT) as developed by Google and discuss/assess how it changes consumer decision-making before purchase.
4. Distinguish the stages (Awareness, consideration, decision, loyalty) of the digital marketing journey stressing on tactics applicable to each.
5. Discover and analyse touchpoints with customers on digital platforms, and measure the impact of each such touchpoint on conversion.
6. See theory in action with relevant real-world examples, such as cases on how PepsiCo's snack vending machine partners get the most out of their digital customer journey.

Content:

- 2.0 Introductory Caselet
- 2.1 Evolution of the Internet and Its Impact on Marketing
- 2.2 Customer Journey in the Digital Age
- 2.3 Google's Zero Moment of Truth (ZMOT)
- 2.4 Awareness, Consideration, Decision, and Loyalty Stages
- 2.5 Customer Touchpoints
- 2.6 Summary
- 2.7 Key Terms
- 2.8 Descriptive Questions
- 2.9 References
- 2.10 Case Study

2.0 Introductory Caselet

When Ravi, a 29-year-old software engineer, started looking to buy his first car last year, he didn't do what his father had two decades earlier and head out to showrooms or call up dealers. Instead, Ravi began his circuitous route online. He looked up multiple car brands on automotive websites, compared specs using Google, and read customer reviews on YouTube and forums. Before he ever walked into a dealer's showroom, Ravi had his eye on two models.

He encountered various digital touchpoints along the way. He was targeted on social media with a personalized ad featuring one of the models that piqued his interest. Offers and financing options appeared through email newsletters from auto portals. This appealed even more to his taste due to influencer videos showcasing real driving experiences. Taken together, these touchpoints shaped Ravi's desire for what he wanted to purchase and introduced him to the decision-making stage of his customer journey.

Ironically, Ravi's buying experience reflects the concept of Google's Zero Moment of Truth (ZMOT)—that pivotal online research stage when a prospect is not yet in direct contact with a seller. Ravi's journey were in fact, different vs. my 3-step customer-engagement model of your typical funnel (awareness, consideration, decision) because instead of being linear it involved back-and-forth comparisons between competitors and peer-fed reviews and digital sharing on both ends.

Ravi was very well informed by the time he made it into the dealership. He knew the features, financing deals and even typical discounts dealers offered. The sales man's job changed to just validating Ravi's online research and he also had to win over the trust for final conversion. Ravi's obsession with his current vehicular adventure didn't end when he bought it, he still talks about the car on forums and shares photos of it to Instagram. His post-purchase experience is a distillation of the buyer journey of today — beyond loyalty and into advocacy, where with their warm embrace of the product, happy customers are helping to sell the next wave.

Ravi's case also highlights how the internet has transformed marketing — and consumer behavior. The customer journey is a complex, disconnected system today — and one with countless points of contact online on the way to purchase. So basically, brands not only have to engage in the customer in the ZMOT stage but also add immediate value with their strategies and messaging content in your Consider phase while making decision and loyalty stages as frictionless as possible. In this age of hyper-connectivity, companies can no longer get away with old school only, they need future-proofed strategy rooted in being ontheMove... the digital journey.

Critical Thinking Question

If you were the marketing director for a car company, how would you revolutionize your digital strategy to assist in converting potential customers, like Ravi, by the time they

reached Zero Moment of Truth - that way your brand is one of their top choices before he steps foot on any lot?

2.1 Evolution of the Internet and its influence on Marketing

2.1.1 Early Internet and Emergence of Online Marketing

When the internet began to take off in the mid-late 1990s and throughout 2000, this signaled a new era of marketing. This is when companies began to test the waters with online channels in ways not previously attempted but they were restrained by the state of available tools as well as a limited point of consumer adoption. Fail Backwards It was rudimentary, outdated by today's standards but it was old and it laid the foundation for a future digital revolution.

Emergence of Websites

Milestones of online marketing are tagged by commercial web sites. Websites were initially approached as though they were electronic brochures providing information about companies and the good and services they offered.

They were largely static pages packed with verbiage, and the idea was to just be on the internet, not so much to engage. Businesses saw the importance of being findable on the internet, as customers searched online for information more and more.

Email Marketing

As the value of business email became universally apparent, it didn't take long for companies to begin using this new method of direct communication. The early email marketing campaigns were, for the most part, generic messages sent in massive quantities with little personalization. Mass commercial email campaigns, though successful in achieving massive coverage at minimal expense, also resulted in the problem of spam, which precipitated legislation such as the CAN-SPAM Act. All of that said, email is one of the oldest and most enduring forms of digital marketing.

Online Advertising

The mid-nineties also saw the emergence of online advertising. The first ads to be published online were banner ads, with companies paying for those running on popular sites. With novelty, click-through rates that were initially very high fell relatively rapidly as users started to ignore them. But the banner ad marked a shift from merely being present on the Web to actively advertising there.

Search Engines and SEO

Yahoo, and eventually AltaVista, then Google — they all gave us the form that online marketing has taken. Companies then started optimising their websites as best they

could for high search engine rankings, and so SEO came into existence. It was the transition from presence to intentions, then actions for visibility and extension.

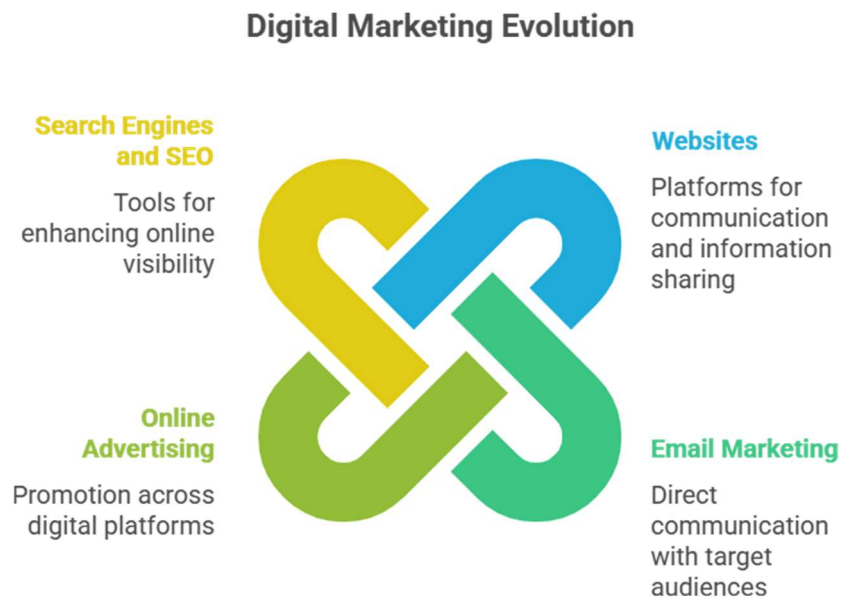


Figure 2.2

Extended Subpoints

- **E-commerce Begins:** Online shopping began with businesses like Amazon and eBay showing that people would buy things from far away.
- **Consumers Reaching as never before:** More consumers being present – driven largely by Consumer craving for availability 24×7 and resulting business focus on speed & commoditization.
- **Tracking and Analytics:** Companies released tools to provide businesses with a statistical sense of how many people visited their site, kicking off entrepreneurs' trek down the marketing-by-numbers road.

The early days of the internet were an experiment, but they demonstrated that the digital world could alter how businesses spoke to their customers. It was a time of cobbling things together and throwing them at the wall, but it opened the door for more interactive, customer-informed marketing.

2.1.2 Web 2.0, Social Media and Interactive Platforms

Consumer reshuffling of the internet deck While revised customer preferences may be anyone's guess post-big events, two trends from before 2020 had actually already begun accelerating: Happy holiays! C. Contrasting Web 1.0, which was static and not interactive (Users are restricted to passive viewing of), with the features as seen in Web

2.0 A web based application that makes usage of such technologies is also termed a social-media site Observe because serves three primary stages to its audience: it offers them content created by THEM! This revolution took marketing from a one-way shout out, in your face in-your-mouth shove-down-their-throats of customers to an open dialogue where consumers could come and 'play', tell their own stories and play a part in actually managing their brand.

Rise of Social Media Platforms

Web 2.0 turned social media into the face of the internet. Services such as MySpace, Facebook, Twitter and YouTube (later Instagram) altered how people communicated on the web. This was a great opportunity for advertisers to reach people where they spent a lot of time. Advertisers could now make ads that asked people to share, like, Comment on them. This meant advertisers could have a conversation with people not just talk at them like they used to with advertising. Advertisers could use these two-way channels of communication to connect with people and that was a big deal, for advertisers.

User-Generated Content

Web 2.0 was about getting people involved. People were motivated to write their blogs and reviews and post things on social media that actually changed what people thought about a brand more than any big advertising campaign. People talking about something to their friends and family also happened online because what a product was rated on websites like TripAdvisor or Amazon could make someone want to buy it or not want to buy it. This has completely changed things now businesses need to be honest and open, with Web 2.0 and the people who use it.

Interactive Marketing

Web 2.0 made it possible for companies to use ways to talk to people like contests, polls and games on the internet. Companies started using quizzes, challenges that people would share with others and videos that people could interact with to get people interested, in Web 2.0 and what they had to say.. That is when a new kind of marketing called experiential marketing in the digital world started to happen. Where how well a marketing campaign did depended on how much people were interacting with Web 2.0 and the company.

Data Collection and Personalization

Social media and interactive platforms became really popular. So did the amount of data they produced. When social media and interactive platforms started to be used by everyone people began to create a lot of data.

Now companies could reach people based on what they do and what they like and where they come from and show them ads that're just for them.

Social media and interactive platforms made it possible for businesses to send messages that are tailored to each person, which completely changed the way marketing worked and made customers happy, with what they got from media and interactive platforms.

Extended Subpoints

- The start of influencer marketing happened when bloggers and the first YouTubers became important voices. This led to the beginning of influencer marketing, with these bloggers and YouTubers playing a role in it. Influencer marketing really took off from there with the help of these bloggers and YouTubers.
- Community building: Brands made their places on the internet where people could talk to each other. They had conversations with the people who really loved their products. This helped brands connect with their clients in a personal way. Brands used these communities to talk to their clients directly which was a big deal for the people who really cared about what these brands were doing. Brands were building communities where people could share their thoughts and ideas, about the brands they loved.
- Viral Marketing: People were making content that others wanted to share. This was a deal, for brands because they wanted people to talk about their products naturally. They did this by coming up with interesting ideas that people could easily copy and share with others, which helped their products become popular through Viral Marketing.

The consumer became equal to the brand in Web 2.0, and it was open season for democratic marketing. But for those which embraced a commitment to openness, interactivity and storytelling has been a killer; companies that clung to one-way messaging fared very poorly.

2.1.3 Mobile-First and Always-Connected Consumers

The explosion of smartphones in 2007 and 2008 overturned consumer behaviors — the tactics marketers use to sell products, as well. As everyone started carrying the internet in their pockets, companies had to start bending to mobile-first if they wanted to stay relevant. It was a time for instant gratification, access and exposure — both blessing and curse to the marketer.

Ubiquity of Smartphones

Smartphones revolutionized the way we read, shopped and engaged with companies. Apps are now an integral part of our daily micro-moment interactions, connecting us to the services we value most: from getting around and conversing with friends, to banking and shopping. For businesses, it has meant creating apps, mobile-optimized websites and on-demand experiences.

Rise of Mobile Commerce

In e-commerce, it defaulted to m-commerce and most of the transactions happened on mobile phones. And then came software to make it easier and with less friction to buy stuff even faster: mobile wallets, one-click shopping buttons and app-based marketplaces for goods. In this case, brands needed their Q3 shopping experience to be so seamless across device that they'd stop cart abandon and drive more conversion.

Location-Based Marketing

Location-based services were made possible by mobile technology: businesses could ping offers to customers based on their location. Restaurants and other retail and service businesses could capitalize on potential new customers by sending them promotions when they were near their location. This present tense relevance is marketing precision table stakes today.

Social Media on Mobile

The mobile revolution changed the way we interact with social media, and interfaces were updated to reflect this. Add-on features like stories, reels and in-app shopping quickly followed, transforming them into integrated ecosystems for both engagement and sales. That in turn meant marketers would need to generate mobile-first campaigns with smaller and more viscerally engaging content.

Always-On Consumer Behavior

A new breed of always-connected content consuming consumers was born, so to speak, thanks to mobile devices. All of which, they had to reimagine in the world of short-attention spans, real time and always-on. Customers support on the other hand has become a matter of chatbots and mobile-friendly support consoles.

Extended Subpoints

- **Mobile Advertising:** The app, Push notifications and SMS campaigns formats were predominant.
- **Cross-Device Integration:** Yes, the Marketer asked for a consistent experience on their phone, tablet and PC!
- **Speed and Performance:** The speed at which pages load and how well apps work became critical in keeping users on mobile.

The age of mobile-first also signalled that a new normal in agility, speed and personalisation had arrived. Those that shifted with the rise of m-commerce, location based services, 'real time' were in a great competitive position.

2.1.4 TRENDS : AI, PERSONALIZATION AND DATA DRIVEN MARKETING

In addition to a suite of front-edge tech such as AI, machine learning and big data analytics found out there on the internet this day in age. These solutions enable organizations to provide individualized, automatic and targeted customer experiences with minimal investment. Marketing has gotten more predictive, responsive and customer centric.

Role of Artificial Intelligence

through the use of AI, marketers can sift through large amounts of incoming data at a size and speed we could not do on our own otherwise Chatbots, predictive analytics, recommendation engines – these are just some of the tools through which personalized experiences happen. For instance, AI powered platforms recommend products based on browsing history and incubate that business up to 3.5x faster.

Personalization at Scale

But in an era of digital media, consumers are no longer interested in one-size-fits-all messages that don't relate to them. On-the-fly content, personalised e-mailshots and dynamic sites always get their variables thanks to me. This is a strategy that does wonders to keep you in the game and loyal customers returning.

Data-Driven Decision-Making

Print 101: Big data is the future. "Embrace the imperfection of data", said Rice, and test channels quickly to discover new routes-to-market: Identify analytics to drive headlines, use customer journeys, see click trends emerge and spot engagement for real-time promotion where it matters most.

Omnichannel Marketing

One fad right now – is that it is all about brand consistency with your offline and online network. If I, as a consumer can't seamlessly go from an experience on social media, to email or web and then into my store the brands that attempt this with me will not win me over in-store.

Ethical and Privacy Considerations

Data-driven advertising raises the question of what consumers might be losing when they surrender their privacy. Legislation such as GDPR and CCPA is forcing companies to be more ethical in their data practices, which means walking a tightrope between personalization and privacy.

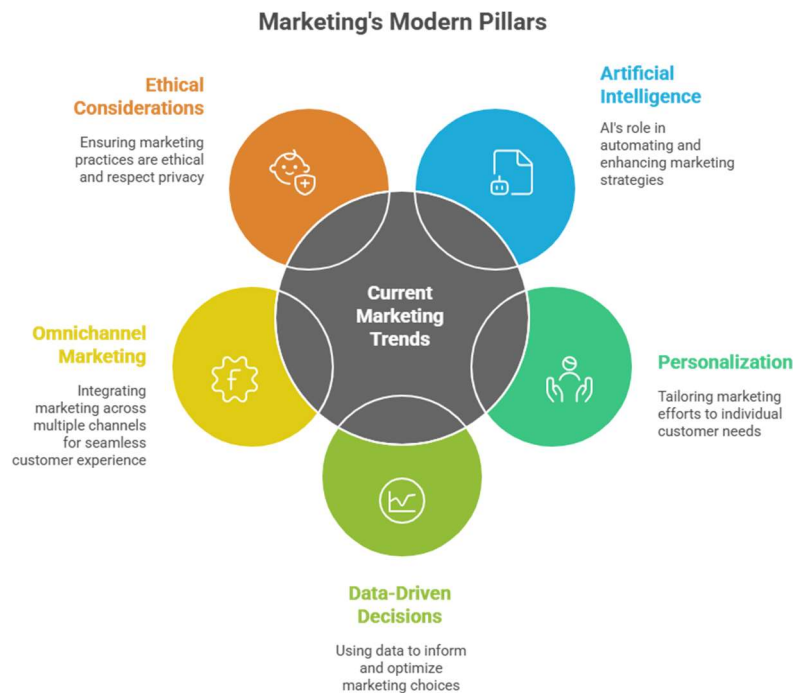


Figure 2.2

Extended Subpoints

- **Voice Search and Assistants:** Smart speakers and voice assistants are changing the way people search for products and brands.
- **Visual and Video Marketing:** TikTok, Instagram and other platforms have shown the power of visual storytelling.
- **Automation:** Whether you're talking about email workflows or buying ads, again the less human touch from people scribbling with pens down at the bottom of a building in secret obscurity is ket to more accurate algorithms.
- **Forecasting –** AI models can also forecast customer behavior and as such how to interact with them proactively.

We're in the digital age of internet-enabled marketing; one that is marked by hyper-personalization and powerful data analysis and innovation. Businesses that wield AI responsibly and focus on customer-centric experiences stand as leaders in the digital age.

2.2 Customer Journey in the Digital Age

2.2.1 Traditional vs. Digital Customer Journey

The customer journey is the course by which a person goes from hearing about a product or service all the way through making a purchase them and so on. This has

traditionally been a linear, predictable process but the digital age has had a huge impact on how we learn. When we compare the offline route as a customer journey to the digital one, we see change from controlled messaging to real time communication that is dynamic, multidirectional and engaging.

Traditional Customer Journey

LinearStructure

Historically, the customer journey has been linear in nature: awareness, interest, consideration, purchase and loyalty. Marketing depended on mass media – print, radio, TV and outdoor advertising – to create open interest.

RestrictedInformationSources In the past, customers relied solely on Brand-communication and Friends/Family-word-of-mouth for their decision making. Details were sparse, and businesses dominated the messaging.

PhysicalInteractions

The purchase stage* was generally in the brick store. Salespeople were essential for answering questions, explaining products and services and making the sale.

PassiveCustomerRole Customers were mainly passive in receipt of marketing information and had limited opportunities to provide feedback. Brand messages were one-way, the power was with businesses.

Digital Customer Journey

Non-LinearPathways

Customer journeys are complex and multifaceted in the digital era. Customers can join the trail at any stage and they may zig-zag from one step to another, or directly to others. “For instance, someone may transition straight from awareness through a social media ad to purchase through one-click checkout.

TweetCustomers have the value of thousands if not millions of pieces of online information available to them, broken down by reviews, blogs, forums, video media and social posts. A customer’s path is no longer linear! The flow of information is no longer at the brand’s command.

NumerousDigitalTouchpoints Digital life journeys cross websites, apps, social media, emails, search engines and online marketplaces. Customers see several touchpoints before purchasing from you and require a coherent narrative across all of them.

ActiveCustomerRole Timescale: Active customers are active as of the current date. They educate themselves by reading and comparing, interact with brands on social media, even create content (reviews, unboxings, testimonials) that appeals to others.

Extended Subpoints

- **Global Connection:** Customers on digital journeys are in a position to shop and buy from international brands, ratcheting up the competition.

It's that the power is shifting from businesses to consumers. In the old journey, brands were telling their stories; not so in the new journey, where customers co-create and shape that story with you — and they expect companies to be ready on a moment's notice to facilitate that partnership.

2.2.2 Multi-Device and Omni-Channel Experiences

In today's digital age, consumers consume content on different devices and platforms—which they do all at once. They expect the same seamless experience whether they catch something on their smartphone, research something on their laptop or act in-person at a store. 'The advent of multi-device and omni-channel has created the need for brands to re-evaluate customers' journeys, with a focus on ensuring that those involved are seamless, coherent and personalised across every possible touch-point.'

Multi-Device Usage

DeviceHopping

One customer journey can hop across devices. For example, an individual could be served an ad for a product on their smartphone; conduct additional research of that product on a desktop computer; and purchase the product via a tablet or smart TV. What businesses need is device continuity where the customer doesn't get interrupted.

MobileDominance

For browsing, socializing—even for shopping — people are most dependent on their smartphones. Mobilization, responsive website and apps are not only a suggestion...but an obligation.

Like peek at something online, read reviews and then decide to go into a store. Omni-channel makes for a seamless experience from physical to digital.

unifiedBranding and Messaging The concept here is that a consistent marketing message is critical across web sites, apps, emails social channels and in-store locations if it's going to work. Any channel dropout can be a trust buster.

PersonalizedEngagement

Customised deals are delivered according to data from multiple touch-points. A customer who stops by a website to see some shoes might then receive an email

pushing a shoe discount — and later find that his own social media also includes personal ads about shoes.

Customer Empowerment

OMNI-CHANNEL The experience of engaging through customers' terms. Do you want your customers to be able to start an interaction on one and continue it on another, without losing any thrust whatsoever (e.g., shopping on a mobile device can mean adding things to the cart then checking out when they're back at their desktop)?

Extended Subpoints

- **Click-and-Collect:** when customers order online and pick up in the store.
- **Channel Synergy:** Paid media drives traffic to owned sites, and reviews are published as earned media.
- **Customer Journey:** Businesses will see omni-channel behaviors so they can find pain points and improve experiences.

Did You Know?

Research shows that customers who interact with a brand across multiple channels spend 30% more compared to single-channel customers. Omni-channel shoppers also demonstrate higher loyalty, as they experience greater convenience and consistency across platforms.

2.2.3 Role of Emotions and Micro-Moments

Although technology and data rule the roost in any discussion of the digital customer journey, emotions have not lost their position at the heart of consumer behaviour. In the digital universe, micro-moments – those moments when they turn to their device with intent to learn, do, buy or discover – are increasingly married with emotions triggers that influence decisions.

Emotional Drivers in Digital Journeys

Trust and Credibility

People tend to buy from brands that they feel are trustworthy and real. Supportive customer service, clear information and positive reviews create emotional trust.

Convenience and Ease

Ease feeling is connected to emotional satisfaction. Seamless websites, speedy checkouts and intuitive apps remove annoyance and build an optimistic association.

Belonging and Identity

A lot of digital consumers opt for brands that mirror their identity or views. For instance, for consumers who are ecologically passionate, sustainable and ethical brands can be most attractive.

Excitement and Desire

Exciting campaigns, influencer endorsements effort and aspirational content make the flesh on the back of the neck stand up. Music driven emotional storytelling of digital campaigns also help brands getting noticed and form a deeper relationship with fans.

Micro-Moments in the Customer Journey

I-Want-to-Know Moments

When consumers look for information about a product or service — typically through search engines or voice-activated devices. It is at this point that brands need to provide speedy, accurate and useful information.

I-Want-to-Go Moments

These are of the form location-based search, i.e. we are given a location and we want to find the nearest restaurant or store. Companies with good local SEO provide a presence in these micro-moments.

I-Want-to-Do Moments

Users look for how-to guides, tutorials and user-generated content. For example, someone could be searching for “how to style a denim jacket” before deciding to buy one.

I-Want-to-Buy Moments

These are decisive purchase-driven actions. Brands must deliver a seamless process, complete with clear CTAs, fast-loading pages, and customized offers.

Extended Subpoints

- **Role of Social Media:** Many micro-moments occur in social media, where instant gratification and peer pressure build against decisions.

The mix of exertions and micro-moments indicate that in spite technology, the human part in decision making is stronger than ever before. Great modern brands also know that they need to be present for both the logical as well as emotional components of the customer journey and be there at those important intent-driven moments.

2.3 Google's Zero Moment of Truth (ZMOT) One pivotal model to understand v the online consumer behaviour is Google's ZMOT – an evolution of Moment-of-Truths Model (Sinha, n.d.), which describes extensively three kinds of moments: The First Milkshake Moment (FMOM): moment that occurs before the product choice; Second Moments-of-

Truths(S-MOT): it consists on how the product behaves when it`s being used and at last but not least, the most recent one in Sinha works, The Zero Moments-of-Truh(Z-Mot) v(Marques 2001).

2.3 Google's Zero Moment of Truth (ZMOT)

2.3.1 Definition and Importance of ZMOT

Definition The Zero Moment of Truth is a critical moment in the consumer's purchase-decision-making process. Historically there were two key moments of truth in the decision-making process: The first when they encountered a product on the shelf, and the second after purchase when they used it. But with the advent of the internet, mobile technology and digital media a new, even earlier stage has taken place before these two stages – Zero Moment of Truth.

ZMOT is the moment of time when online consumers research products before purchasing them. It could be scouring reviews, watching videos, scanning prices or looking for advice on forums and social media. Customers no longer make purchasing decisions solely based on ads or in-store experiences, and they are informing themselves to a high degree before they talk to a sales rep or step foot into an online or physical store.

Importance of ZMOT

Shift of Power to Consumers Consumers have more influence on choices. Rather than just taking in the brand messaging, they are now actively searching and evaluating third-party opinions.

Credibility in peer Reviews User-generated contents, such as testifying, ratings or user reviews play an increasing role. Shoppers believe these sources more than the manufacturer's advertising and ZMOT is the credibility moment of truth.

Impact on Brand Visibility Unseen The brands that don't appear in consumer research at ZMOT may as well be invisible. All of the search engines, some social proof and content that gets attention determines whether a brand even comes into the consideration set of topics.

Competitive Advantage

Businesses that discover ZMOT and then optimize for it however, are much more likely to make the sale. By providing valuable, interesting content that is real and free of push marketing, they become the "trusted advisor" in your early-stage research (more on this later).

Extended Subpoints

- **Industry Agnostic**The ZMOT procedure is not only applicable for consumer goods; it can also be used for services, health care, B2B.
- **Multiple ZMOTs:** Consumers will have multiple research moments across devices and platforms.
- **Fit to Marketing Strategy**—Brands must weave in ZMOT-worthy practices, including SEO, content-based marketing tactics, influencer collaborations and user-generated clips that keep them top of mind.

In other words, the ZMOT is "the moment of truth" when it occurs on whichever channel (& thus endpoint) a consumer's mind experiences exposure for the first time, sans physically experiencing your company. It's one of the most important concepts in marketing today.

2.3.2 How ZMOT Changed Consumer Decision-Making

ZMOT completely changed consumers' thought process when it came to decision-making the purchase, creating a touchpoint outside of our brand owned properties. No longer satisfied with simply being marketed to, consumers became engaged researchers, turning to digital tools to compare their options.

Traditional Decision-Making vs. ZMOT-Influenced Path

In the past, ads and in-store experiences were key decision drivers. Customers watched a TV commercial, went to a store and made choices with limited external information. ZMOT has made this route dynamic and non-linear, with a number of micro decisions spread across channels.

Pre-Purchase Research

Consumers today can spend hours researching before they even set foot in a store or click "buy." They check out tutorials and compare brand websites as well as customer forums. It's the 'pre-purchase' stage, which has now become a make or break moment for whether they engage with a brand.

Role of Social Proof Social proof is at the heart of decision-making. Most Read Reviews Before Buying According to studies, most of the consumers read the reviews before buying products. Signaling information by product rating on the e-commerce platform and word-of-mouth recommendation are frequently prioritized over brand statements.

Expansion of Choices Rather than constricting choices at the beginning of the process, shoppers now Add products and Brands to their consideration list at ZMOT. Competitor ads, reviews or content may influence change in preferences.

Multiple Touchpoints Decision-making now takes place across multiple touchpoints. A customer may begin with a search engine query, continue to a review on YouTube and

ultimately make a purchase through a mobile app. Each point in contact adds a little bit to their belief in that decision.

Diminished Role of Traditional Advertising Alone Traditional advertising may still funnel awareness, but it seldom brings a sale. Advertisements create curiosity, ZMOT determines if that curiosity turns into intent.

Extended Subpoints

- **Autodidacticism:** The consumers themselves are world-class experts before they even contact a salesperson, TestUtils: TestUtils is a set of utilities for testing.
- **Emotional Validation:** Research is often buoyed by emotional validation in the form of quotes from satisfied people, or recommendations from peers.
- **Transparency Cool:** A flaw is hidden for ten minutes before being exposed on the web while the cool factor raps him/her round demand transparency of brand.
- **Quick decision making:** easy access to real-time digital data quickens the decision-making process.

Changing the decision flow has forced businesses to change their marketing strategy as well. There is a new Media Moment of Truth winning -- it's being found, trusted and resonant in that moment when someone is looking for you.

2.3.3 Examples of ZMOT in Action

ZMOT exists across sectors and product types, ranging from commodities to high-involvement products. Examples from the real world illustrate how a brand gets it right and wrong in communicating with consumers at this stage.

Example 1: Consumer Electronics

Most consumers don't purchase a smartphone off the shelf without doing research, when they go and buy something. They start by comparing specs on brand websites, watch unboxing videos on YouTube and read reviews on tech blogs. Brands such as Apple and Samsung spend big in content, influencer partnerships, and review seeding to control ZMOT.

Example 2: Hospitality and Travel

Rarely do travelers book hotels without checking sites like TripAdvisor or Google Reviews. Customer reviews and photos have a lot of say in decisions. Hotels which drive 'brand advocates' to post positive responses increase the likelihood that they will rank highly during ZMOT.

Example 3: E-Commerce and Retail

Customer reviews and ratings place a huge role on platforms like Amazon. Any product with thousands of positive reviews wins out almost every time over the same with minimal feedback, no matter its brand name. Vendors who pay attention to review management and respond to customer inquiries appear to fair better in regards to ZMOT.

Example 4: Healthcare and Wellness

Before booking appointments, patients research symptoms, treatments and health care providers. Hospitals and doctors who have a strong online presence (with high-quality content), are gaining testimonials that assert their trustworthiness even faster.

Example 5: Education and Training

Prospective students are searching for universities or online classes and are reading testimonials, success stories of alumni and accreditation information before they decide to apply. To seize ZMOT, institutions are using content marketing and reviews.

Extended Subpoints

- Retail Examples: In fashion, customers are looking at influencer posts and styling guides before they buy.
- Service Industry: Food delivery apps help restaurant attract new customers through a base of app reviews and social shares.
- B2B Markets: In business markets, decision-makers read case studies, white papers and analyst reports prior to contacting vendors.

Activity for 2.3

Choose a product or service you recently purchased—such as a gadget, a subscription, or a travel booking. Reflect on your decision-making process and identify your ZMOT. Did you read reviews, watch tutorials, or compare brands online? Write down at least three digital touchpoints that influenced your choice. Share your experience with peers and discuss how brands shaped or missed opportunities to guide you during this stage. Evaluate whether your purchase would have been different without these ZMOT interactions.

2.4 Awareness, Consideration, Decision, and Loyalty Stages

2.4.1 Awareness Stage – Capturing Attention

The first stage of the customer journey is awareness, which is when possible buyers are introduced to a brand or product. “At this point, people are not even necessarily

looking to buy right away. Instead, they're discovering a problem or checking out fresh options or unaware of solutions. The primary purpose for companies here is to cause some visibility, somehow engage interest and leave a residue of relevance inside the mind of the targeted customer.

Core Characteristics of Awareness Stage

Problem Identification: Clients start recognizing a need or problem although, they may not be able to express it specifically. For instance, a person might experience fatigue and begin seeking out ways to boost energy, which could eventually take them to vitamins or lifestyle products.

Low Buying Intent: You're not dealing with people deciding to make a purchase in the awareness stage, whereas you are in later stages. Customers are shopping for ideas rather than buying.

High Competition: Opportunities are rife at this point and it's vital you stand out from the rest.

Key Strategies for Capturing Attention

Content Marketing Blogposts, Explainer Videos, Infographics and Podcasts are educational and entertaining content helping brands in engaging customers through education.

PR and Outreach:Media mentions, guest posts & influencer co-marketing serve to reach out further than the owned channels.

Extended Subpoints

- **Storytelling:** Stories that emphasize brand purpose, or provide testimonials of how a company has helped a customer do better, aren't going to sound as hollow as product-based messaging.
- **Visual Identity:** Good brand design and logos produce lasting first impressions.
- **Emotional bonding:** Emotional bonding with customers in this stage will ultimately mean that, whenever these potential customers think of purchasing a vehicle in the future, they are likely to recall you.

Selling is not the point in the awareness stage, introduction is. The brands that win in this space are also those who leave a lasting first impression and retain mindshare from this point forward in the journey.

2.4.2 Consideration Stage – Building Trust

The consideration stage is the part of your buyers' journey where they know they have a problem, and seeking out information or advice to solve that problem. They're shopping

by comparison shopping brands against features, pros and cons. At this point, your business needs to gain credibility, give extensive detail and information and begin to build trust in order to stay on the customer's shortlist of options.

Core Characteristics of Consideration Stage

Active Information Seekers: Shoppers consume content across various channels—blogs product pages, reviews, comparison guides.

Brand assessment They decide whether or not a brand fits with their values, desires and expectations.

Increased Engagement: Unlike with interest, manner of interactions served up can be void or deprived of any real merit but customers are reading or asking questions and engaging with brand-owned content themselves.

Key Strategies for Building Trust

Educational Piece Whitepapers, webinars, guides and use cases that better explain a product or offer.

Your customers, people of influence & the Industry Telling you You're Right!
harmless Author Edusson Review generate credibility.

Transparency: Transparency of what you receive for the price, what is covered and not, and established parameters instills confidence.

Land on Engagement Centers: Real time live chat, question answer and community forums get you that exposure in real time which will give your confidence the kick it needs to come back.

Side-By-Side Comparison If you're listing the alternatives: Gives your prospective customers side-by-side comparisons of your options, demonstrating that you have faith in the options provided.

Extended Subpoints

- **Email Drip Campaigns:** Time-based lead nurturing with personalized content.
- **Thought leadership** is about being honest and sharing what you have learned from your research or experiences. This helps people see that you are an expert in your field and that is what thought leadership is all, about: sharing your thoughts and ideas to help others understand things better like the things you have discovered from your research or insights.

- **Consistent Messages Across Channels:** I think it is really important that your messages are the same on every channel. If your messages are not the same on every channel people will start to doubt you. Consistent Messages Across Channels are very important because being consistent is the key, to building trust with people. Trust is something that you need to have with people if you want them to believe in what you're saying. So Consistent Messages Across Channels are crucial.

The idea is to make the brand a name that people trust to get things done. The companies that do well in this area are the ones that show people what they can do in an honest way and they have real examples to back it up. They are like the brand. The brand is, like them, a trusted solution provider.

2.4.3 Decision Phase – Driving Conversions

If the customer thinks your mobile e-commerce product website is helpful for finding what they need they are a lot closer, to buying something from your mobile e-commerce product website.

The decision is like a point where you cannot go back. This is when you stop looking at options and start making choices. You trust something because you are familiar with it. At this point you want to give a push to help someone make a decision. This push can be something you actually see like when you're very close to someone. Now you are talking about the things, like how much something costs, what you get if something goes wrong and what kind of help you will get. The brands job is to make all of this easy make you feel like you are getting a deal and make it simple for you to become a customer. The brand wants to remove all the problems that might stop you from buying something and make you feel good, about your decision to buy from them the brand.

Core Characteristics of Decision Stage

People who really want to buy something from you are now on your website. The visitors are ready to make a purchase they just need a bit of reassurance, about the product they want to buy the service they will get and the company they are buying from which is your company to feel safe when they buy something from you.

Particular Comparison: These general compare against discount, guarantee, customer service and speed of delivery.

The barrier is very sensitive. If a website is slow or a policy is not clear people will lose interest. A bad review can also cause people to disengage from the website or policy. The barrier sensitive to things like a review can lead to people losing interest, in the website or policy.

Key Strategies for Driving Conversions

People really like it when you tell them what to do. So if you want to get people to do something you should use a message like "Buy Now" or "Start Free Trial". This kind of message is called a call to action or strong CTAs for short. The stronger your CTAs are the likely people are to do what you want them to do, which is usually to buy something from you or try out your service for free. Strong CTAs, like "Buy or "Start Free Trial" can really make a big difference.

Incentives are a help. Discounts that are only available for a time can make people decide faster. Sometimes companies put things together in bundles, which can also make people make up their minds quicker. This is because people like to get deals on things they want to buy. Incentives like these can really speed up the decision-making process, for people who are thinking about buying something.

People really like it when things are easy to use. So a smooth user experience is very important. This means that pages on the website load quickly. The website is also easy to navigate.. People can pay for things in different ways. This makes things a lot simpler for the user experience. A smooth user experience is what we are talking about here. It has things, like fast loading pages and simple navigation. The user experience is smooth because it has the ability to pay with payment methods. This is good because it gets rid of the parts. A smooth user experience is what people want.

Retargeting Ads are like reminders for people who visited a website but did not complete a purchase or sign up. They help remind people who may have left something in their cart or forgotten to sign up for something. Retargeting Ads are a way to reach out to these people again and try to get them to come back to the website. This can be really

helpful for people who were interested in something but got distracted and forgot about it. Retargeting Ads can remind them about the thing they were looking at, like a product they left in their cart or a sign-up page they did not finish.

Risk mitigation is important. Things like money-back guarantees and warranties can really help. They make people feel better because they know they can get their money back if something goes wrong. Smooth return cycles are also good. They help remove doubt when you are buying something. Risk mitigation is about making people feel safe when they spend their money on something. So money-back guarantees and warranties are very helpful, for risk mitigation.

Extended Subpoints

- **Personalization:** When I look at my browsing history and the things I have bought it helps to make the things I see more interesting to me. This is because the offers are based on my browsing and purchase history, which makes the content more relevant, to my personal preferences. The personalization of content is what makes it more relevant.

Ask the writer to submit a sample.

I am sitting here wishing a paper is delivered. At the time I am also having trouble finding exactly what I want to watch on Netflix.

- **Trust and Security Seals:** When we see payment security seals it makes us feel safe. These security seals really influence what customers think about a company. The Trust and Security Seals are very important because they help customers decide if they can trust a company with their money. Seeing these Trust and Security Seals makes customers feel better, about making a payment.

You might be curious, about something so let us tell you there are lots of things that you do not know and that is what we are going to tell you so you will know and the thing is, it is really interesting to know things and that is why we want to tell you so you can know

too and the things we are going to tell you are the things that you probably did not know before and now you will know them because we are telling you.

People who shop online often do not finish buying things. In fact than 60% of online shoppers leave and do not complete their purchase.. If we use targeted retargeting with custom incentives we can win back online shoppers who did not complete their purchase. We can win back up to a third of the shoppers who were lost. This shows how important it is to convince shoppers again when they are deciding what to do.

The decision phase is a part of online shopping. This is where marketing campaigns are very important. To be successful online shoppers need to feel like they have to make a decision. They also need to feel like it's easy to buy something and that they can trust the website. If we can make online shoppers feel this way they will be more likely to buy something. We can turn people who are just looking into people who actually buy things. Online shoppers are the key, to our success.

2.4.4 Loyalty Stage – Retention and Advocation

It does not end with purchase stages the solar customer experience goes beyond the customer journey to keeping the customers getting them to buy again and telling others about it. Getting customers is a lot more expensive than selling more to the solar customers you already have and this is where customer loyalty comes in for the solar business. These solar customers become more than a reliable source of revenue for the solar company they also become people who really like the solar brand and tell others about it in person and, in reviews of the solar products.

Core Characteristics of Loyalty Stage

After you buy something the customer is happy if the equipment works well and the service and support are good. The equipment has to work and the people who help you have to be good at their job so you are satisfied, with the equipment and the service and support you get for the equipment.

Emotional Ties: People are loyal when you show them you care it is not about doing business with them. Emotional ties are about being kind and understanding not just trying to make a sale. When you have ties with people they will stick with you because they feel like you are looking out for them. Emotional ties are very important. That is what makes people loyal, to you not just because you are selling them something they need.

The value of advocacy is really important. Repeat customers talk about a business to their friends and family. They write reviews. Share things on social media. They also refer people to the business. This is, like a recommendation. Repeat customers generate word of mouth in the shape of reviews, shares and referrals.

Critical Alleviations and Advocacy Measures

I have had a great personal experience with this company. They give me gifts. I also get special birthday offers from them. They even give me recommendations, on the products they have.

Loyalty Programs are like rewards that keep you buying things from the same places over and over. They are basically reward programs that give you something, for continuing to purchase things from them. Loyalty Programs are designed to keep you coming back for more so you keep purchasing from the people.

After-Sale Service: Deal with complaints promptly and try to anticipate them.

Creating Community: Encouraging customers to participate in forums, events, or a brand community.

Having access to things like VIP clubs and getting to see new products before others do along with behind the scenes footage makes people feel like they are part of a group. This is what Exclusive Content and Access is about it is, like being a member of something special. Exclusive Content and Access gives people a sense of belonging to a membership.

Extended Subpoints

- Customer feedback loops: When we ask customers what they think and then do something about it that shows we really care about what our customers have to say. We are listening to customer feedback. We want customers to know that customer feedback is important, to us.
- Talking to each other is really important: We need to talk to each other all the time. This means we should send out newsletters and make posts. The Facebook posts and Twitter updates and newsletters will all say the thing. This way Communication is Key, to everything we do. We will use Communication to keep everything on track. Communication is what makes things work smoothly.
- Referral System: Changing content customers into advocates through referral incentives.

Loyalty is earned by more than discounts; it's about trust, emotional connection and positive experiences. Those brands focusing on the post-purchase experience are creating a cadre of repeat customers, and even advocates that can help expand their brand.

2.5 Customer Touchpoints

2.5.1 Search Engines

Viewing engines are some of the most critical moments of truth in today's digital world. Women's and men's brains are actually wired to ask questions. For the business side, it's their time to shine and the most critical stage because if they don't show up in search results, then that business won't get into a customer's consideration set at all.

Why Search Engines Matter

Discovery Point 1: Many customers begin their search Search engines are the starting point for many of your potential customers. The first few search results are the initial solutions companies think to visit.

High Intent: Intent is often clear with search queries-not so much with passive channels. The one who's typing in "best smartphones under \$500" is in research buying mode.

Credibility: People tend to trust brand websites that show up on top because its ranked higher.

Strategies for Leveraging Search Engines

Search Engine Optimization: Content that is keyword and meta tag rich will help it appear on organic searches.

Search Engine Marketing (SEM): The ability to get in front of people who are searching for terms with Google Ads or other forms of paid campaigns.

2.5.2 Social Media Platforms

Social media is really important for connecting with customers because it has entertainment, information and interaction in one place.

It is different from search engines, where people go to find something when they want to buy it.

Social media shows people things they might like when they are not really thinking about buying they are just browsing and feeling relaxed.

This makes media a great way to reach customers when they are open to new ideas and that is why social media is such a crucial touchpoint, with customers.

Importance of Social Media Touchpoints

Facebook and Instagram and LinkedIn and TikTok and Twitter have a lot of users. Businesses can use these websites to reach people over the world. There are billions of people on Facebook and Instagram and LinkedIn and TikTok and Twitter. This is a way for businesses to get their message to a lot of people at the same time. Businesses can reach people, on Facebook and Instagram and LinkedIn and TikTok and Twitter.

Two-Way Communication: Social media is based on the idea that people can talk and listen to each other. This means that social media knows that other people and others also have things to say. Social media is about two-way communication, where people can share their thoughts and hear what other people think too. This kind of two-way communication is important, for media because it allows people to really talk to each other. Social media and two-way communication go hand in hand. Social media uses this two-way communication to help people connect with each other.

Self-Discovery is about finding things we like. The recommendations we get are made by computers that try to guess what we will like. These computers look at what we liked and use that to suggest new things. They are like a helper that says "you might like this" because it is similar to something we liked already. The computers use rules to make these guesses and they are always trying to get better at it. Self-Discovery is a way for us to find things we like and the recommendations, from the computers are a big part of that.

Strategies for Leveraging Social Media

Organic: There is content published like posts and reels, stories and live videos that shows what a brand is about and makes peoples lives a little better. This content is a part of what makes a brand special. It is the posts and reels, stories and live videos that people see and remember. It helps them understand what the brand is all, about. The brand identities are shown through this content. It enriches people in some way like the posts and reels stories and live videos that we see every day.

Paid Promotions are a way to get your message out to people. These are paid posts that are shown to groups of people. The people who see these posts are chosen because of things, like how old they're what they like and what they do. Paid Promotions help you reach the people with your paid posts.

When you work with people it helps your **Influencer Work**. Working with faces earns you credibility and reach with the people who follow you. This is because people can tell when something is real and when it is not. So when you do Influencer Work with faces it is better, for you and your work.

Customer Service is a place where people can ask for help on media. They can ask questions. Get answers right away. Customer Service, on media is really helpful because it lets customers talk to someone and get the information they need immediately. Customer Service is a part of social media because customers can use it to ask questions and receive help.

Extended Subpoints

- **Community Building:** Brands bring together customers who think alike in groups or online forums which helps build loyalty between the customers and the brands. This way the brands create a bond, between the customers and the brands themselves.
- **Social Commerce -** Ain't no time like the present for seamless direct shopping conversions.
- **Virality:** When creative campaigns are really good they can become very popular quickly which helps to raise awareness of the campaigns for free. This is what we mean by virality. It is a great way, for creative campaigns and virality to get noticed by a lot of people.

Social media's role as being in service to customers is evident, yet it can also do the work of consideration and even drive conversion. These are moments of action decisions where customers decide if they want to believe and follow a brand.

2.5.3 Websites and Landing Pages

A company website is the digital HQ of any business, and just like how you prefer your visitors to interact personally with your brand, this will be YOUR primary touchpoint with your customers. Landing pages, specifically, are customized pages created to capture leads or generate conversions. Unlike social which can get introduced or engage with customers, websites build a brand persona and offer through information and transactions.

HOW IMPORTANT ARE WEBSITES AND LANDING PAGES?

Credibility and Trust: A polished looking, easy to use website provides legitimacy.

Messaging control: Websites, as opposed to social platforms, offer unfettered control of design tone and content.

Conversion Hub: The page where the conversion takes place, e.g. sign-up, download or purchase.

Ways to Enhance and Improve Landing Pages

(Accessibility Improved: Making it compatible works on your other devices.

Easy to navigate: Clean interfaces and menus make it easy for the customers to access information in a snap.

Call to Action (CTA): CTAs are strategically positioned to drive behaviours you want.

SEO Optimization: Organic traffic comes from making sure websites rank high in search results.

Personalisation: Dynamic LPs personalise content according to visitor profiles.

Extended Subpoints

Loading Speed Sluggish sites result in traffic loss, so it's crucial to speed things up.

- Trust Signals: Security badges, testimonials and certificates provide customers with a peace of mind.
- Analytics: Keeping track of clicks, scrolls and conversions can help you to optimize usefulness.

Websites & Landing Pages They are knocking it out of the park as conversion touchpoints. They also provide that final moment of decision making, and confirm the look and feel of the brand.”

Value Add: Send them something good (as in content, eg a newsletter or tips etc) and they will begin to trust you.

A/B Testing: Experiment with subject lines and format to optimize open and click-through rates.

Extended Subpoints

- Transactional Emails: Trust-building order confirmations, receipts and shipping emails.
- Re-Engagement campaigns: A reward offer for some of the currently inactive users can make them active again.
- Analytics: Open rate, click-through rates and conversion metrics to help hone.

Emails create relationship-building touchpoints, and keep brands top-of-mind long after other exchanges have passed.

2.5.5 Public reviews, testimonials and user generated content

Reviews, testimonials and user-generated content (UGC) are powerful engaging potent forces as earned media, which are messages created by customers in comparison to brands. These touchpoints are usually more credible than brand communications because they are real-time experiences.

Importance of Reviews and UGC

Trust and Credibility: Research has indicated that people trust peer reviewing more than they do advertising.

Knowledge Check for 2.5

1. Which touchpoint often reflects the first stage of discovery?
 - a) Social media
 - b) Search engines
 - c) Email marketing
 - d) Testimonials
2. Which touchpoint combines mass reach with two-way interaction?
 - a) Websites
 - b) Email newsletters
 - c) Social media
 - d) Reviews
3. Which element is central to landing pages for driving conversions?
 - a) A/B testing
 - b) Visual design
 - c) Call-to-action
 - d) Pop-ups
4. What type of email campaign revives inactive subscribers?
 - a) Welcome emails
 - b) Drip campaigns
 - c) Transactional mails
 - d) Re-engagement
5. Which customer touchpoint is considered most authentic and trusted?
 - a) Social posts
 - b) Paid ads
 - c) Testimonials
 - d) Landing pages

2.6 Summary

⌘ Digital marketing has changed with the advent of the internet, from static sites to interactive (Web 2.0) and mobile-first engagement as well as AI-based personalization.

⌘ The buyers journey used to be linear, but now- in the digital age it is dynamic, multi-touchpoint and customer-centric.

⌘ Modern consumer behavior: Omni-channel and multi-device experiences, requiring consistency on all platforms.

⌘ Feelings, micro-moments drive decisions Consumers are dominated by emotions and micro-moment decision-making; instant digital interactions shape perception of brands.

⌘ Google's, Zero Moment of Truth (ZMOT) created a new pre-purchase research stage where customers were able to see what their options were for a purchase online before ever speaking to the seller.

↓ ZMOT has empowered consumers, making reviews, comparisons and user-generated content the drivers of decisions.

The customer journey has four critical stages: awareness, consideration, decision and loyalty -- Note 6The four stages require different marketing strategies.

⌘ Traffic strategies emphasise on getting attention through telling a story, SEO, social media and from learning.

♣ Strategies of considerations Consideration tactics are all about earning the trust of the audience with objective information, however transparency, testimonials and personalisation can be advantageous.

⌘ Decision strategies mitigate friction through incentives, assurances, frictionless experiences with real-time human support.

⌘ Retention strategies have a strong leaning towards loyalty materiel available in after sales support, loyalty programs, personalization and community.

ω Search engines, social media, websites, email and reviews are but a subset of customer touchpoints which that influence, convert and advocate.

2.7 Key Terms

Zero Moment of Truth (ZMOT) — The pre-purchase phase during which individual researches online before arriving at a decision.

Omni-Channel experience - Consistent brand messaging across virtual and real world.

Micro-Moments – Moments in which consumers have a need they want answered or acted on and they turn to their device for assistance. are the intent-driven moments when we turn to devices.

Customer Journey – The entire process from customers becoming aware of the brand to being a raving fan and loyalist.

Touchpoints – The points of encounter between a brand and its customers (prospective or existing) across digital, print, television and radio etc. house industries / throughout all channels.

Stage of Awareness – The stage that an audience is at when they first become aware of, or find out about a brand.

Consideration Stage – When people are making comparisons, building trust and deciding.

Stage of Decision – The stage at which the decision to purchase is made.

Loyalty Stage – The point after-sale at which customers continue to interact with a brand.

User-generated Content (UGC) – Brand focused content generated by consumers that is not sponsored.

Search Engine Optimization (SEO) – Those that improve search engine visibility.

Social Proof – Proof of credibility (usually reviews / testimonials / endorsements)

2.8 Descriptive Questions

Contrast the traditional customer journey with the digital customer journey and what the primary differences are.

What is the importance of omni-channel experiences in influencing customer perceptions?

Explain how emotions or micro-moments affect digital consumer behavior.

Explain the concept of Zero Moment of Truth (ZMOT), and why it is changing today's marketing approach.

Explain the tactics, which businesses can accommodate at the awareness and inquiry stage of a customer's journey.

What tactics can businesses use to lower friction and increase conversions at the Deciding step?

Examine reviews, testimonials and User-Generated Content in relation to trust.

Assess the role loyalty programs and community-building play in developing customer advocates.

2.9 References

1. Kotler, P., Kartajaya, H., & Setiawan, I. Marketing 4.0: Moving from Traditional to Digital. Wiley.
2. Chaffey, D., & Ellis-Chadwick, F. Digital Marketing: Strategy, Implementation and Practice. Pearson.
3. Ryan, D. Understanding Digital Marketing: Marketing Strategies for Engaging the Digital Generation. Kogan Page.
4. Court, D., Elzinga, D., Mulder, S., & Vetvik, O. J. The Consumer Decision Journey. McKinsey & Company.
5. Google Insights. Winning the Zero Moment of Truth. Google Research Report.
6. Strauss, J., & Frost, R. E-Marketing. Routledge.

Answer Key to Knowledge Check (from 2.5)

1. b) Search engines
2. c) Social media
3. c) Call-to-action
4. d) Re-engagement
5. c) Testimonials

2.10 Case Study / Practical Exercise

Case Study: FitLife Nutrition's Digital Odyssey

FitLife Nutrition is a company which has just started up and provides organic supplements as well as wellness products. With a good product, it had been finding difficulty with sales on a consistent basis in the face of tremendous competition based in the health and wellness industry. To drive effectiveness, the company charted and adjusted the customer journey — from awareness to consideration, decision and loyalty — and focused on prioritizing crucial touch points.

Problem 1: Weak Brand Awareness

FitLife Nutrition had little to no web history. Rivals were trouncing it in search results, and FitLife was virtually absent at the awareness stage. There were sporadic social media posts, and few responses. Customers were not aware of the brand's unique selling point which was locally sourced organic ingredients.

Solution:

The business bet on SEO to rank well for keywords such as "organic supplements" and "natural vitamins." It started blogs on education, a series of short videos on Instagram and tutorials on YouTube explaining the benefits of organic nutrition. Partnerships with fitness influencers generated buzz and enabled the brand to tap new audiences. Paid Google ads campaigns for high-intent searches.

Outcome:

In just six months, web traffic surged by 70% and brand recall shot up. FitLife was added to consumers' consideration set at ZMOT.

Problem 2: Low Conversion on Decision Stage

While FitLife drove traffic, conversion rate was abysmal. Visitors dropped their carts, dubious of the authenticity of a smaller brand. Comparison of prices with bigger rivals discouraged final purchases.

Solution:

FitLife incorporated trust-building factors: the presentation of certifications, a money back policy and videos from satisfied customers. Ad retargeting reminded users about abandoned carts and limited-time offers encouraged purchases. Multiple payment methods and a streamlined checkout process minimized friction.

Outcome:

Cart abandonment dropped by 25% and the conversion rate rose with 40%. Customers listed trust signals and incentives as two key elements.

Issue 3: Lacklustre Customer Retention and Advocacy

There was no follow up post purchase leading to little repeat sales. Customers would tend to trial those products, but transition to competitors as a result of stronger loyalty programs. The level of advocacy was extremely low as FitLife never promoted to write a review or made recommendations.

Solution:

FitLife introduced a loyalty program which awarded points for returning customers. Customized emails suggested matching items based on purchase records. On social

media, fans were encouraged to share transformation stories and photos with a series of branded hashtags. Good reviews were rewarded with rebate coupons.

Outcome:

Repeat purchases increased 35%, and user-generated content campaigns increased FitLife's social reach by 100%. Friends of loyal customers began to get referred and the customer base grew by word-of-mouth.

Reflective Questions

How did FitLife Nutrition increase its brand awareness at the top of funnel to compete with larger brands?

What was so critical about establishing trust in the decision stage, and what were some of your most effective strategies?

How may user-generated content be the decision stage but also loyalty-stage tactic?

If you were leading the FitLife team, what is one additional customer touchpoint (search, social media, email, reviews) that you would want to invest more in?

How would FitLife leverage micro-moments (I-want-to-know, I-want-to-buy) to acquire customers more efficiently?

Conclusion

FitLife Nutrition: As a Case Study in Strategy at Every Stage of the Customer Experience
The story of FitLife Nutrition is a great example of how businesses need to be strategic throughout each stage of the customer journey. Through raising awareness via content and influencers, increasing conversions through trust signals and building loyalty with personalization and advocacy, the brand literally change its entire digital profile. It also emphasises that when customer touchpoints are appropriately designed in a process-oriented perspective, they create an integrated experience for sustainable growth.

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 3 V3 (1).docx

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 ATLAS SkillTech University

Document Details

Submission ID

trn:oid::3618:127454811

Submission Date

Feb 3, 2026, 6:14 PM GMT+5:30

Download Date

Feb 3, 2026, 6:25 PM GMT+5:30

File Name

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 3 V3 (1).docx

File Size

158.8 KB

23 Pages

6,589 Words

37,167 Characters





1% Overall Similarity

The combined total of all matches, including overlapping sources, for each database.




Filtered from the Report

- ▶ Bibliography
- ▶ Quoted Text
- ▶ Cited Text
- ▶ Small Matches (less than 15 words)

Match Groups

-  **3 Not Cited or Quoted 1%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
-  **0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
-  **0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
-  **0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 1%  Internet sources
- 0%  Publications
- 1%  Submitted works (Student Papers)

Integrity Flags

0 Integrity Flags for Review

No suspicious text manipulations found.

Our system's algorithms look deeply at a document for any inconsistencies that would set it apart from a normal submission. If we notice something strange, we flag it for you to review.

A Flag is not necessarily an indicator of a problem. However, we'd recommend you focus your attention there for further review.

Match Groups

- 3 Not Cited or Quoted 1%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- 0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
- 0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- 0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 1% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 1% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Top Sources

The sources with the highest number of matches within the submission. Overlapping sources will not be displayed.

- Internet**
elsnertechnology.blogspot.com <1%
- Submitted works**
University of West London on 2024-05-16 <1%
- Internet**
www.primal.co.th <1%

Unit 3: Introduction to SEO & SEM

Learning Objectives:

1. Describe fundamental structure and function of search engines today.
2. Explain the difference between Search Engine Optimization (SEO) and Search Engine Marketing (SEM), including their benefits and disadvantages, in addition to which scenarios you should use each.
3. Describe how SEO / SEM contribute to the visibility / traffic dimension in the context of digital marketing.
4. Review the place of search within the context of the digital marketing family, and how it connects with content strategy, user behavior, and web analytics.
5. Assess how well SEO and SEM strategies are working across a range of business scenarios with real-world examples, case studies and more.
6. Decipher technical jargon used in the SEO, SEM, and search engine industry.
7. Use basic SEO/SEM principles on real-life cases to suggest optimization plans.

Content:

- 3.0 Introductory Caselet
- 3.1 Fundamentals of Search Engines
- 3.2 SEO vs. SEM
- 3.3 Digital Marketing Ecosystem & Role of SEO/SEM
- 3.4 Summary
- 3.5 Key Terms
- 3.6 Descriptive Questions
- 3.7 References
- 3.8 Case Study

3.0 Caselet Title: "Clicks & Conversions: The Curious Case of Cafe Caffeine"

Cafe Coffee Day, a warm and lively coffee shop in the heart of Bengaluru was a local haunt known for its crafted coffee creations. But foot traffic through the cafe was strong while its online presence - not so much. They had a website up and running,

proactively using social media accounts and the like—but relatively little had been sold online.

Alarmed by this disconnect, the owner, Aanya Sharma, finally contacted a digital marketing agency for a diagnostic. Their results were unmistakable: Cafe Caffeine was virtually invisible on any SEO site. The site had no search engine optimization in place and the company was not running paid search ads.

This involved creating a well-crafted meta descriptions with the reference of “best coffee in Bengaluru,” listing the site on local directories, having appropriate keywords and getting things up to speed etc. Second, they advised a conservative spend on SEM to advertise and increase visibility during peak times.

Aanya consented to both. In the subsequent weeks, traffic to the site grew. The café’s name was linking to the summer camp on Google searches. SEM campaign has also provided instant exposure, resulting in a significant increase in online orders and the number of reservation requests.

The change demonstrated the power of a well-planned search. Aanya learned about the importance of being searchable online in addition to offering excellent in-store service. The Cafe Caffeine incident was a hard-learned lesson on the need to ensure your SEO/SEM campaigns are all parts of an integrated digital marketing strategy.

Critical Thinking Question:

How can small businesses like Cafe Caffeine determine the most cost-effective balance between SEO and SEM when launching or scaling their digital presence?

3.1 Fundamentals of Search Engines

3.1.1 Crawling – How Search Engines Discover Content

Crawling: the first step we take in a search engine’s lifecycle. It is an automated mechanism that lets search engines to find new and modified material on the web. The ones that manage to do this are called web crawlers, spiders, or in short bots.

When search engines start crawling, they send these bots out to crawl web pages following links from already known sites to new/updated ones. Crawlers begin with a list of URLs to begin crawling from, which is called the seed list; the web crawler then visits webpage one by one and keep moving to linked pages and so on. Search engines use this iterative process to explore the web for billions of images and other file types.

Crawling is not only limited to text content. Bots are also able to recognize images, videos, docs, PDFs and dynamically generated content that is enabled through

JavaScript or AJAX (with some exceptions concerning the latter). The idea is to determine the "content" of each page so that a value judgment can be made and it can be stored for the next processing phase (indexing).

Robots use to which web crawlers must follow. txt protocol, a code that website owners employ to specify which areas of their site should and shouldn't be crawled. This file can grant or deny access to specific bots for specified URLs. Site maps can also be submitted by webmasters to search engine crawlers so that they know which pages are important and updated on a site.

A few factors that can impact how well you're crawling. For example, crawl budget — how many pages a crawler is willing and able to crawl on a site — can be restricted. Websites with bad internal linking, dead pages or server errors may not be deep crawled. In addition, too much JavaScript or bad mobile friendliness makes it hard for a crawler to read content of the page.

Additional aspects of crawling include:

- **Canonicalization:** When there are multiple versions of a page (eg: an HTTP and an HTTPS version), for instance, search engines need to understand which one is the canonical (primary) and crawl/index that specifically.
- **Intelligent URL Handling:** Crawler should be intelligent enough to deal with parameterized URLs so that it doesn't crawl and save duplicate content.
- **De-duplication of content:** Crawl process needs to identify the copied versus originality of the crawled web pages, so that unnecessary processing can be avoided and correct indexing is established.

Crawling is a fundamental part of SEO because sites that aren't crawled can't be indexed or ranked.

3.1.2 Indexing – Organizing and Storing Information

After crawling, the second most important thing is Indexing. Indexing is the process by which search engines retrieve and store the contents of a website but prefer to index only those sites that will offer valuable content. This is comparable to organizing books on a shelf of library in the index system for easy accessibility and retrieval.

When a search engine spider scans a web page it reads certain components of the content — headings, meta tags, keyword density, alt attributes and more. This content is then parsed and entered into the search engine's index — a collection of data that stores information about trillions of web pages. But not all crawled pages are indexed. Pages could be de-indexed for a number of reason such as thin content, duplicate content, spammy etc., or simply because they have been instructed to by the use of directives in your robots meta-tag (e.g. noindex).

The indexing process involves:

- **HTML Parsing:** The structure of webpages is parsed to retrieve headers, body text, anchor text, media objects and embedded metadata.
- **Mapping:** term is analyzed and mapped onto other terms indicative of other topics.
- **Context Analysis:** Human language processing (NLP) tools that deduce meaning and intent from content.
- **Semantic Relations:** Links between content entities and concepts in Web data allow for context-based targeting to keywords.
- **You can save the data in Datacenters:** Once solved, the information is stored on multiple datacenters all over the globe for quick access and redundancy.

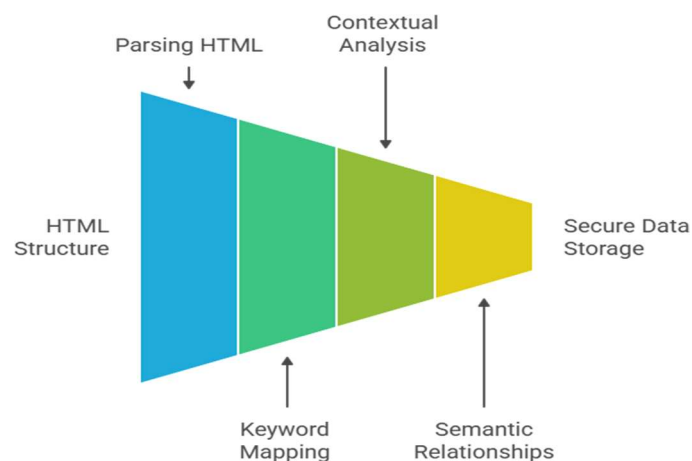


Figure 3.1

Several things impact whether and how a page is indexed:

- **Canonical Tags:** These are signals to bots what version of a page is desired among duplicates.
- **Meta Robots Tags:** You can use these to tell crawlers not to index a page or follow its links.
- **Index Bloat:** Causes watering down of the rest of a site's SEO if worse pages are indexed.
- **Crawl Errors:** If pages have server errors, 404s, or a poor site structure, they may not get indexed at all.

Structured Data and Schema Markup In addition, search engines today use structured data as well (and schema) to make indexing easier. These are pre-defined species

that help search engines know what type of everything is it, (product detail, review, article and recipe etc..)

Getting your pages indexed correctly is the first step to appearing in search results. We can be more aware of how many pages are indexed and why others might not have been included through programs like Google Search Console.

3.1.3 Ranking – Retrieval of the Search Results and their Positioning

The second step in the search engine journey is ranking after the page is indexed. Ranking is the position of indexed pages on a search engine results page (SERP), which is in response to a user query. This is done to give you the most relevant, trustworthy, and high-quality search results according to what you are searching.

Algorithms (which often consist of hundreds of factors) are what search engines use to rank web pages. These algorithms are designed for relevance, authority, freshness and good user experience. Though the mechanics of each search engine's ranking formula are proprietary and constantly-changing, a few fundamentals remain consistent.

Key ranking factors include:

- **Query Relevance:** The degree to which the terms of an user's query match those on a page. It also takes into account the existence of keywords in titles, headings, meta descriptions and body text.
- **Authority and Trust Factors:** Based on inbound links to a page, age of the domain, brand signals.
- **User Interaction Metrics:** Search engines evaluate how a page performs against user interactions (click through rates, time on site, bounce rates etc.) and if they return to it.
- **Content Quality:** Your content must be unique, well-written and informative - free of any grammatical errors. Higher ranking is given for those pages that show E-A-T.
- **Mobile Friendly:** With mobile-first indexing the new standard, search engines like Google will favor pages that look good on phones and tablets.
- **Page Speed and Core Web Vitals:** Pages that load quickly, work well with users and stay still on the screen are more desirable.
- **Safe Connection (HTTPS):** Encrypted pages are given preference when browsing.
- **Freshness:** Newer content is ranked higher for time-sensitive queries, such as news or events.

Search engines are also using machine learning based models (such as Google's RankBrain) to better understand complex queries and user intent. These types of

models are capable of modulating the effect or impact, that ranking factors have on an individual query based on what is being queried.

Additional ranking considerations include:

- Rich Snippets/Structured Data: Enhanced factuality (listings with reviews, FAQs & other schema data elements may win more).
- Local search: In a local geographic search, results on the SERP show to be influenced by local SEO signals; such as google business profile listing and location (keyword).
- Personalization: Responses to local queries can be personalized based on a user's past activities, geographical location and contexts.

Because as it turns out, ranking is a competition. “But it doesn’t matter how good a page is, they also have to be better than everyone else’s who’s trying to rank for those keywords and that search intent.” Consequently, continued fine-tuning and monitoring is required to maintain high rankings.

3.1.4 Factors Influencing Search Engine Algorithms

Search engine algorithms are, at the core of it all, the brains in charge of determining what content is going to be displayed where. To do this, these algorithms consider even more on-page and off-page methods to ensure that they are providing the most relevant and technically correct results for a user’s query. The exact algorithms of the algorithms are a closely held secrets, but between enough independent studies, what is known about the industry and official statements made by search engines, we have been able to piece together many aspects of it.

Core factors influencing algorithms include:

- On-Page SEO : These are the factors which a web master can manage.
 - o Keyword Optimisation: How well keywords are placed in titles, headers, URLs and body.
 - o Content Organization: Effective organization of headings, paragraphs, bullet points and media to make your content easy to engage.
 - o Meta Tags: Title tags and meta description help search engines know what the page is about.
 - o Internal Linking: Assists search engines in finding new pages and knowing the structure of your site.
- Technical SEO Factors:
 - o Site Structure: A good organized site is easier for crawlers to understand.

o Mobile Optimized: responsive is very important to ranking.

o Page Speed: Load Time affects not only your users but also performance in the search engines.

Convert dynamic URLs to static ones and prevent common duplicate content issues.

- Off-Page SEO Factors:

o Backlinks: The number and authority of backlinks is still one of the most powerful ranking signals.

o Anchor Text: The text that can be clicked within a hyperlink provides context to the page it is linking to.

o Social Signals: More indirect, but high social engagement can increase reach and therefore indirectly affect rankings.

- User Experience and Behavioral Signals:

o Bounce Rate: If you have a spike in your bounce rate, it could be an indicator of either poor relevancy or content.

o Engagement Time: Longer time spent might be an indicator that the content is helpful.

o Click-Through Rate (CTR): Indicates how attractive your listing is to users.

- Content Freshness and Updates : Updated contributions are preferred, especially for time-sensitive topics.

- Structured data: Helps search engines understand content more accurately and helps with rich results in the SERPs.

- Security (HTTPS): A secure sitetype isn't an enormous ranking factor, but it matters.

- Geographical and Language Indicators: IP address, ccTLDs, hreflang tags lend a helping hand with the localization.

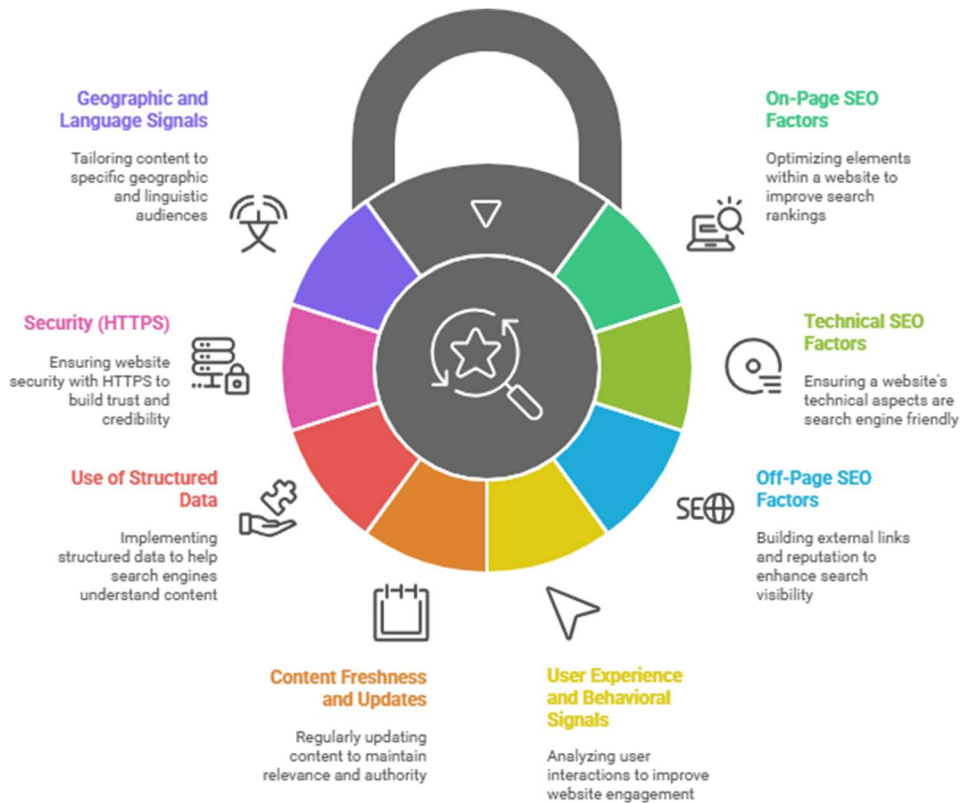


Figure 3.2

Algorithms change often — Google makes hundreds of updates each year alone. Large core updates can cause big fluctuations in rankings, so it behooves site owners to keep up on best practices.

"Did You Know?"

"Google's search algorithm uses over 200 ranking signals to determine the order of search results, but not all are equally weighted. Some factors like high-quality backlinks and relevant content carry more influence than others, making ongoing optimization a strategic necessity for visibility."

3.2 SEO vs. SEM

3.2.1 Definition and Scope of SEO

Search Engine Optimization (SEO) is the practice of optimizing websites, web pages, and digital content to be easily found through organic search engine results. SEO is about optimizing a site to be found by the search engines when selected keywords or

phrases are used in queries, and attracting that traffic to your website with appropriate content as linked from SERPs.

SEO is a big discipline and involves multiple areas with all them having their own practices, tools and goals:

- **Optimizing for the web:** Optimizing for the web is more than simply writing high-quality content. Some of the components are keyword research and targeting, content creation at its best; meta tags (including title and description), headers, alt text for images and URL structure. There is a strong focus on content relevance, readability and structure from an on-page SEO perspective.
- **Tech SEO:** This field optimizes the website infrastructure to let search engines crawl, understand and index it effectively. Technical SEO involves things like site speed, mobile-friendliness, secure connection (HTTPS), have a structured data markup, use canonical tags and fix crawl errors.

This incorporates blog posts, infographics, how-tos, videos and FAQs specific to the target market. Content Needs to be Original, Valuable and Fresh We don't want content that has been covered a zillion times else where on the net.

- **Local SEO:** Concentrating on making a business's online presence more visible when people perform location-based searches. This includes creating and maintaining your Google Business Profile, local keyword optimization and monitoring customer reviews.

SEO takes time to see results, it's just the way it is. The only difference is that SEO does not give instant results, but provides visibility to the site across a period of time. Implemented properly, SEO can provide long-lasting traffic and conversions at a fraction of the cost of paid search. But, it takes work. Transparency and knowledge are key in this industry.

To manage SEO activities, tools such as Google Search Console are commonly used to measure performance (impressions, clicks, click-through rates (CTR), and keyword rankings) of the SEO strategy implemented. Other analytics tools allow you to see bounce rates, session duration and other engagement stats.

Ultimately, SEO is a complex blend of processes that combine content production, technical configuration and strategic initiatives to increase organic prominence and authority on search engines.

3.2.2 Definition and Scope of SEM

SEM covers a wider scope than SEO which is related to optimizing your site for organic search but is focused on excluding the use of paid advertising to be visible in SERP. The essence of SEM is based on utilizing advertising networks such as Google Ads or Bing Ads to show ads to end users, who type search queries.

SEM at a Glance SEM includes many moving parts, including using keywords and native advertising that will lead to your business's message — and website — being shown in front of potential customers actively searching for products or services:

- **Paid Search Advertising (PPC):** Pay-Per-Click (PPC) is the most popular type of SEM. Advertisers bid on keywords and are charged only when a user clicks on their ad. These ads show at the top and bottom of the search results page, identified as “Sponsored” or “Ad.”
- **Campaign management:** Good SEM campaigns are developed and managed with specific defined objectives. The campaigns are organised into ad groups which include Keywords, ad creatives and landing pages relevant to user intent.
- **Keyword Bidding & Targeting:** Advertisers use keyword planners to target high performing Keywords. From there, they bid on keywords by competition, relevance and anticipated ROI. You can refine your targeting even more by location, device, age and gender demographic, time of day factoring and language.
- **Ad Copy and Creative:** Writing good ad copy is everything. Headlines, descriptions and extensions need to fit in with the user's intent in persuasive terms.
- **Optimized Landing Page:** The ad must lead visitors to a well optimized landing page that is relevant to the intent of the ad. The page should be fast, mobile-optimized and have explicit calls-to-action (CTAs).
- **Budgeting and ROI Management:** Search Engine Marketing includes budget while purchasing keywords and the companies purchase those with lots of care. We will actively track and optimize CPC rates, conversion rate, ROAS & quality score factors.
- **A/B Testing and Optimization:** It's a common practice for advertisers to do split tests on different ad versions, headlines, and landing pages to see what works best.

Unlike SEO, traffic from SEM is not limited to a few months before you start reaping the rewards. It's perfect for quick campaigns with time-sensitive offers, product launches or promotions, and when breaking news is critical to the story. But SEM can be pricey if not executed carefully, competing in high-bid price industries.

SEM is measurable, scalable and flexible and can be a useful tool for companies that need to gain market traction quickly. But it needs to be carefully planned and timed with the appropriate monitoring to ensure that the desired results are achieved without wastage of budget.

3.2.3 Key Differences Between SEO and SEM

While the goal of SEO and SEM is to appear in search, they are largely different, and generally take longer periods of time when operating on a pure SEO approach. Knowing

the difference plays an important role for marketing specialists when shaping a strategy in terms of business goals, budgets and deadlines.

Cost Structure:

- o SEO is largely unpaid. It's an investment of time and money into the development, optimization, writing of content, technical fixes. Traffic is organic and not generated by PPC.

- o In SEM visibility is directly purchased. Each click on an ad is paid for by an advertiser. Cost is determined by keyword competition, ad quality & industry standards.

Timeline for Results:

- o SEO is not fake It does give result but it requires time. It will take a few weeks to months for optimised pages to rank, depending on competition and domain authority.

- o SEM delivers immediate visibility. Ads can be up and running in a matter of hours, so it's ideal for last-minute campaigns.

Placement on SERPs:

- o Results from an SEO search appear in the organic listings (as opposed to the sponsored ads).

- o SEM Sponsored Ads can be found at top and bottom of SERPs, even above first organic search results.

Sustainability:

- o SEO offers long-term benefits. When a page is ranking well, it can stay there with very little ongoing work.

- o SEM traffic goes away when the ad spend stops. One-off funding gives only a temporary effect.

Click-Through Rates (CTR):

- o User tend to trust organic results more than others and – users may be more likely to click on SEO entries too.

- o SEM ads can have lower CTRs when they are not optimized, although some types of ad (e.g., shopping ads) perform very well.

Conversion Strategy:

- o SEO is complemented by content marketing, brand authority and a long term objective of building relationships.

o SEM is transaction or conversion driven and it does work well when we have specific, transactional objectives.

Control and Testing:

o SEO updates require time to propagate and do not allow rapid testing.

o SEM provides surgical-level efficiency—you can control ads, audiences and budget with detailed granularity, all while monitoring real-time analytics generated by your strategies and brands testing changes quickly.

SEO is great for building long-term traffic but takes time to build up, whereas SEM can result in traffic quickly but only lasts as long as you continue a campaign. Marketing technologists tend to strike a balance between the two.

3.2.4 Importance of Integrating SEO & SEM in Marketing

In today's digital marketing competitive environment, it has now become indispensable to combine SEO and SEM. Brand's can be handcuffed having to choose one (or maybe zero) of the aforementioned. An integrated approach combines the advantages of both tactics for greater exposure, data integration, and ROI.

- Maximized Visibility Across SERPs:

When used in conjunction, SEO and SEM can entirely take over both the organic and paid results sections of a search engine response page (SERP). This twin presence enhances brand omnipresence and affirms positive reinforcement among the users.

Activity: Strategy Simulation – Build Your SEO + SEM Blueprint

Students are divided into small teams and given a fictional business scenario such as launching a new organic skincare brand or a local fitness studio. Each team must create a strategic blueprint integrating SEO and SEM components. The blueprint should outline keyword strategies, content plans, ad campaign ideas, landing page elements, and budget allocations. Teams will present their plans, justifying their choices and explaining how they would adapt based on real-time data insights. This activity encourages practical application of concepts and critical thinking in planning integrated search campaigns.

3.3 Digital Marketing Ecosystem & Role of SEO/SEM (Search Engine Optimization/Search Engine Marketing)

3.3.1 SEO/SEM within the Overall Digital Marketing Structure

The DME is composed of several channels, and while each can serve a purpose on its own: collectively these resources will help you raise brand awareness, engage with customers or make a sale. (Search engines are the vehicles that navigate this new space, and among these there is considerable old content: advertising. SEO and SEM (search engine optimization/ marketing) are two ingredients of the same formula; without them it's even harder to attract visitors. Search-driven marketing is a segment which leverages this user intent to ensure that at every step of the buying cycle the user can find a piece of content on what's relevant for them.

What is Digital Marketing Made Up Of?

What is content marketing A strategic marketing approach focused on creating and distributing valuable, relevant content to attract and retain a clearly defined audience. content is something you can generate organically by an organic search with SEO, and just simply prop it up through SEM to get there faster, for example pay a run of site.

5- Marketing through Social media: Businesses are also utilizing Facebook, Instagram, LinkedIn and Twitter to share content and build relationships with consumers. SEO gains juice from extra sharing and back links, SEM systems connect directly to social platforms for retargeting and multi- platform ad serving.

- Email Marketing: Engage and convert with email blasts. SEO generates traffic to landing pages where you can collect subscribers; however, SEM has a capability of also delivering new leads directly through lead generation ads.
- Affiliate and Influencer Marketing: Leverage third parties to generate content or product promotion. Traffic and backlinks paid for from these partners boost SEO, whereas the paid influencer promotions essentially replicate the performance-oriented model of SEM.
- Web Analytics & Data: This involves in using tools like Google analytics, Search Console with the help of which you can measure SEO performance. SEM campaigns are provided highly detailed in paid ad networks. Together, these uses cases inform strategy and maximize content.

In this broader picture of the life design and work overall plans how, SEO is all too often considered a long-term traffic plan to bring trust and authority to the page. SEM adds an additional component by allowing you to immediately appear in front of searchers searching for what you provide. For example, it is an SEO can help a blog to rank for its generic content query in search and SEM ensures that the ad appears only when they are ready to buy.

They also need to be part of the digital infrastructure, and coherent when it comes to tone, message, keyword strategy or funnel approach (to avoid a scattering of potential / audience). A user that discovers a brand via SEO may convert on a retargeting SEM ad at

some point, or vice versa. Therefore, they should not be working as separate development channels, but rather consider a centralised strategy for digital.

Additional reasons of SEO/SEM to the ecosystem, include:

- In Customer Journey Mapping : SEO is pulling in the MOFU / BOFU but SERP helps on that otherwise SEM assists with you TOFU content discovery.
- Cross-Channel Attribution: Understanding the part that SEO, SEM etc play in converting along with email, direct or referral traffic.

Conversion Rate Optimization (CRO) We receive indications from both channels of what to change on our landing pages, UX and more in order to increase the conversion rates.

Role Of SEO In Organic Growth 3.3.2

The pillars of digital marketing: #1 — SEO for organic growth. Organic visitors, aka organic traffic are those people who arrive at a website via an unpaid (not sponsored) search engine query. Unlike paid media, SEO results do not halt as soon as you stop paying for a campaign.

SEO and organic growth is a multifaceted player in the game:

- Perpetual Visibility: The cost for search engines page ranking does not need premortar to be able to direct the targeted traffic. With old SEO campaigns, they get into light and you could probably pay fewer traffic.
- Authority & Trust: Search engines prefer content from authority or trusted perspective. SEO is building domain at least backlink, or authority with expert content and site organization that will make the user trust and respect you.
- The content optimisation: SEO is all about developing content around specific keywords that people search for. This pairing makes it much more likely that your result will be shown when a user searches for anything related to something you post, which in turn brings tons of high-quality traffic.
- Better User Experience (UX): Good UX consists of fast loading pages, mobile-friendliness, easy navigation and useful content. These are attributes that lead to increased engagement, lower bounce rates and in turn, better rankings.
- Discoverability Through the Funnel: SEO targets users in various parts of the purchase funnel. The Top-of-Funnel traffic arrives on informational blog posts and the bottom of funnel intent is satisfied by product or service pages.
- For Regional Expansion: Local SEO allows businesses to reach out to their region-based customers concentrating on local listings, geo-targeted keywords and local content.

- Performance Measurement - We rely on platforms like Google Search Console and web analytics tools to track performance. This data leads to further development of content and targeting keywords.

That's bad and as soon the money tap is turned off, reach is reduced to zero, whereas with SEO your money continues to produce results. Proof: an optimized article can continue to earn through traffic months or years after it was written. This long-term residual effect is what makes SEO a truly cost-effective investment for start-ups, SMEs, and even big brands.

It also reduces cost to acquire a customer throughout time. For instance, the more you get people coming in organically, the less you depend on paid. Yet another side-effect of SEO is attracting leads that are less likely to be turned off by what I would even title an assumption because trust!

And SEO is the handmaiden of other digital marketing channels. Great content can be spun off into email newsletter articles, social media posts and lead magnets. This interconnection

reinforces the broader marketing environment, turning SEO from a traffic driver into strategic content hub.

- Budget Flexibility: Search engine marketing has the ability to manage daily or even campaign-level budgets, so it can be scaled for businesses of all sizes. Advertisers have the ability to pause or ramp up campaigns based on performance and budget.
- Optimized landing pages: SEM traffic can be driven to a strong, conversion-oriented landing page with tailored messaging that has been highly optimized for conversions. Messaging can be customized based on the keyword and user segment.
- Opportunity for Remarketing: SEM provides a means through which businesses can target users who have visited the site before, thereby re-engaging with potential customers who failed to convert during their initial visit.
- Product Listing Ads (PLAs): For e-commerce companies, SEM promotes product-specific ads that include pricing, reviews and visuals. These type of ads show up at the top of search results – where high intent buyers look first.

SEM also enables performance visibility. Advertisers are able to monitor the impressions, clicks, CTR (click-through rate), conversion rates and ROAS. This live information aids in immediate decision making and campaign tuning.

For fast-moving segments or for competitive product introductions, SEM provides an advantage by securing market penetration ahead of competitors. For start-ups or new sites without SEO authority, SEM opens the door to competitive high-value search terms.

But SEM also has its limitations. Visibility is contingent on budget. The traffic dies when ad spend does. Furthermore, a high contention can also lead to increasing CPC and even account to be too expensive over time. As a result, you shouldn't rely on SEM as your only strategy — it's hard to ignore how attractive the relative ROI can be when compared with other online marketing channels.

3.3.4 Case for Combining SEO, SEM, and Other Channels

The fullest image view on what motivates a market to buy from you and what inhibits them does not segment "search", SEO, SEM or other channels by themselves but sees each as dimensions that connect with others and build the whole. Put together, there are several touchpoints through the customers journey and you see how you boost your brand visibility, engagement and conversion.

Following are some of the prime advantages and some tactics to integrate both these channels:

- **Holistic Keyword Approach:** Successful SEM keywords can inform SEO content. Similarly, organic search data can be used to find cost-efficient SEM objectives.
- **Cross-Channel Audience Insights:** Email, social and web traffic behavior can be leveraged to fine-tune search marketing campaigns. Vice versa, search data can inform audience segmentation in other channels.
- **Retargeting and Remarketing:** Once users find a site through a search, please don't stop there. You can retarget them across other channels including SEM and social ads to boost conversion rates and brand recall.
- **Content Promotion:** Well performed SEO content can be pushed to scalable paid channels promoting initial visibility and links, assisting the overall SEO strategy in the long-run.
- **Attribution Modeling:** Through identifying user touchpoints across SEO, SEM, email and social media offerings, marketers can gain more insight into strategies that lead to increased conversion rates and how marketing budgets should be allocated.
- **Drives Consistency in Message Across Channels:** A unified voice of the brand, together with a clear value propositions across SEO content, SEM ads, social posts and emails builds credibility and trust.

An apparel brand, for instance, would leverage SEO to create lengthy-tail content about seasonal trends, SEM to push flash sales, social media to curate person-generated content and electronic mail for loyalty. Both together supplement one another, to move the prospect further down the sales funnel.

The case for integration is strongest when teams work together across silos, sharing data, tools and goals. SEO data powers SEM, and vice versa in the form of insights. This cooperation streamlines inefficiencies and optimizes roi.

Knowledge Check: Digital Marketing Ecosystem & SEO/SEM

1. What is the primary advantage of SEM over SEO?
 - a. Long-term growth
 - b. Lower cost
 - c. Immediate visibility
 - d. Higher credibility
2. Which of the following is part of the digital marketing ecosystem?
 - a. Print media
 - b. Email marketing
 - c. Billboards
 - d. Radio ads
3. Local SEO primarily helps businesses with:
 - a. Global reach
 - b. Paid ads
 - c. Regional growth
 - d. Viral campaigns
4. What does SEO rely on for sustainable traffic?
 - a. Paid ads
 - b. Organic rankings
 - c. Sponsored posts
 - d. Direct traffic
5. One key reason to integrate SEO and SEM is to:
 - a. Lower search volume
 - b. Improve TV ratings
 - c. Maximize SERP presence

d. Replace other channels

3.4 Summary

⊞ Search engines work by the crawling, indexing and ranking trend to match search results with the user's content.

⊞ Crawling – It searches for the new and updated information all around the World Wide Web using bots, spiders, and web crawlers.

⊞ Indexing involves creation of database to store information crawled from a site and enables fast retrieval.

⊞ Ranking: Ranking algorithm is applied for judging the order of results on the web page based on relevancy, authority and user experience.

⊞ SEO primarily considers enhancing the organic visibility through on-page, off page and technical optimization of a website.

⊞ SEM includes paid avenues, such as PPC ads, to rapidly establish a search presence.

⊞ SEO promotes authority, trust and becomes a long term source of traffic.

⊞ SEM Tactic Combination: SEM gives instant results and is effective in targeting, particularly for time-bound campaigns.

⊞ Major distinctions between SEO and SEM are regarding cost, time-frame, scalability and conversion strategy.

⊞ Combining SEO and SEM leads to more complete search coverage, better decisions and greater marketing leverage.

⊞ SEO & SEM EXPERIENCE / INTERACTION In the digital marketing world, content marketing, social media and email all work in synergy with SEO/SEM.

⊞ Relevant marketing techniques are orchestrated by uniting SEO and SEM with other digital channels in order to engage users for the entire customer journey.

3.5 Key Terms

Search engine – a web based system that indexes the content of web and returns relevant result to users queries.

Crawl/Crawling – What search engines do when they are finding new or updated content on the internet.

Indexing – Structuring and storing web page information so that it can be later retrieved for a search query.

Ranking Assignment of search results to the order they appear on a particular page, based on relevance and its algorithm.

SEO – Search engine optimization, improving the content and structure of a website to increase organic rankings.

SEM - Search Engine Marketing; paying for ads to show up in search results.

On-Page SEO – Techniques used to optimize a website directly from the page content and HTML.

Off-Page SEO – Factors that affect a page's search rankings that aren't on the page itself, such as backlinks and social signals.

3 PPC – Pay-Per-Click; a form of advertising in which the advertiser pays each time someone clicks an ad.

Keyword – A word or phrase that a user types into a search engine to locate related content.

Backlink – A link from one website to another, used as an indicator of popularity and value.

Landing Page – A web page created to generate traffic from a marketing campaign and direct users towards conversion.

3.6 Descriptive Questions

Tell me about how crawling, indexing and ranking work.

Compare SEO to SEM in regards to how long each can take, like when comparing the two from the approach and then on a timeline of how much time things take, as well as cost.

Evaluate the role of SEO for long term organic growth.

What role does SEM play in achieving fast digital visibility and conversion?

Explore the benefits of integrating SEO and SEM in a digital marketing strategy.

Discuss the role of SEO/SEM in relationship to the overall digital marketing ecosystem.

List down not less than 5 factors that determine ranking of the content by search engine algorithms.

Explain how data & performance metrics from SEO and SEM can work together to improve results.

3.7 References

1. Cutts, M. (2010). How Search Works. Google Webmaster Blog.

2. Fishkin, R. (2015). The Art of SEO. O'Reilly Media.
3. Google Search Central. (2023). SEO Starter Guide.
4. Chaffey, D., & Ellis-Chadwick, F. (2019). Digital Marketing: Strategy, Implementation and Practice.
5. Moz. (2022). Beginner's Guide to SEO.
6. WordStream. (2021). Search Engine Marketing vs. SEO: What's the Difference?

Knowledge Check – Answer Key

1. c. Immediate visibility
2. b. Email marketing
3. c. Regional growth
4. b. Organic rankings
5. c. Maximize SERP presence

3.8 Case Study: How Flipkart Uses SEO & SEM for Visibility and Sales

Introduction

Flipkart, the India based leading e-commerce platform maintains its lead in a highly competitive retail by practicing digital marketing. When it's got millions of stock keeping units (SKUs), thousands of visitors a day and battling it out with rivals such as Amazon, Snapdeal and niche platforms— Flipkart has to make sure its wares show up after key words are typed in. To achieve this, Flipkart combines SEO with SEM techniques in its attempt to get better visibility and is successful in respect of conversion rate and customer engagement.

In this case study best practice, we examine Flipkart's approach to SEO and SEM, challenges they faced and the solutions they used – demonstrating how these efforts tie into a bigger integrated search strategy.

Challenge 1: Lack of Search Visibility in Specialty Product Categories

But as the product catalog of Flipkart expanded into verticals such as music instruments or sports gear or specialty kitchen appliances, they were confronted with low natural traffic on these category/Product Detail Pages (PDP). While some popular categories such as electronics and fashion ranked highly, many poor product pages were buried under long-tail search results.

Solution

Flipkart have an SEO team that does something like structured content optimization such as:

- Searched for niche segments Keywords with SEMrush, Ahrefs etc.
- Researched user search intent and updated the metadata, title tags and product descriptions to match.
- Established not internal linking but interlinking from the authority category to niche pages to pass link equity.
- Developed content clusters and buyers guides for in-depth product knowledge to enhance topical authority with customers.

Over time, these got more and more effective and improved the organic rankings of those product pages we were targeting, as well as increased visibility to searchers in purchase mode.

Problem 2: You Rely Too Much on Paid Ads to Get That Money During the Sales Cycles

Flipkart splurged on paid SEM for its events including Big Billion Days and the festive sales. The cost per click (CPC) increased during the holiday period and reduced ROAS, hiking up customer acquisition costs.

Solution

Flipkart implemented a hybrid approach:

- Utilized SEM for high-converting keywords and short-term promotional opportunities.
- Prepared organic LP-landing pages ahead of campaigns to get them ranked and visible for relevant seasonal terms.
- Referenced retargeting ads for re-engaging users that visited the site through organic channels earlier.
- Reviewed past SEM performance data to apply budget towards high-performing ad groups and pausing low-performing.

In turn, Flipkart diversified away from paid ads and became less dependent on them while attaining cost-efficiency and also leaned into SEO to complement the SEM performance during traffic peaks!

Problem Statement 3 – Discrepancy in Search Results / Different Message from SEO/SEM, etc.

Flipkart observed that the messaging and branding were inconsistent between SEO content, SEM ads, and promotion banners. So for instance users who landed on site via

SEO would have seen a different tone or offer versus someone clicking through from a paid ad to the same product category. This discrepancy was impacting conversions and causing confusion.

Solution

The campaign planning team moved into marketing:

- Developed integration between SEO and SEM along the lines of keyword/messaging strategy.
- Integrated ad copy with on-page SEO components, such as H1 headers and meta descriptions.
- Consistent campaign messages and branding on every digital channel, from social to email campaigns to mobile push notifications.

This created a consistent message for buyers no matter where they hit the site and built trust and conversion rates.

Reflective Questions

How did Flipkart solve low discoverability of niche products through SEO?

What were the specific things that helped Flipkart reduced their dependence on high paying paid ads during festivals?

Why is an integrated message across SEO and SEM valuable in digital campaigns?

How do you use SEM performance figures to influence SEO content planning?

How does combining SEO and SEM enhance the customer experience and user engagement?

Conclusion

Flipkart's scenario has proved that both SEO and SEM should be assimilated into a single digital marketing strategy. From using SEM to promote products on a time-bound basis, to SEO that builds long-term authority, Flipkart leverages both these tools to reach customers at every stage of the customer journey. The flexibility AE offers has better positioned the brand to react to changing market conditions, maximize dollars spent and volume reached, and ensure its digital marketing initiatives remain even more effective in terms of reach.

scalable. If you're a brand looking to take the next step in your digital marketing game, consider an approach to search marketing similar to Flipkart's — one that combines user intent matching and data-based insights with cross-channel collaboration.

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 4 V3.docx

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 ATLAS SkillTech University

Document Details

Submission ID

trn:oid::3618:127450786

Submission Date

Feb 3, 2026, 5:05 PM GMT+5:30

Download Date

Feb 3, 2026, 6:26 PM GMT+5:30

File Name

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 4 V3.docx

File Size

168.8 KB

25 Pages

6,224 Words

37,093 Characters





0% Overall Similarity

The combined total of all matches, including overlapping sources, for each database.




Filtered from the Report

- ▶ Bibliography
- ▶ Quoted Text
- ▶ Cited Text
- ▶ Small Matches (less than 15 words)

Match Groups

-  **1 Not Cited or Quoted 0%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
-  **0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
-  **0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
-  **0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 0%  Internet sources
- 0%  Publications
- 0%  Submitted works (Student Papers)

Integrity Flags

0 Integrity Flags for Review

No suspicious text manipulations found.

Our system's algorithms look deeply at a document for any inconsistencies that would set it apart from a normal submission. If we notice something strange, we flag it for you to review.

A Flag is not necessarily an indicator of a problem. However, we'd recommend you focus your attention there for further review.

Match Groups

- 1 Not Cited or Quoted** 0%
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- 0 Missing Quotations** 0%
Matches that are still very similar to source material
- 0 Missing Citation** 0%
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- 0 Cited and Quoted** 0%
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 0% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 0% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Top Sources

The sources with the highest number of matches within the submission. Overlapping sources will not be displayed.

1 Internet

fastercapital.com

<1%

Unit 4: Understanding Keywords & Keyword Planning

Learning Objectives:

1. Illustrate the fundamental concepts and value of keywords research in SEO and marketing.
2. Reveal and Analyze Multiple Keyword Research Tools and Their Uses in Different Campaign Scenarios.
3. Distinguish between various types of keywords including short-tail, long-tail brand and non-brand keywords and understand use in targeting strategies.
4. Create a successful keyword strategy by tying keywords back to intent, buyer journey stages and business objectives.
5. Create keyword maps of target keywords to web pages, content types or campaign plans.
6. Review keyword competitiveness, search volume and trends to identify what should be optimized or targeted with paid ad spend.
7. Use keyword research findings to map out content structures, landing pages and ad campaigns that are optimized for visibility and click-through rates.

Content:

- 4.0 Introductory Caselet
- 4.1 Keyword Research Fundamentals
- 4.2 Keyword Research Tools
- 4.3 Keyword Strategy & Mapping
- 4.4 Summary
- 4.5 Key Terms
- 4.6 Descriptive Questions
- 4.7 References
- 4.8 Case Study

4.0 Introductory Caselet

Caselet Title: 'The Missing Adwords: A Quietened Campaign' 12 Lord & Taylor Incoco Strategic Integration of Cross-media Advertising Channels341 Media, was originally launched at Hollywood Kings in collaboration with KoboDisk42, a Public Relations

based custom print production company to chase sales with strategic cross-media advertising activity.

Sana Verma, a digital marketing executive at PureGlow Naturals, an aspiring organic skincare start-up was handed over the responsibility of launching an online campaign for their new product line - a range of anti-pollution face care regime targeting the Urban millennial. The brand had a beautiful website with high-quality product photography, and even partnered with influencers to build buzz on social media. But two weeks into the campaign, no one had shown up. Traffic was flat, search was weak and product pages generated no organic visits.

Sana revisited the campaign setup. She explained how earlier in the process, when content started to come together and look great, her team missed a crucial piece – keyword research. Generic descriptions on product pages, such as natural face cream and gentle moisturizer, did not accord with what searchers were looking for. Sana began a new audit by running the keywords she already had through keyword research tools such as Google Keyword Planner and Ubersuggest.

The findings were eye-opening. Consumers were looking for terms such as “chemical-free night cream,” “organic face cream for oily skin” and even the “best paraben-free moisturizers.” None of these keywords appeared on the product pages or in the blog posts. Sana reorganized the campaign, improved metadata, revamped product details, and associated particular keywords with their corresponding pages. The content strategy was shifted to target informational search queries like How to build a natural skincare routine on the Blog.

Three weeks after rolling out the keyword-lead approach, PureGlow Naturals realized 40% in increased organic traffic and greater engagement on product pages. The revised content had also optimised their SEM campaigns to deliver reduced CPC and improved quality scores.

Through that experience, Sana learned one of the most important internet marketing lessons — no matter how visually appealing your campaign is, if you’re not using keywords correctly, it won’t be found.

Critical Thinking Question:

Talk to me for a minute about why it's important to have a good match between what we learn in keyword research not just with features of products, but also user intent and search behavior.

4.1 Keyword Research Fundamentals

4.1.1 Types of Keywords (Short-tail, Long-tail, LSI)

According to their form, specificity and how they are used in searching behavior, key words can be classified into various kinds. Knowing these differences can help you develop a robust keyword strategy that appeals to the variety of people and positions in the purchase process.

Short-tail Keywords

Short-tail keywords, or head keywords, are one of two words in length usually, and are really just very general. Examples would be “shoes”, “laptops” or “digital marketing”. These keywords usually have:

- High search volume
- High competition
- Low specificity

Although they can generate a lot of traffic, the short-tailed keywords tend to be vague and do not actually match the user’s intent properly. For instance, a person who searches for “shoes” might want to buy some, learn about shoe types or find places to get shoes repaired. And so, shooting for short-tail keywords only could mean a dismally sub-par conversion rate despite high visibility.

Long-tail Keywords

Long-tail keywords are longer and more detailed phrases, often of three words or more. Examples include “best running shoes for flat feet” and “affordable digital marketing course online.” These keywords have:

- Lower search volume
- Lower competition
- Higher specificity and conversion potential

Long-tail keywords are effective especially to engage users with clear intent. Because these searches are more specific, the people typing them typically are closer to a purchase or other action. For instance, say someone were to search “buy wireless noise-cancelling headphones degli 100.”

5000” is more likely to purchase than other searchers looking simply for “headphones.

Latent Semantic Indexing (LSI) Keywords

LSI keywords are terms and phrases that are semantically related to a target topic or seed keyword. Since LSI keywords can be anything related to “apple” such as: iPhone, MacBook, fruit or Steve Jobs (in content context) if the main keyword is “apple”.

LSI keywords assist search engines to comprehend the theme of a page and minimizes ambiguity about the keyword meaning. They add to the richness of content and can make you rank for several related terms without much stuffing. For example, a blog post describing “digital

marketing,” and SIR terms would be other search phrases that are related such as “SEO,” “PPC,” “social media strategy” and “online branding.”

Additional Keyword Types:

- Branded Keywords: Include the brand names (such as, “Nike running shoes”).
- Non-Branded Keywords: Nonspecific of the product or service (e.g., running shoes).
- Geo Target keywords: Add place cities, region (ex: “restaurants in Mumbai”).
- Negative Keywords (SEM): Words/topics you don’t want your ads to appear for—like if you have a PPC ad targeting paid services, and the word: “free” is mentioned in that ad.

An awareness of types and success factors enables marketers to structure content, ads, or the site architecture so that they are able to address broad as well as highly specific queries in one go, thereby expanding their reach and conversion possibilities.

4.1.2 Search Intent (Informational, Navigational, Transactional, Commercial)

Search intent, otherwise called user intent, is the reason to why a user entered their search query. Aligning content to search intent is hugely important to ensure your content meets users’ expectations and serves the aims of your business. If your intent is misaligned, you get a high bounce rate, bad user experience and low conversion.

There are in general, four major types of search intent:

Informational Intent

Users with informational intent seek information or specific answers. It’s not just that they’re not in the market to buy anything. Queries usually start with terms such as “how,” “what,” “why” or “best way to.”

Examples:

- “How does solar energy work?”
- “Benefits of yoga for beginners”

They are at the awareness stage of the customer journey. Optimization of blog posts, guides, FAQs and explainer videos for informational intent can be helpful in establishing trust and authority as well as driving top-of-the-funnel traffic.

Navigational Intent

Here, searchers want to locate a precise site, page, or brand. They already have an idea of what they want but use the search engine for navigation.

Examples:

- “Facebook login”
- “Amazon customer care”

Brand protection and branded query visibility Brand-protect shifting, although not a direct ranking factor, is pivoted by navigational intent. When you have well-optimized branded landing pages and good SEO presence, users are steered to the right path.

Transactional Intent

Transactional query users are already prepared for an action, which is often a purchase. In many cases, these are searches that include terms such as “buy,” “discount,” “coupon” or product names.

Examples:

- “Buy iPhone 14 Pro online”
- “Book flight to Goa from Delhi”

This is bottom of the funnel intent and conversion rate is generally highest here. Product pages, offer-oriented landing pages and explicit CTAs are effective with transactional keywords.

Commercial Investigation

These users are decision-stage, evaluating solutions before they buy. They have more intent than informational users however not yet ready to convert.

Examples:

- “Best DSLR cameras under 50000”
- “Shopify vs Woocommerce small business”

Target keywords relating to this intent should lead users to comparisons, reviews, testimonials and case studies that help steer them toward conversion.

Other Considerations:

- Combined Intent: A question can express more than one intent (e.g., “laptop for students”

could be informational or commercial).

- Fro trol/tr [[Page 48]] • Discriminating Factor: The intent is also influenced by user interaction, device type, and location.

The logic and notion behind search intent, are essential in deploying content, ad campaigns, and landing pages in a manner that will be inline or in confirmation with user's expectations thinking.

"Did You Know?"

“In today’s world of search engines such as Google, search intent is more important than exact match keywords. This means you can often get better results by creating pages that are entirely focused on user needs (be they informational, transactional or navigational) rather than just keyword frequency.

4.1.3 Importance of Keywords in SEO & SEM

Keywords are the connector between what users are looking for and the content businesses supply to fulfill that need. Keywords are directly involved in both SEO and SEM, as they dictate the visibility, relevance and success of all digital campaigns. Keyword strategy impacts search positioning, as well as engagement, conversion rates, and digital return-on-investment (ROI).

Role of Keywords in SEO:

- Content Discovery: Search engines use keywords to discover what a webpage is about. Optimizing content should be centered on keywords which are actually relevant to what you do, and increases the probability that the page/content/post will make some sort of impact for those terms.

On Page Optimization: Including primary and secondary keywords in page titles, headers, meta-descriptions and body content increases relevance to user queries.

- Link-Building and Anchor Text: Keywords included on the anchor texts are being used to signal relevance in backlinking activities plus draw your web page authority gain.
- Site Architecture and Internal Linking: Keyword-targeted internal links are an essential component of your crawl and ability for authority to pass throughout the site through related query targeting.
- Enhanced Read-Time/Time on Site: As content closely meets keyword intent, users tend to hang around longer and read through the page, decreasing bounce rates and enhancing user engagement.

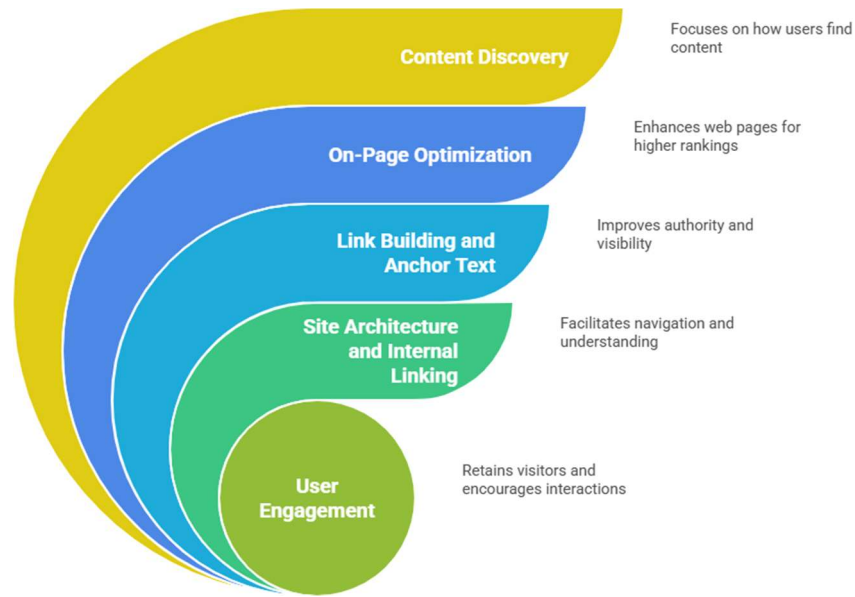


Figure 4.1

Role of Keywords in SEM:

- **Ad Targeting:** Keywords trigger when ads appear via SEM. Advertising services auction off keywords that represent high-intent or profitable searches.
- **Quality Score:** Relevance of ad, landing page and CTR are all considered by Google Ads. The match type between keywords and landing pages is a critical factor in the quality score that ultimately impacts ad rank and CPC.
- **Advertising Copy:** Great ad copy is peppered with relevant keywords in headlines and descriptions for more relevance and higher CTR.
- **Negative Keywords:** Exclude irrelevant keywords to eliminate wasted spend and increase campaign efficiency.



Figure 4.2

Strategic Complications SEO And SEM:

- **Keyword Research and Clustering:** Uncovering clusters of semantically similar keywords means you're better placed for content planning or campaign segmentation.

Competitor Analysis: Analyzing the keywords competitors use to find gaps and opportunity.

- **Locality:** Targeting city- and state-specific keywords allows you to optimize your campaign towards local audiences as well as increase the conversion rates for location-based services.
- **Trend Watching:** Keyword trends reveal changing consumer behavior— an early signal for content and ad strategies.

Data-Driven Optimization:

- SEO engines offering up keyword ranking data, search volume and click-through data to influence content updates.
- Providing keyword performance, cost-efficiency and return on investment (ROI) insights, SEM dashboards drive real-time budget changes.

Keywords are the digital signal that link user intent to relevance of content. A strong keyword strategy ensures that organic and paid content has the potential to be discovered by the right people at the right time resulting in higher search visibility, a better user experience for your prospects and customers, as well a better business results.

4.2 Keyword Research Tools

4.2.1 Google Keyword Planner – Basics & Usage

Google Keyword Planner is a keyword research tool that can be accessed by Google Ads users for free. It's meant to assist advertisers in finding relevant keywords for their products or services and predicting how those keywords could perform based on search volume & competition. Although it's been designed chiefly for paid advertising, but SEO pro's have also been relying on it for monitoring keyword trends and planning organic content.

Access to Google Keyword Planner requires a Google Ads account, but it does not demand an active advertising campaign. Once inside the tool, users have two main options to pick from: 'Discover new keywords' and 'Get search volume and forecasts'.

The "Discover new keywords" section lets you fill in words or phrases that pertain to your business along with URLs or types. The instrument then delivers a list of keyword

concepts that also contains such vital metrics as average monthly searches, competition (ranging from low to high) and top-of-page bid estimates for both the low and high range.

The “Get search volume and forecasts” tool lets users feed in a list of keywords to receive performance estimates. This involves predicting estimated impressions, clicks and cost of paid campaigns.

Some of the key uses for Google Keyword Planner are:

- Discovering high-volume keywords to focus on in content or advertisements
- Finding long-tail keyword variations
- Measuring commerciality through estimated CPC
- Grouping keywords by any combination of location and language targeting
- Generating keyword plans to predict traffic potential

Google Keyword Planner is especially beneficial for companies that want to harmonize SEO and SEM tactics. It gives you a window to Google’s actual data in real time, and is one of the most reliable ways to understand the behavior of search. But it has less detailed information than the paid tools -- the search volumes it offers are often in buckets rather than specific numbers, and there’s no keyword difficulty or SERP analysis baked right in.

4.2.2 SEMrush – Advanced Keyword Analytics

SEMrush is a full-fledged digital marketing platform that offers versatile solutions for keyword research, competitive analysis, content optimization, and paid advertisement. Especially for the detailed keyword analysis, its Keyword Magic Tool and Keyword Overview are impressive. As opposed to these basic instruments, SEMrush does not only display keyword suggestions but also provides you with metrics such as keywords difficulty, intent classification, trend evolution and SERP features so that you can sort all of them out exactly like you want.

users can enter a seed keyword and "uncover" thousands of related keywords broken down into groups including questions, broad match, phrase match, and exact match. Each keyword comes with relevant metrics including:

- Search volume (monthly average)
- Keyword difficulty (percentage of organic search competition)
- Cost-per-click (CPC)
- Competitive density (for paid ads)

- SERP elements (e.g., snippet, image, local pack)

Keyword Overview is a high level view of a keyword's potential. It provides global and regional search volumes, keyword variations, trend graphs, as well data on the top-ranking pages of this term. The best part – it also shows backlink profiles and approximate traffic for keywords to competitors domains.

Content marketers and SEO experts will benefit the most from using SEMrush if they wish to:

- Plan content around user intent
- Find profitable, low competition long tail keywords YOUR site can dominate!
- Track keyword rankings over time
- Benchmark performance against competitors
- Maximize paid search advertising with very specific keywords

More benefits are keyword gap analysis (comparison between the keywords of competitors and those of a user's domain), and keyword clustering tools that can group similar terms according to their topics. Additionally, SEMrush syncs with Google Analytics and Google Search Console, providing a unified desk for SEO reports.

The platform is paid for, and better for intermediate to advanced users because of all the data they provide and their user interface. But its analytics are so robust it's a must-have for high-stakes digital campaigns.

4.2.3 Ahrefs – Competitive Keyword Research

Ahrefs is an impressive SEO tool collection in every respect, offering some of the best backlink checking available and some excellent keyword research. Although Ahrefs is mainly known for its backlink tools, it also has superior keyword research features when using their Keywords Explorer and Site Explorer tool.

In a nutshell, the Keywords Explorer furnishes you with a comprehensive list of metrics for any keyword:

- Search volume broken down by country and worldwide
- Keyword difficulty scores (calculated using backlink profile)
- Click-through (how frequently users click on a search result)
- Rate of return (probability that the same user will search for keyword again)
- Parent topic (the high-level category—referred to as a “broader concept” in some keyword systems—that the keyword belongs to)

Instead of simply volume and CPC, Ahrefs also measures click metrics (meaning they can also tell you not just how much traffic a keyword gets, but whether or not that traffic actually clicks on your SERP). For instance, certain keywords can yield many searches but few clicks because they provide direct answers in the SERP!

The Site Explorer helps you analyze competitors, by showing keywords that are driving traffic to their domain. It shows:

- Top-performing pages
- Organic keyword rankings
- Paid keyword usage
- Content gaps between domains Ahrefs is great for:
- Uncovering keyword opportunities by reverse engineering your competition
- Discovering content gaps and keyword cannibalization cases
- Tracking keyword performance over time
- Implementing keyword relevant link-building strategies.

Ahrefs also delivers historical keyword ranking data, so you can see how rankings have changed over time—an important factor to consider if you experience seasonality or are making long-term SEO decisions.

Paying for Ahref is not free and it may not be a good fit if you are an absolute beginner but the amount of competitive data that you get access to with their tools, makes this tool invaluable for season veterans in SEO especially when working on saturated niches where keyword competition is high.

4.2.4 Ubersuggest – Simplified Research for Beginners

Unless you go for Ubersuggest, a tool made by an SEO guru named Neil Patel. A superbly simple little tool, it's perfect for the SEO and content marketing young guns who find large-scale management-algorithms with 20+ metrics per keyword-a bit overwhelming. It has a neat UI design as well and it primarily seeks to present bare minimum keywords without the clutter of complicated metrics.

When users type in a keyword, Ubersuggest will give them an overview of what they can expect such as:

- Monthly search volume
- SEO difficulty
- Paid difficulty (for ads)

- CPC estimates

It also offers keyword recommendations and content ideas, showing you current blog post titles and pages that rank for the chosen keyword. This way, they can learn the winning case study and model how to create theirs.

Key features include:

- Keyword recommendations with questions, prepositions, and comparisons filters
- An overview of the domain including an estimate of the traffic, top pages, and backlinks for a site
- Ideas for what articles may perform well and potential headlines to leverage those top performing article topics
- Traffic analyses to monitor the performance of keywords over time
- A real-time analysis tool that came as an extension for Chrome Ubersuggest is a great help when:
 - Novice internet entrepreneurs who want to learn the basics of keyword research
 - Optimization ideas and tips for Bloggers/Content creators wanting to drive traffic through SEO
 - Budget-strapped small businesses
 - Fast keyword retrieval, without elaborate data processing

It's nowhere near as powerful as something like Ahrefs or SEMrush, but Ubersuggest is a great way to dip your toes in the water when it comes to SEO. It's a good compromise between usability and deep insights, so an easy pick for non-techy users and solopreneurs marketers.

4.2.5 Comparing Tools: Strengths and Limitations

Every keyword research tool has its own pros of cons based on the audience, source and use case. The choice of tool should be based on campaign requirements, user skills and the marketing goals at stake.

Google Keyword Planner

- Pros: Data is directly from Google and perfect for SEM • Cost: Free
- Drawbacks: Google-specific analytics-only; less detailed data ranges; no SERP insights

SEMrush

- Pros: Full keyword data; good competitor analysis; keyword clustering
- Cons: Limited geographic and device tracking in higher plans

JUICY use the discount code SEOHACKER-LIFETIME-30 to get - 30% discount LITERALLY just did a massive keywords export with related keywords "wordpress".. amazeballs_ post me your best one.

- Limitations: Pay a subscription fee; steep learning curve for beginners.

Ahrefs

- What We Like: Deep competitive analysis; click-based metrics; top backlink reports
- Drawbacks: No free model; may be intimidating for beginners

Ubersuggest

- Strengths: Easy to use; Cheap; Facilitates quick insights
- A Cons: Less advanced analytics in general; smaller keyword database

Other things to consider between tools:

- Date of information: When was the last time the database has been refreshed
- UI/UX: Is the user interface friendly and is it suitable for different level of experience?
- Integration – Integrates with other platforms, such as Google Analytics
- Support and community: Tutorials, help desks and forums

For practical purposes, using more than one tool is often the thing to do as each can cross-validate data from another and filling in all angles of keyword research. For example, Google Keyword Planner can be employed for PPC campaign planning while tools like Ahrefs or SEMrush support SEO audits and creating a content strategy. The ideal solution also coincides with short-term requirements as well as the long-term expansion plans.

Activity: Keyword Tool Evaluation Project

Title: Choosing the Right Keyword Research Tool for Your Campaign

In this activity, students will be divided into small groups and assigned a fictional business (e.g., an eco-friendly fashion startup, a travel blog, or a SaaS platform). Each group will explore at least two keyword research tools from the list discussed in the unit. Using those tools, they must identify 5–10 target keywords, compare tool outputs, and analyze which tool is better suited for the business scenario. Each group will present their findings, discussing the strengths,

limitations, and usability of the tools, and justify their choice based on the campaign's goals.

4.3 Keyword Strategy & Mapping

4.3.1 Aligning Keywords with the Buyer Journey

The buyer's journey is the path a prospect follows to become aware of, evaluate and purchase a new product or service. It's usually divided into three stages: Awareness, Consideration and Decision. When keywords are well-aligned with this journey, we can create valuable content that realize the user's intent at each phase—moving users through the funnel from early stage to later stage.

Awareness Stage Keywords

At this stage, surfers want some generic information. They have not entirely comprehended their problem, and they aren't actively searching for a solution. You want to bring people in at the turnstiles with educational and informative content.

Common keyword types:

- Informational keywords
- Questions and how-to phrases
- Broad search terms Examples:
 - “What is content marketing?”
 - “How to reduce electricity bills”
 - “Digital marketing trends”

Blog pieces, infographics, explainer videos or beginner's guides are all suitable content focused on those keywords.

Consideration Stage Keywords

At this time, the user is actively looking for a solution because they have already ascertained their need or problem. Mix: The words in this stage are narrower, and they usually have modifiers or comparisons.

Common keyword types:

- Comparison and review phrases
- Feature-specific terms
- Medium-tail keywords Examples:
 - “Best CRM tools for startups”
 - “Content marketing and how it's different from social media marketing”

- “Cheap solar panels for home”

Varieties include whitepapers, comprehensive guides, webinars and solution-specific blog posts.

Decision Stage Keywords

This is the end of the funnel where the user has decided to convert. At this phase, keywords have strong commercial intent and are branded or transactional keywords.

Common keyword types:

- Product names
- Location-specific services
- Action-oriented phrases Examples:
 - “Buy DSLR camera online”
 - “Free trial project management software”
 - “SEO agency in Mumbai”

Content properties should be landing pages, product pages with pricing information, testimonials and strong calls to action.

Mapping your keywords to the buyer journey helps make sure your content is accomplishing something at each stage, which means lower bounce rates and more engagement, and better conversions. It also enables marketers to give structure to internal linking strategies that help users move further down the funnel, from informational pages to more decision-oriented pages.

4.3.2 Keyword Mapping for Awareness, Consideration, Decision Stages

Keyword mapping is the process of sorting specific keywords to pages or sets of pages on a website based on how those terms relate to the visitor intent and stage in the buying cycle. It makes certain that each page has 1 topic and intent, then avoids duplicating content to be visible in search engines. A keyword map is more like a blueprint for content planning, on-page SEO and user experience.

Awareness Stage Mapping

User at the awareness stage digging into general questions. Here you map keywords to your top-of-funnel content.

Page types:

- Blog posts
- Industry trend reports

- Glossary or definition pages
- Informational videos

Example:

Keyword: “What is inbound marketing?”

Mapped page: Blog article titled “An Introduction to Inbound Marketing: What is it, Anyway?

and Examples”

Consideration Stage Mapping

People here are comparing or finding out about competing solutions. Keyphrases should be aligned with deep, middle-funnel content.

Page types:

- Comparison pages
- Case studies
- E-books
- Product feature breakdowns

Example:

Keyword: “Email marketing vs social media”

Mapped page: In-depth comparison blog post or downloadable guide

Decision Stage Mapping

Some key words in this bucket are related to purchase intent or inquiry. These are tied to high converting assets.

Page types:

- Product/service landing pages
- Pricing and feature tables
- Demo request pages
- Testimonials or reviews

Example:

Keyword: “Purchase ergonomic office chair online”

Landed on: Product page with the purchase button (ecommerce).

Additional Mapping Strategies:

- **Matching URL Structure:** Mapping should be shown in neat and clean keyword rich URLs for improved indexing and readability.
- **Internal Linking:** Link between awareness content to consideration and decision pages (Internal linking) for an easy route for users.
- **Content Cluster:** Organize keywords/topics into clusters and map to pillar page and supporting content, increasing topical authority.

Keyword mapping prevents duplicate content, increases accuracy and relevance of keywords and keeps content on track with what users are looking for. This is one of the core elements in technical SEO and content architecture strategy.

4.3.3 Building a Keyword Portfolio for SEO Campaigns

A keyword portfolio is a catalog of types of keywords that will help bolster the SEO value for your brand overall across different subject matter, products and user intentions. It's like a good financial portfolio: diverse enough to manage risk and reward — combining high-volume keywords for visibility with long-tail terms for conversion.

Key Elements of a Keyword Portfolio Before jumping into the first set of strategies, it's important to understand what a keyword portfolio should consist of -- i.e., how many types of keywords you need.

- **Head Terms:** Core to the business, typically short-tail and high-volume (e.g., “CRM software”).
- **Supporting Keywords:** Similar to primary keywords, they are typically long-tail in nature and employed in subtopics (e.g., “CRM for freelancers”).
- **Branded Terms:** These involve company or product names (for example, “Zoho CRM review”).
- **Competitor Keywords:** Terms that competitors rank on, which you would want to target.
- **Seasonal Keywords:** Words that pick up pace at certain times (like “Valentine’s Day gifts”).
- **Evergreen Keyphrases:** words and phrases not time sensitive (eg, “how to write a business plan”).

Portfolio Diversification Strategies

- **Varying Search Volume:** Use high, medium and low volume search terms to reach a wider audience.
- **Difficulty Analysis:** Merge high competition terms with low competition words to achieve the best of both worlds in short-term, long-term.
- **Intent Mapping:** Make sure your portfolio has a mix of informational, commercial and transactional intent.
- **SERP Feature Targeting:** Find keywords that result in rich snippets, knowledge panels, or local packs.

Portfolio Management

Tracking & Metrics: Track your rankings, click-through rates and conversions on a keyword level.

- **Keyword Refresh:** Revise your portfolio on a quarterly basis to align with changes in trends, new products and algorithm updates.
- **Performance-Based Segmentation:** Organize keywords according to their performance and optimize content or links as per the same.

Keyword portfolio optimization lets to have agile, measurable and immune SEO. It also adds to the larger business objectives, such as brand recognition, lead generation and customer retention on by being always visible due to the search.

4.3.4 Avoiding Keyword Cannibalization

Keyword cannibalization is what happens when you have different pages on your site that rank for the same term. Instead of one page having the power, with many such pages link equity can be diluted and overall visibility diminished.

Causes of Keyword Cannibalization

- **Overblogging** on a similarity without any obvious distinction
- **Developing pages** for products or services similar to each other that target the same keyword/s.
- **Keyword cannibalization** on internal pages, too much targeting of the same keyword focus.
- **Poor Keyword Mapping / No Content Calendar**

Impacts on SEO

- **Lower Rankings:** Google could have a difficult time choosing which of the pages to display, with neither one effectively ranking.

- TTP Drop: Multiple domain listings result in lower click-through rate.
- Wasted Crawl Budget – Search engines have a limited bandwidth per crawl – they waste a good portion of it crawling duplicate content.
- User Distraction: Users might come to less focused pages and bounce off.

Detection Methods

- Use site search operators: for example, you could enter “site:example.com keyword”
- Use Google Search Console to identify duplicate keywords ranking on more than one URL
- Use a tool such as Ahrefs or SEMrush to find pages ranking for the same keyword

Prevention and Solutions

- Combine Content: Combine related pages to create one rich resource.
- Canonical Tags: Employ canonical URLs to establish the master record of a page.

Internal Linking Structure: Secondary content of a page can be linked to the main page as a back up if your primary submission goes down.

Keyword Diversity: Diversify unique keyword area of interest themes for each page in relation to search intent and content depth.

- Create a Content Calendar: Schedule your content to avoid duplication.

Preventing keyword cannibalization is critical for maintaining topical authority, providing a good user experience and making sure that every page in the site’s architecture serves its own unique role. It also

It makes SEO work in concert, instead of at cross purposes to strategic growth.

Knowledge Check: Keyword Strategy & Mapping

1. Which stage of the buyer journey does "how-to" content typically target?
 - a. Decision
 - b. Awareness
 - c. Consideration
 - d. Post-sale
2. What is the purpose of keyword mapping?

- a. Increase bounce rate
 - b. Avoid PPC ads
 - c. Assign keywords to pages
 - d. Write ad copy
3. What does a keyword portfolio help manage?
- a. Email outreach
 - b. Image SEO
 - c. Diverse keyword targets
 - d. Content length
4. Keyword cannibalization can lead to:
- a. Higher CTR
 - b. Improved ranking
 - c. Duplicate penalties
 - d. Reduced visibility
5. A good SEO strategy should align keywords with:
- a. Color schemes
 - b. Buyer journey
 - c. Mobile design
 - d. Page speed

4.4 Summary

⌘ Keyword research is at the core of both SEO and SEM approaches, enabling marketers to match content with user interest and search behavior.

⌘ Keywords come in the form of different types of short-tail, long-tail and LSI which plays an important role in content visibility or target.

⌘ Understanding search intent (informational, navigational, transactional and commercial) is the key to getting content aligned and keeping a user satisfied.

⌘ Keywords directly affect search engine visibility, click-through rates, and possible conversions.

⌘ Google Keyword Planner, SEMrush, Ahrefs and Ubersuggest are commonly employed tools with peak performance for keyword generation and analysis.

⌘ An effective keyword strategy maps keywords to customer journey stages: awareness, consideration and decision.

⌘ Keyword mapping generates the focus message of every single page that you make on your site, and helps guide a user along through the marketing-to-purchase funnel.

⌘ A winning keywords list should include the high-volume, low-competition as well as the intent-driven ones for full SEO impact.

⌘ Cannibalization happens when a site's various pages compete for the same keyword thus sacrificing visibility and irritating search engines.

Keyword cannibalization can be prevented by good search mapping, unique content and internal linking strategies.

⌘ Content strategies driven by search must be always updated in regards to competitor, trending events and performance metrics trends.

Keyword data becomes content plans, and helps to improve search relevance as well as alignment with overarching marketing objectives.

4.5 Key Terms

Keyword Research – The act of finding out which words people use to conduct searches in an effort to inform content and campaign strategy.

Short-tail Keyword – A general, high search volume keyword made up of one or two words.

Long-tail Keyword – A phrase that is not as popular and which tends to have a lower search volume and more specific to focus on a niche search query.

LSI Keyword – Latent Semantic Indexing keyword; a correlated term that gives meaning to content.

Search Intent – The intent behind a user's search, what they were trying to accomplish.

Keyword Mapping – The process of determining which keywords will be used in specific pages or content assets, preferably based on intent and funnel stage.

Buyer Journey – The journey of a customer from their early awareness stage through to the purchase decision, and often split into 3 stages: awareness, consideration and decision.

Keyword Portfolio – A strategic combination of keywords chosen to represent various topics, volumes and intents.

Google Keyword Planner – A free tool from Google Ads to help you discover and analyze new keywords.

SEMrush – A digital marketing platform which offers in-depth keyword research and competitor analysis.

Ahrefs: A popular tool for competitive keyword research and backlink analysis.

Keyword Cannibalization – Condition in which a website has several pages targeting the same keyword resulting in a clash to determine which page will rank.

4.6 Descriptive Questions

What are types of keywords and what role does each type play in a successful keyword strategy?

Describe why its important to match the keywords with search intent. What are the ways in which intention drives content?

Explain the difference between Google Keyword Planner versus SEMrush and when and how to use them.

Explain how we can apply keyword mapping strategy at each stage of buyer journey. Provide examples.

What ingredients should go into a keyword portfolio that is to be used in an SEO campaign over the long-term?

What is keyword cannibalization? Discuss its causes, effects and prevention.

How it improves user experience and conversion rates, to align your keyword strategy with the buyer journey?

Why is it a good idea to use informational, commercial and transactional keywords in a content strategy?

4.7 References

1. Google Ads Help. (2023). Keyword Planner Overview.
2. Fishkin, R. (2015). The Art of SEO. O'Reilly Media.
3. SEMrush Blog. (2022). Guide to Keyword Research and Mapping.
4. Patel, N. (2023). Mastering Ubersuggest for Content and SEO.
5. Ahrefs. (2022). Keyword Research: The Beginner's Guide.
6. Chaffey, D., & Ellis-Chadwick, F. (2019). Digital Marketing: Strategy, Implementation and Practice.

Answer Key – Knowledge Check (Unit 4.3)

1. b. Awareness
2. c. Assign keywords to pages
3. c. Diverse keyword targets
4. d. Reduced visibility
5. b. Buyer journey

4.8 Case Study – Zomato Driving Traffic with Keyword Planning Introduction

Zomato is India's largest food search and discovery service which provides information to over 11 million users every month in more than 40 cities. For businesses on the platform, Zomato generates leads to their restaurant and hopes traffic from paid search will convert into visitors ordering through it. In order to stay ahead in the cluttered foodtech market, Zomato uses keyword planning smartly to up its game in content optimization, search engine visibility and user acquisition.

This is a case study on how Zomato plans their keywords and approach major roadblocks and serve up right solutions with respect to user intent and search engine's expectations.

Problem 1: Obscurity of Niche Food Searches

But as Zomato went beyond restaurant information, offering recipes, diet plans and regional food guides, it found it difficult to get organic traffic around these long tail categories. Pages were not ranking on the long-tail or regional keywords and became a source of cannibalization, resulting in some pages going up and others going down.

Solution

Zomato started with an extensive keyword research and mapping which included tools like SEMrush and Ahrefs. The team segmented keywords by:

- Type of food (for example, “Rajasthani vegetarian recipes”)
- Type of meal (like “low-carb Indian breakfast”)
- Local intent (e.g., “best biryani restaurant in Hyderabad”)

Every keyword was attached to a single page or blog article. User search behavior was used to build structured content with tailored headers, internal links and schema

markup. The impact was improving long tail keyword discoverability and massive growth in traffic in content areas that were previously underperforming.

Issue 2: Over-Saturation in Transactional Keywords

Zomato was among the most competitive categories for high-converting, transactional keywords, such as “order pizza online” or “food delivery near me,” where it went up against food delivery platforms like Swiggy and Uber Eats. When it did, paid ad prices for SEM campaigns soared and made the ROI that much lower.

Solution

To overcome this, Zomato optimized their keyword mix for SEM based on:

- Hyperlocal keywords (Like, “Pizza Delivery in Sector 21 Noida”)
- Brand plus location combinations (Dominos delivery in Koramangala etc.)
- Message and offer matching search query tailored landing pages

These pages employed local information, live menus, and user-generated reviews to improve relevance and quality score." So Zomato cut down the cost-per-click and increased ad visibility. These campaigns were further reinforced by organic SEO initiatives that placed the same keywords in a natural position, translating to double visibility on SERPs.

Problem 3: Duplicate Content and Keyword Cannibalisation What is keyword cannibalization?

Zomato is home to millions of restaurant listings, food blogs and city guides thus it suffered from content duplication. It was also the case that several pages would rank for one and the same keyword (like “best Chinese restaurants in Delhi”, which confused search engines as well lowering the authority of a single page.

Solution

Zomato did a content audit to see what cannibalization it could clear out. Pages with intersecting intent were either:

- Consolidated into a single volume
- Assigned unique focus keywords
- Tagged with canonical URLs to indicate preferred pages

This content creation tool also included an updated keyword mapping strategy, with a consistent target for new pages. Interlinking similar pages made structure more clear for users and search engines.

Reflective Questions

In which way did Zomato prepare keyword segmentation in order to be more visible for niche/ regional queries?

How did Zomato weigh efforts towards SEM & SEO for transactional keywords?

How exactly did Zomato address keyword cannibalization on its platform?

How is hyperlocal companies like Zomato getting help from dynamic keyword planning?

What are the dangers of not matching your keyword to page intent?

Conclusion

Zomato is the perfect example of how effective keyword planning paired with personalized content, accurate geotargeting and continuous performance optimization can seriously boost visibility, lower advertising costs and keep users coming back for more. By matching keyword with user intent, narrowing down campaign focus and removing overlap between content, Zomato created a search strategy that is scalable and self-sustaining. The key takeaways from this case are how crucial it is to consider keyword planning a on-going evolving initiative that has to meta-match with the content as well as business and essential website definition of target goals.

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 5 V3 (2).docx

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 ATLAS SkillTech University

Document Details

Submission ID

trn:oid::3618:127504162

Submission Date

Feb 4, 2026, 11:57 AM GMT+5:30

Download Date

Feb 4, 2026, 12:05 PM GMT+5:30

File Name

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 5 V3 (2).docx

File Size

208.3 KB

34 Pages

10,642 Words

59,828 Characters

0% Overall Similarity

The combined total of all matches, including overlapping sources, for each database.

Filtered from the Report

- ▶ Bibliography
- ▶ Quoted Text
- ▶ Cited Text
- ▶ Small Matches (less than 15 words)

Match Groups

- 2 Not Cited or Quoted 0%**
 Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- 0 Missing Quotations 0%**
 Matches that are still very similar to source material
- 0 Missing Citation 0%**
 Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- 0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
 Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 0% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 0% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Integrity Flags





0 Integrity Flags for Review

No suspicious text manipulations found.




Our system's algorithms look deeply at a document for any inconsistencies that would set it apart from a normal submission. If we notice something strange, we flag it for you to review.

A Flag is not necessarily an indicator of a problem. However, we'd recommend you focus your attention there for further review.

Match Groups



-  **2 Not Cited or Quoted** 0%
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
-  **0 Missing Quotations** 0%
Matches that are still very similar to source material
-  **0 Missing Citation** 0%
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
-  **0 Cited and Quoted** 0%
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 0%  Internet sources
- 0%  Publications
- 0%  Submitted works (Student Papers)

Top Sources

The sources with the highest number of matches within the submission. Overlapping sources will not be displayed.

-  **Internet**
www.getcloudapp.com <1%
-  **Internet**
bforbloggers.com <1%

Unit 5: Creating Digital Assets for SEO

Learning Objectives:

1. Create and build out digital personas using audience demographics, psychographics, and behavioral data to inform content strategy.
2. Build a schedule content based on business objectives, seasonality and customer engagement timing.
3. Review the buyer's journey and use it to determine which content types should be used at each stage of this process: awareness, consideration, decision.
4. Develop and produce content assets customised for the diverse digital touchpoints and user- personas, aligning in tone, value and brand representation.
5. Distinguish between evergreen and trending content, including the strategic role of each in long-term and short-term content planning.
6. Use KPIs like engagement, reach and conversions to measure how well your content strategy fares.
7. Tailor content planning best practices to real world marketing situations with persona building, editorial calendar planning and assets execution.

Content:

- 5.0 Introductory Caselet
- 5.1 Developing Digital Personas
- 5.2 Content Calendar & Strategy
- 5.3 Understanding the Buyer's Journey
- 5.4 Content Asset Creation
- 5.5 Evergreen vs Trending Content
- 5.6 Summary
- 5.7 Key Terms
- 5.8 Descriptive Questions
- 5.9 References
- 5.10 Case Study

5.0 Introductory Caselet Title: "Content Chaos at StyleSphere"

StyleSphere, an emerging online fashion retailer specialized in urban millennials had lately been noticing a significant decrease in their online engagement and conversion rates. Even with large amounts of content creation (daily blog posts, regular social media updates, promotional newsletters), their content performance data was saying something else. Bounce rates were through the roof, email open rates were slipping and blog readership had flat lined.

An internal review found that the content team were creating work not knowing who they were writing for and an absence of strategic planning leading from their activity. These articles were randomly selected, email blasts sent to the entire subscriber list with no targeting, and social media content was inconsistent in messaging and value. There was NO content calendar and they hadn't developed or updated ANY digital personas because they NEEDED to do it for their CHANGING customer base.

Seeing that it was a problem, StyleSphere hired what Fenn calls "a digital person." The first step was to create the digital equivalent of your avatar by studying customer data – what and how they purchase, social interactions online as well as looking at website. This exercise surfaced three main customer groups - fashion-hungry students, working professionals, and sustainable fashion fans - each with different needs, drivers and content consumption habits.

The strategist then applied a content calendar which clearly stated which content was assigned to each persona in every buying stage of the buyer's journey. Educational blog posts aimed at awareness stage readers, style guides and case studies supported the consideration and decision stages. The team was also able to differentiate between evergreen content like "Wardrobe Basics Every Woman Needs," and trending pieces that fell in line with prevailing fashion cycles or events.

And then StyleSphere saw a big rise in engagement. Open email rates increased, blog traffic became more diverse and the organization of persona-addressed content was increasingly engaged from social followers.

Critical Thinking Question:

What are some of the risks to businesses who create content without aligning it personas or a buyer journey?

5.1 Developing Digital Personas

5.1.1 Audience Segmentation

"Everyone is different" Your target audience segmentation, in layman terms it would be splitting the broader audience group into diverse categories based on common factors. And it guarantees that marketing is tailored towards user segments, for greater

personalization and relevance. When you segment your users, marketers are able to drill down into the specific needs, wants, and habits that influence purchasing within a particular market.

Nice segmentation is more than just putting features in a row ... it's generating something you can make USEFUL. These observations form the basis for simulating believable virtual characters. The more segmented, the more focused communication — usually resulting in greater engagement and conversion rates as well as higher levels of customer satisfaction.

Segmentation can at least be considered from four approaches:

- **Demography:** Market is a portion of demographic product and the service market, segmented according to statistics that can be measured such as age, gender. That sampling can give us a rough idea of who the audience is.
- **Geographic segmentation:** Targeting a customer by where he or she is, or what it is like (country, city, weather, urban vs. rural). It's good for targeted campaigns or local promotions as well.
- **Psychographic Segmentation:** These factors which include personality types, values/attitudes, interests, lifestyle etc. Many content strategies would benefit from this kind of segmentation — it's based on why people act rather than what they do.
- **Behavioral Segmentation:** Based on how customers act, such as how often they purchase, product usage rates, engagement history or brand loyalty. It's a measure of how an audience, given the time and products or content, engages.

Audience segmentation specifies both types of users a brand is talking to. Instead it allows content marketers to better plan what content needs to be created not just what needs to be made, but who it's for and where it's going to live. They could be prioritized based on potential revenue, audience size, strategy objective or likelihood of engagement.

Advanced segmentation may also include:

- **Technographic Segmentations:** These are segmentations that are by devices, platforms or softwares that the audience is using.
- **Generational targeting:** Target segments based on age groups such as Gen Z, Millennials, Gen X or Baby Boomers.
- **Pain and Gain :** Segmentation of the stars by pain or need.

With CRM systems, analytics tools and user tracking software — even by using simple list services like AWeber or MailChimp— companies are easily able to test their division of segments. The more finely-granulated the segments, the better job of modeling

personas. Audience segmentation lets brands take that a step further by tweaking its approach to ensure it's speaking to the specifics of each segment's needs and preferences – instead of just shouting at everyone the same old thing.



Figure 5.1

5.1.2 Demographics

Checking ‘Who’ Out The first step for creating digital personas is no doubt the lowdown on the base: demographics. Those are Penis size, Age, Sex, Education, Income, Marital Status and Occupation of family member; Family size. These metrics form the foundational for many marketing plans—Bookwalter says such categories “provide marketers with a tangible way to segment and understand target customers that’s actionable and quantitative.”

Age determines preferences, digital behaviour and content consumption.

For instance, Gen Z users may be more into short-form video content on social media while Gen X may connect with long-form blog posts and email newsletters.) Sex has also an impact on purchasing habits in certain categories, like fashion for example, or cosmetics and technology.

Income category is another important demographic. It influences the buying power and is a measure to determine whether users are price sensitive or driven by value. Perhaps the rich simply reply to premium, while the poor shop for discounts and value.

Likewise, education levels are often associated with content preferences. A particularly learned audience would expect technical detail and authority, whereas a wider one would be more interested in straightforward, practical insight.

Purchasing decisions are affected by marriage and the size of one's family, especially in sectors such as travel, housing, health care and education. A young, single professional and a married parent have vastly different needs and will react to different messaging and product offerings.

Occupation may be also employed as a basis to deduce working conditions, lifestyle and access to resources. For instance, freelancers and digital nomads might be enticed with productivity tools or amenable travel options; office workers may react better to content about commuting, time-management, or career advancement.

By integrating demographic data:

- Marketers are able to focus on themes of content, depending the stage people are in their lives.
- Visual design and tone of voice can be adjusted to suit audience perceptions.
- From age and technology usage habits to the channels through which users want to communicate.

We won't let demographics do all the talking, but it will give us a great basis upon which to layer in such things as psychographics and behaviours to build real fleshed out personas. Demographics are at least one of the simplest things to gather offline from forms you've had onboarding, surveys or through analytic tools and are a good start for you to build your personas.

There are some dangers we need to be aware of in comparing demographic assumptions with context. For example, not all millennials are the same and it certainly isn't true that high-income consumers are fueling luxury brands. Instead, demographic understanding should be the baseline to achieve.

enriched with richer behavior and motivation information to capture a wider view of what the users do and why.

5.1.3 Psychographics

Psychographics are the qualitative dimensions of an audience, such as values, beliefs, interests, lifestyles, personality types and attitudes. While demographics tell you who your audience is, psychographics explain why they behave the way they do. This extra

layer of understanding is necessary if your content is to touch the hearts and minds of those you wish to motivate and convert.

Psychographic information enables marketers to satisfy user's needs on an emotional level. It's like if you and your colleague are from the same country, even have similar characteristics but something makes one react in this way and the other in that way. As an example, two 30-year-old office workers may be oppositely shallow: One may love than binge drinking is bad for their brain health while the other might... not.

Common psychographic variables include:

- Living: The way we live our lives daily through what you eat and how you play your day via food/drink and exercise. Content that adheres to these rhythms and is timely will be content that you write.
- THEMATIC TARGETING: They watch and consume the content they love (fitness, gaming, gardening & art Show it to them) in order to increase interest and partnerships.
- Personality: Extrovert — mock persuasive game or some kind of interactive persuasion thing is fun; introvert: probably a pile of detailed things to read about something that doesn't make noise.
- Values and attitudes: The people users influenced to think more about social justice, the environment or innovation will definitely engage with brands that also have such values in their messaging.
- Attitudes and Opinions: These are what shape how a user perceives products, industries or marketing strategies. A tech-weary audience, for example, might be put off by jargon-filled or futuristic design.

Where To Find Psychographics psychographics can be found for the masses:

- Surveys and questionnaires
- Social media behavior analysis
- Interview-based user research
- Sales-lead form or Feedback form

This type of segmenting is especially powerful in influencer marketing, brand storytelling and emotional branding. For instance, a company that wants to attract environmentally friendly individuals could leverage stories of sustainability and transparency, ethical way in which the product is made or how similar values are shared – and not just product characteristics.

When developing a persona, psychographics can answer questions like:

- How does a human being get to act?

- What do they want?
- What are their limiting - or aspiring -- lifestyles and what drives this behavior?

They can only rise to the challenge and move beyond just providing information, to create content that resonates emotionally with audiences and thereby build greater trust and brand equity by tapping into these psychographic insights. It's the kind of insight that typically divides a blanket strategy from one that reaches people on an individual level, en masse.

5.1.4 Behaviour Mapping

Behavior mapping seems like a nothing short than mandatory task, as it gives an understanding and documentation of the ways users interact with digital platforms, content or products in history. It tracks the behaviors, interests and activity of individuals from discovery to purchase. Demographics and psychographics tell us who the user is, what they love, what they are into – but behavior tells us what they do.

This is a major way to make those data driven personas out of things you can see people doing. It provides on-the-fly filtering and targeting across channels, as well.

Behaviors recommended for mapping include:

- Searching Habits: Which keywords users search; the types of platforms they might view to get information; and how likely they are to ask questions about what they learn.
- Click Patterns: Most-clicked links, what calls to action driving engagement, where users are clicking on your webpages.
- Content Consumption Habits: Time on page, favorite content type (video vs. blog vs. podcast) and how often do they engage.
- Navigation Paths: Patterns of user journey around and through the sections, where from users arrive and sequences of pages viewed.
- Shopping: Items viewed, checkout-abandon rates, price sensitivity and response to promotional deals.
- Device and platform: Desktop versus mobile, app versus browser, the time of day or week a viewer is most engaged.

Behavior mapping gives marketers a view in real-time about what's working — and more importantly, what is not. If a specific landing page appears to be receiving traffic, but it's not converting that traffic, the behavioral data can offer some insights, such as poor visibility of CTAs (where are they located on your page?), confusing message or search intent misalignment.

Behaviour hotmaps are monitored using session recordings analytics dashboards, and CRM data. Weightier alternatives would be to feed these predictions into machine learning models to see which of the behaviors are most predictive (will best indicate who will convert/churn).

Behaviour mapping also enables:

- **Event Personalization:** The content and/or messaging change depending on the user's behavior This type of personalization is primarily event driven.
- **Validation of segmentation:** The way you iterate your personas against the aging users.
- **Funnel optimisation** – Find out where in the consumer journey the 'friction points' or drop-off pages occur.
- **Cross-channel targeting:** How behavior varies between email, social media and the web.

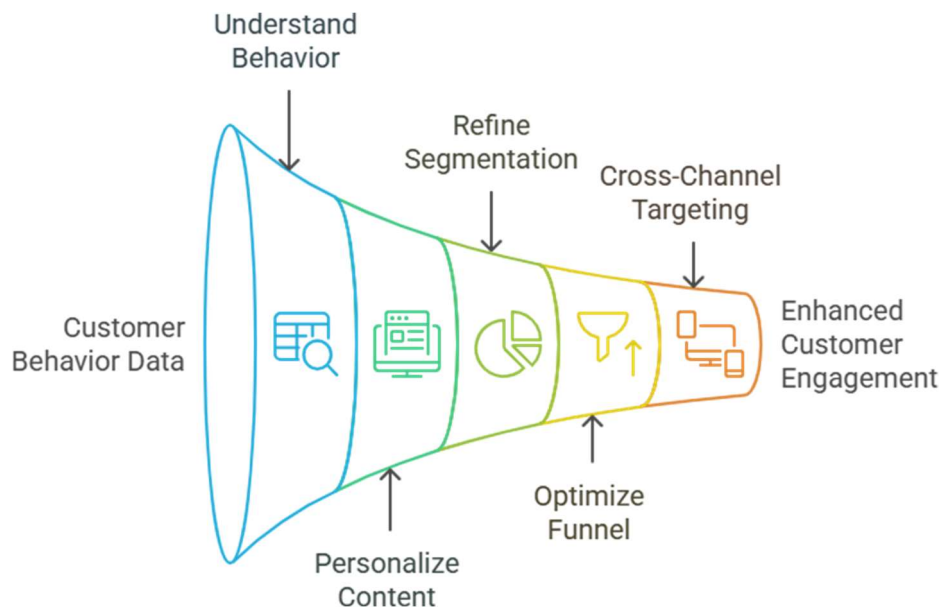


Figure 5.2

It connects content strategy to actual user flows, making sure that campaigns are aligned with how users discover, engage with and convert on content and merchandise.

5.2 Content Calendar & Strategy

5.2.1 Building a Content Calendar

Content calendar = This is a strategic planning device that will help to plan and organise content for the multi-channel digital world in your enterprise over time. It offers insight into what content will be published, when it goes live, who is involved and how it relates to larger strategic plans.

marketing objectives. Content calendar planning will maintain consistency, minimize the repetition and provides team members with opportunities to be forward-thinking rather than reactive when it comes to content development.

The creation of a content calendar starts with establishing defined goals. These goals could be driving organic traffic, boosting engagement rate, launching a product or nurturing leads in your sales funnel. Once those goals are set, marketers can start planning for the content types and distribution channels based on those goals. You also have to consider the buyer journey, seasonal trends and campaign timing when composing your calendar.

Some of the important things to be included in a content calendar are:

- Content title or working title
- Type of content (blog post, video, infographic, newsletter etc.)
- Target audience or persona
- Primary keyword or topic
- Buyer journey stage (awareness, consideration, decision)
- Assigned writer or creator
- Status of the submission (draft, under review, scheduled, published)
- Hub(s) on which content will be distributed (website, YouTube, LinkedIn etc.)
- Publishing date and time
- Call-to-action or linked campaign

A good content calendar can plan for any number of timeframe cycles — daily, weekly, monthly or seasonally — depending upon how complicated and time-bound the material is that your organization has to produce. For small to medium teams, monthly calendars generally do the trick, but there are larger enterprises that also manage quarterly and even annual calendars for product strategy when tied to other business cycle planning.

Content calendar creation also facilitates more effective team work. Content creators, designers, SEOs and social media managers can work in a well-synced fashion avoiding silos and duplicated efforts. It also lets you spot gaps or oversupply of content in

particular locations and makes sure that your mix of content types and themes is well-rounded.

More advanced content calendars might even bring in data from your content performance. Content performance after publish: Through analytics, marketers are able to see how scheduled content has performed once published and make adjustments for future planning. Then there's the themes or formats that works and they can be repeated, and then other ones that don't as well could be modified, deleted.

Content calendars are flexible, too. Time for agility: The need of an opportunistic guerrilla content piece or new direction after a user feedback and new business drivers can be considered. After all a calendar was to be forever a thing alive.

At its core, a content calendar isn't simply a schedule of when to post but strategic blueprint that helps you intentionally connect the dots for your advertising efforts with those of your target audience's expectations, tone and results tracking.

5.2.2 Topic Clusters

Focus attention on topic clusters Focus in on structure, as this is what should support and help you organise your content around a focussed area of interest / topic or subject. The model not only serves as a trigger to continue boosting the content discovery and the SEO results however, it offers the end users which are essentially at the heart of this whole ecosystem, a full round experience with regards that topic. The topic cluster approach is even more advantageous given the days when search engines such as Google relied on exact keyword matches are in the rearview mirror, and emphasize context, relevance and user intent over exact keyword matching.

Three essential elements of a topic cluster include:

- Pillar content: A single, in-depth page on a wide-reaching topic that other pages refer to.
- Cluster content: Multiple supporting articles that explore either various subtopics or one angle on the main topic.
- Internal linking structure: The way a pillar page is linked to each cluster page (and vice versa).

For example, a pillar page on "Digital Marketing" might be supported by cluster content such as "Email Marketing Best Practices," "Social Media Strategy," "SEO Basics," and "Content Marketing Tools." Also, each of these node in this cluster is interconnected to and from the central pillar, which is a web referred to as Interlinked content.

The role of topic clusters is to:

- Assist search engines to determine how content is related from various pages in a site
- Demonstrate authority on a topic by covering it thoroughly
- Enhance site structure and user navigation
- Send traffic elsewhere on your site to drive up time on site with related links.

For an effective topic cluster strategy, marketers must start by identifying a core topic which has adequate search demand and is relevant to their audience. Once the main topic is selected, related keywords and subtopics can be argued to specific content items.

Topic clusters are also nicely matched with the buyer journey. The pillar page could serve as top-of-funnel, awareness-stage content and introduce people to a topic, and the cluster pages can be more about consideration or decision-stage topics. Such a construction allows the content to be optimized for SEO, but also adjusted based on user demands of various levels of interest/readiness.

From an SEO standpoint, Topic Clusters enhance crawlability and the distribution of link equity. It allows search engines to crawl the site more efficiently and to find URLs that are more important during the crawling process. Internal linking within the cluster will also allow you to work on targeted anchor text and does improve 'Keywords' relevance without seeming like spam.

Prolonging content life cycles It's a great little side effect of what topic clusters give you — your content will stick around for longer, all else being equal. As we take what's working on these cluster pages and feed that into our pillar, it can also remain fresh (and relevant) over time.

Topic clusters are all about quality, not quantity. Instead of assuming that every piece is 'independent' and is able to stand completely alone without reference to any other, brands have created and developed stories and scenarios where each new part of the puzzle does its job in telling the story. This is scalable, organized and more effective for organic search rankings and user engagement."

5.2.3 Pillar Page Strategy

The pillar page strategy is a widely-used component of modern content marketing that looks to provide both search-based and user-experience value by creating authority laden, content dense hubs. A

Also known as a pillar post, the-pillar page is made up of in-depth blogs on a topic that will remain static and always be current (evergreen), with information around that topic when it changes. This is in tune with the way users search and how search engines evaluate thematic significance on a site.

A strong pillar page centers around a core topic that's a high-level idea related to the brand and the customer, has high search volume, and can be built out in content. You shouldn't try to rank on your main-target-keyword though, but you will become an authority in that field and you rank for the LSI or long-tail keyword.

Pillar Page Best Practices Some of the best practices for a productive pillar page:

- Detailed summary of the core topic with 2,000-5,000 words or more
- Internal links to other relevant content in the cluster (for example, blog posts, case studies or videos)
- Easy navigation and organised content, with the use of headings and subheadings to simplify complicated information
- Designed and implemented the entire store including metadata, Schema markup, SEO and Accessibility support
- A CTA that matches the role of the content in the buyer journey

When to use a pillar page Pillar pages serve two main purposes: they provide users with an all-in-one resource on a topic, and they demonstrate to search engines that the site has authority and depth when it comes to this particular area. This adds efficiency to organic rankings, lowers bounce rate and sustains long-term presence.

The first step in creating a pillar page is usually conducting thorough topic and keywords research. This research serves in defining what is to be included, find search trends and discover related subtopics that will need to be developed as supporting content. The pillar page is established as the central hub and all the cluster content links to it with deliberate anchor text strategies.

There are various types of pillar pages:

- **Resource Pillars:** Offer explanation, faq, and references through the topic (e.g. "Beginner's Guide to Content Marketing")
- **How-to Pillars:** Offer step-by-step instructions and practical advice (e.g., "How to Make a YouTube Channel")
- **Service/Product Pillars:** For educating and selling based landing pages (example, "Cloud Storage Solutions for Small Business")

The virtues of the pillar page strategy are greater than just SEO, though:

- It makes content flow more logical and provides better navigational structure

- It provides more content structure to teams, further breaking it down to the bite-size bits manageable by developers
- It increases time on site by providing a spider web of helpful articles
- There are embedded forms and CTAs which make lead generation much easier

A robust pillar strategy will also improve your internal linking refining on the way, cut down duplicate content and make sure that each of your pages cutting through endless content are very specifically focused on one aspect of a broader topic.

“Did You Know?”

"Search engines like websites that use topic clusters and pillar pages; they also do because it adds an angle of contextual depth and thematical approach to your site, allowing for the best of both worlds - crawlability as well as topical authority in a competitive SERP."

Pillar page tactics are a long game. They are front-loaded work but offer lasting value in terms of SEO, as lead-gen assets and across-the-board for content operations that can scale across not just campaigns but departments.

5.3 Understanding the Buyer's Journey

5.3.1 Awareness Stage Content

The awareness stage is the initial stage of a buyer's journey; this is that time when customers know they have a problem or a need but may not yet be aware of how to fully solve it. At this phase, users are actively in the throes of information search: they're exploring nondescript questions and beginning their research journey. They are not yet shop or engage transactionally with a brand. So content optimized for this stage must be teaching, informational and value driven without pushing a specific item or service.

Awareness stage content's main job is to entertain, inform and draw attention from visitors looking for more information or experiencing a problem related with your industry. It needs to be optimized for search engines with informational phrases which match user intent.

These can be “how”, “why”, “what is” or “guide to” questions. Examples of successful awareness stage content formats include:

- Blog posts and knowledge/educational content: Go to topics that explain some basic principle which would help users comprehend a problem/topic.
- Explainer videos: Easy-to-watch content, visually engaging, set in motion and explaining a topic.

- Infographics: Visual representations based on data that make complex issues easy to understand.
- Social media everyday content: Driving interest in the material and traffic to longer-form pieces.
- Templates and checklists: Practical TOOLS that solve a problem NOW and promote MORE use later.

And this, too, is a brand-discovery moment. There is no selling to speak but brand expertise and tone need content to open a window for awareness, contact in the future (and see the seed for more engagement). The real thing that's essential here though, is to make sure it's neutral and response actual user questions as well as possible without selling too hard.

What to prioritize when turning out awareness content First and foremost, in order for any brand to even make a dent with awareness messaging, marketers should:

- Keyword research: Finding informational keywords that get decent monthly search volume but have low competition.
- User pain points: The job to be done or question to be answered that triggers an initial search.
- Content distribution — pushing content out there via SEO, social media and partnerships to reach a large audience.

A strong driver in gaining trust is the content that raises awareness.

It shows thought leadership and makes the brand appear to be a trustworthy teacher. Those of you who get it right at this stage, the engagement metrics look much better – AOV's go up, time on page goes up, shares will rise and return visit rates will increase.

Lastly, awareness content should lead the user to the next step in their journey without being overly pushy. This is commonly accomplished with internal links, offers of downloadable content or requests to subscribe to a newsletter. By taking care of your audience from the very beginning, i.e. awareness content, you create a base from which to grow your reader's interest.

5.3.2 Consideration Stage Content

The consideration stage falls in the middle of the buyer's journey, where prospects know they have a problem or need and are considering which solutions available to them are viable options. Users know about your brand and other brands in the market. They're weighing the features, benefits, use cases and the experience to determine which product or service or approach best suits their needs. This is an important time for brands to be able to stand out and create a convincing story.

Consideration stage content should not just inform or educate, it should also establish your brand. The idea is to demonstrate for the prospect how your offering will help solve their problem, while also sharing useful, non-salesy information. This phase also requires knowledge that extends beyond content and should begin to share some solution specific insights.

Suitable content types for this stage Include:

- Comparison guides: Articles or downloadable PDF snap-in that compare products, services and/or prices and services of the business in a particular subject.

(e.g., “Product A 10 Method The loss in weight (in %) of the testing material against product B”).

- Case studies: Real-world case histories showing action that demonstrate how your solution helped a client solve a problem like the reader’s.
- Webinars and live demos: Interactive environments to learn about features and ask questions.
- Buyer’s guides: Explanation of what to consider when making buying decisions.
- Expert interview: Comments from a thought leader or your users to provide credibility and context.

This sort of content allows the consumer to dive a little further into your offerings-while still feeling like they are calling the shots in their journey. 3.5 Content at this level shall/be 3.5 must/should/be

transparent, evidence-based and addresses the needs that users are encountering. Too salesy, generic content won’t draw in potential leads.

It’s also an important time for lead qualification and nurturing. Whoever is engaging with this type of content has signal, and it’s probably possible to reach them even more. Beyond the webinar content, brands can offer gated assets (whitepapers, webinars) to capture leads who can engage with YOUR organization after the event.

This is also the point at which you could write content with a little more of an emphasis on SEO (focussing more on mid-funnel keywords). These include terms like:

- “Best [solution] for [need]”
- “[Product] reviews”
- “How to pick a [service/product]”
- “Top [category] providers”

A few more things to think about right now:

- Personalization: Recommendation of content according to the individual user behavior or preferences.
- Channel selection: Pushing content out — through email marketing, retargeting ads and direct messaging.
- Conversion elements: You can also play around with low-stakes CTA that are very obvious to the user in showing them how they should get in touch with sales or view product demos.

The message is a trust/relevance/strategy positioning of the content that primes thinking to frame the user. And it collapses the distance from awareness to transaction by putting value in content of transparency, comparison and helpful information.

5.3.3 Decision Stage Content

You have the decision-stage, which is the final stage of the buyer's journey, but this is when you are trying to close your sales lead into an opportunity. So with different stakes, users are really now looking for (re)assurance that they're doing the right thing. They want to

the why they WILL pick your product or service from ALL the rest and still could be shopping on price, user experience, warranties or support.

Now the content is pure conversion, trust-building crack. And it should crush those final reservations with one or two last sentences that shout out too-good-to-be-true value.

The style can become more promotional than in the earlier stages, but it still has to be centred on the customer's needs and not exclusively on features.

Content formats that work well for the decision stage are:

- Product pages: Beautifully designed landing pages featuring product specs, images and pricing.
- Customer testimony: A quote or video from a happy customer about how he or she has benefited and feels.
- Free trials or demos: Ways that users can try the product with little risk before they decide to buy.
- Discounts and offers: Short-term discount plans or package deals that spark urgency.
- Comparison charts: Visually engaging diagrams comparing how your offering is better than the existing options.
- Onboarding walkthroughs: Explaining what users will experience after they bought or signed up.

Content at this point should be self-explanatory and interesting, however it must also seem personalised to the.

While subject to significant variability, we also add 25% to the prospect's industry or use case. There are still personalization components to it,

In business to business situations people need to see proof that something works. This is especially true, in B2B settings where many people are involved. They all want to see different things. The main things that people look for in the decision stage are:

- People like to know that others have had an experience with something. That is why we use proof. Social proof is things like testimonials and reviews. These testimonials and reviews help establish trust, with people. They show that other people have used something and liked it which helps establish trust in that thing.
- When we talk about risk reversal we are talking about things like money-back guarantees and free trials. These things help people feel better because they do not have to commit to anything. We also have no-obligation quotes, which's another way of saying that people can get a quote without having to buy anything. All of these things, like money-back guarantees and free trials help reduce the risk that people think is involved with risk reversal.
- People can see that we support them: we have a ways for them to contact us like a page, with frequently asked questions and a live chat, which helps people trust our support.
- There are two things that can make people act fast: when they feel like they have to do something away and when they think they might miss out on something. For example people might make a decision quickly if they see an offer that's only good for a short time or if they know that an item will not be available once it is gone. This is because people do not want to miss out on things like deals or items that are in short supply. These things can make people feel like they have to act so they make faster decisions about things, like buying something.

This is where a lot of SEO work happens we are talking about searching for keywords that have our brand name and also looking for things that people search for when they are about to buy something and searching for reviews. Examples include:

- “[Product name] pricing”
- “Buy [service] online”
- “[Brand] vs [Brand]”
- “Is [Product] worth it?”

Also things that are meant for people who're almost ready to make a decision often have to deal with concerns from inside the company especially when we are talking about Business to Business. These concerns might be, about the money if the new thing works with what they have or how they will put it in place. For example we can have a list of asked questions that really get into the details or maybe even a calculator that helps people figure out how much money they will save so they can make a stronger argument to the rest of the company.

The decision stage content is really important. It helps give that push and it also helps people trust what they are doing. Decision stage content is something that you need to have. It makes a difference when people are trying to make up their minds. Decision stage content is there to support people and help them feel good, about what they're doing.

You really need to find out what the buyer is looking for. The buyer needs to know that they can count on support and get results from the product. You should tell the buyer how to get the most out of the product.

When you do this correctly the buyer will start to trust the product and see the value in it. This can help turn people who're interested in the product into long-term customers of the product. The product will seem credible, to the buyer and they will trust it more because of the content.

Activity: Mapping Content to the Buyer's Journey

Title: Content Alignment Workshop – Mapping the Journey

In this activity students work in groups. They get a brand and some customer information. Each group looks at one customer. Figures out a plan, for what to say to them at each step. They need to think about what the customer's doing at each step. Learning about the brand thinking about it or deciding to buy. The groups have to choose what kind of content to use what they want to get from it and explain why they made those choices. This activity helps students think about how what they say affects the customer at each step and how to say the things to help the customer make a decision. The customer goes through stages. Awareness, consideration and decision.. The content plan should support the customer at each of these stages. Presentations will be shared with the class for peer feedback.

5.4 Content Asset Creation

5.4.1 Blogs

Blogs are the most popular and flexible type of content assets used in digital marketing. There are many functions they can fulfill, including informing and answering, as well as driving organic search and building authority in a specific area. A great blog does more than inform. The purpose of a well designed blog isn't just to inform.

A blog post is usually themed and written in the brand voice and what your audience would expect. The content can be shorter, longer, stylistically different and have one of many various purposes. Blogs can be instructional, take's on the news or trends and even an analytical piece. Blogs are versatile and can fall across all parts of the buyer's journey – they can be informational for the awareness stage, comparison-oriented for the consideration stage or summaries of your case studies at the decision-making stage.

These factors are what make up an effective blog post:

- A strong headline which indicates what the user wants
- A beginning that grabs the reader's attention and states a purpose
- Sections and topics with bullet points to enhance readability
- Primary and secondary keywords blended for SEO
- Hyperlinks pointing in and out for better credibility and navigation
- Visual elements, such as photos and other media within the text to engage readers
- A clear CTA telling users what to do next

And also blogs are the 'key content foundation' in cluster/copyright/folder/architecture.xml where they point to a partner pillar page. By organising this information, the DOM is a sounder architecture for linking within your website and relevance top to bottom of that site improving your SEO authority.

Consistency Regularly blogging is not just important to stay in the line of sight of search engines but also the hearts and minds of your potential audience, making it a critical decision that must be right for you and stick with it. Regardless of whether you're writing weekly, bi-weekly or monthly, the posts themselves and their context should be a component in an overall marketing campaign, and be it to expand brand identity, generate leads or simply educate your customers. Secondly, updating old blog posts with time-sensitive details or new developments in a topic can also help make them more relevant and rank well into the future.

Blogs are also easily repurposable. A single blog post can be repurposed in the form of a newsletter, social media share or script for a video, so marketers can get additional value from their content.

channels. Great performance metrics on the details, like time on page, bounce rate and comments are some of those metrics that may be able give you an idea about how your content is performing – with the small “p” – or in other words how much users engage with your content (and ultimately its effectiveness).

But, in the final analysis, blogs are just a source of content -story and search and usage- that you can use for long-term branding and immediate marketing.

5.4.2 Videos

Video content asset is quickly becoming the most engaging & powerful in digital marketing. They are very effective at all stages of the buyer’s journey due to visual persuasion and emotional engagement. From a snackable social media clip to a polished product demo, video can inform, entertain and convert — at scale.

Retention: The most impactful pros of using video is that it promotes retention. People are 95 percent more likely to remember a call to action after watching a video, as compared with 10 percent of the people who read it in text. Videos deliver personality to a brand, with the ability to incorporate visuals, audio, movement and storytelling that can be more engaging. This makes them perfect for awareness and sales enablement.

Types of video content include:

- Explainer video: Simple animated or live action videos that explain a product or concept
- Tutorials and how-to videos: Step-by-step instructions to help users address problems
- Product demonstrations :Demonstrate product functions, advantages and uses.
- Testimonials: “Social proof” / credibility video from customer testimonials.
- Brand stories: focus on the mission, culture and values of the company

Live video or webinar: H/T Provide a space for real-time interactions to engage your community

Videos also have to be optimized for the platforms where they are shared. That involves making videos longer and wider, with captions — or not, depending on whether the video will be shared on YouTube, Instagram, LinkedIn or a brand site. You can make them captionable and transcriptions are available, also good for SEO.

Production value wise, videos do need to have some professionalism in terms of lighting and sound and etc. But the low-budget, unpolished videos can also do well if they are authentic on social media, a platform where users want behind-the-scenes and relatable content.

Effective video content includes:

- A snazzy opening that takes a little while to get into

Analytic: 1) thought is the same as that of the spectator

- The strong call-to-action, it makes people to take action
- Any brandable item, for example a logo, color or tag line can be less conspicuously placed

Video also provides for a lot of good tracking. Metrics, such as watch time, rate of engagement, shares, click through rates and conversion rate, offer feedback on the performance and user preferences.

You can strategically place videos throughout various touchpoints in marketing funnels: an explainer video on a home page, a testimonial video on a landing page or product demo that you have emailed out. It's a multi-use utility that should underpin any refreshed content play.

5.4.3 Infographics

Infographics are graphic content pieces that are used to display information, data, or anything else you want to communicate in, an easy-to-read way. They're great at aiding understanding of big themes in minimal time, which is why we love them for stats, timelines, comparisons or processes.

The reason people love infographics is that they combine visuals with succinct text to make something quickly understandable and memorable. They appeal to visual learners and are easy to share on social media, blogs, newsletters or in presentations.

Common types of infographics include:

- Statistical infographics: Examples of these include charts and graphs that display data and trends
- Procedure infographics: Visualising different processes in a workflow or method
- Timeline infographics: Displaying a series of events or the evolution of brand
- Comparative infographics: Comparing two or more options, products and ideas.
- Tree and other hierarchal infographics: Making organisational and decision charts

In order to make a successful infographic, you need content that is informative and cohesive in terms of visual content. This is a fine line between design and content. Design elements such as a standardized color scheme, easy-to-read type, space for the eye to move and visual hierarchy to lead your readers' gaze are important things to consider.

Successful infographics also include:

- A succinct headline or title that makes clear the main takeaway
- Short, bite-sized sections organised in a logical order
- Pictorial icons or illustrations for essential concepts

The short, snappy nature of these beauties means that you can use and reuse them in slideshows, reports or online adverts.

As visual as they are, the modern infographic very much relies on good data to drive its success. Badly researched or cluttered visuals become confusing not clarifying. Accordingly, data accuracy, content organization, and user-relevance should be a high priority in the design phase.

Infographics continue to be one of the most effective pieces of content in any content marketer's arsenal when it comes to clarity, aesthetics and user engagement.

5.4.4 Landing Pages

Landing pages are single webpages designed to increase conversions through specific information and a strong call-to-action (CTA). Unlike other types of web pages that have many purposes, landing pages have one purpose and one goal: to convert leads into sales or sign-ups in just a few short clicks.

A landing page is often reached from links on paid ads, social media posts, email promos and other similar traffic sources. It's designed to lead the visitor towards taking a particular action without any distractions.

Elements of a good landing page:

- **Headline:** A snappy and succinct statement that catches the reader's eye and reflects the ad or referring content
- **Hed2 Supporting Text:** Text that provides more background or details about the offer
- **Visual media:** Product photos, explainer videos, or trust badges that help influence familiarities
- **Benefits-oriented copy:** A well-stated explanation of what problem the product or offer solves, or whose need it satisfies
- **Call-to-action (CTA):** A large, no-frills statement that tells the visitor what to do or where to go next, such as "Download Now," "Start Free Trial," or "Register Today"

For instance if an ad says “Free eBook, click here”, then the landing page must give you that immediate experience without digressing to irrelevant information. This uniformity helps build trust and increases the number of conversions.

Landing page optimization You use “A/B Testing” in order to test changes made on web sites. Marketers can A/B test new headlines, layouts, or CTA placement to increase performance as informed by real user behavior. Tools use heatmaps, analytics to further understand how people interact with the page.

Well-designed landing pages contribute to:

- Lower bounce rates
- Higher lead quality
- Better ROI on paid campaigns
- Improved segmentation through tailored forms

They are also often used as part of a campaign-specific funnel, meaning that multiple landing pages can be created for different personas, industries or product lines. The use of personalization methods (e.g. dynamic content insertion) makes it easier for landing pages to speak directly to single users.

“Did You Know?”

"Landing pages with a single, focused call-to-action can increase conversions by over 200% compared to pages with multiple competing actions, according to marketing research studies."

Landing pages are vital assets in any results-driven marketing strategy. Their simplicity, focus, and conversion potential make them a cornerstone for lead generation, promotions, and targeted engagement.

5.4.5 Lead Magnets

Lead magnets are content assets that are provided to the user in return for some kind of contact information (usually email). They are a central part of inbound marketing and turn anonymous website visitors into identified leads and also take these leads through the funnel up to sales-readiness.

A Lead Magnet that works is something offers a quick win – solving a specific problem or interest for the ideal customer. It has to be something that people find useful and interesting, and are happy to volunteer their personal details in exchange for a summary.

Types of lead magnets include:

- E-books and guides: Detailed information on the subject of your choice
- Checklists and templates: Time-saving, ready-to-print tools
- Webinars and workshops: Live or archived sessions with insights from the experts
- Quizzes and tests: Interactive tools that return personalized results
- Discount codes: A code provided to have a discount on a product rescuing money.

Free trials or samples: Low commitment exposure of a product or service
Critical characteristics of an effective lead magnet are:

- A clear and specific promise
- Instant accessibility after form submission
- Has high perceived value, even when free
- User relevance of the user's stage in the buyer journey

Lead magnets are usually featured on dedicated landing pages, pop-ups or inline CTAs in a blog post. Keep the form for collecting user information short. Just take whatever you need to minimize resistance and maximize conversions.

“So how do I know, what is a good or bad lead magnet?” It Works Like Crazy Yet another helmet of an epic lead magnet is that this offer gives a dirty, wet dream kind of pleasure to your prospect because its the only thing in their world they don't have 'yet' And it's theirs...They can feel the hot sweaty saturation.

- Frequent new trends or data
- Series with Segments (follow up or email series) multiples
- Plays well with others: integrations with CRM platforms for lead scoring and segmentation
- Measurable performance based metrics such as downloads, conversions and engagement were measured

Lead magnets are also the foundation of the lead nurturing workflow and can enable a marketer to send person-specific follow-up content. For instance after a user downloads a guide about tools for remote productivity, they can go through an email sequence about similar service offerings or perhaps case studies.

Developed strategically and in line with persona needs, lead magnets can increase your list's growth while providing value up front (instead of hitting readers over the head with a sales pitch from day one).

made. They are turning passive curiosity into active involvement – first step on the path towards a more profound relationship between brand and user.

5.5 Evergreen vs Trending Content

5.5.1 Characteristics of Evergreen Content

Evergreen content is the type of content that stays fresh, informative and can be relevant long past its publishing date – it has nothing to do with what’s on-trend or newsworthy in your niche. It is not a gimmick or fad that only works at hitherto moments in time. Rather, it targets foundational queries, wants or problems that people are asking about time and again over weeks or months even years.

Evergreen comes from the botanical meaning, which refers to trees that never lose their leaves throughout any time of year. Evergreen assets work just the same in content marketing—a resource that keeps on generating traffic and engagement months, if not years after it was published.

Some of the key attributes that evergreen content has:

- **Evergreen Topics:** The topics covered are not time bound or age quickly. Content such as “How to write a resume” or “Email marketing best practices” are things that people will still be interested years down the line.
- **Continued search demand:** This content is being searched for regularly, leading it to always receive organic traffic from search engines.
- **Educational/Foundational:** Often evergreen content teaches a fundamental idea, or a specific way to do something that’s applicable in numerous situations or industries.
- **Content hardly changed:** As the facts being presented never change, only maintenance of information is needed in terms of content update or modernisation.
- **High utility:** Either solves a problem, answers a question, or provides information people search for.
- **Wide-ranging audience appeal:** While it can be niche oriented, it tends to have a broad and varied audience reach based on the fact that it is fundamental.

Examples of evergreen content include:

- How-to guides and tutorials
- Frequently asked questions (FAQs)
- Glossaries or definitions
- Product or service usage tips

- Case studies with timeless lessons
- Lists of resources or tools

Evergreen content represents the heart and soul of many a content marketing strategy due to its potential for compound ROI. One good blog post properly optimized will rank on in the search engines for months or even years, and bring in leads. It also adds to domain authority and internal linking techniques, which is an integral part of SEO.

Another few examples of evergreen content, beyond blog posts, include videos, infographics, white papers and downloads.

These are website/funnel entry points that can also be repurposed in lead nurturing, onboarding, or education-based campaigns.

5.5.2 Pros and Cons of Trending Content

The trending tab is a collection of videos, blog posts and news articles reacting to current events, viral stories or rapid memes. The antithesis of evergreen, trending content is supposed to be fleeting and timely. And now they want to catch you when you're most interested. Perfect for VISIBILITY, SOCIAL SHARES & TOPICALITY!

The main positive to trending content is that it gets you fast spikes in traffic and engagement. It does both; taps into current curiosity of the audience, hashtags or conversations AND gives the

brand to be; timely, conscious and relevant. And this content is uniquely sticky to the platforms with a high velocity of content turnover: Twitter, Instagram, YouTube or TikTok.”

Benefits of trending content include:

- A greater opportunity to be discovered: Mashing yourself up against the news can also mean that your content rises closer to the top of search results, gets collected faster by news aggregators and social feeds.
- More social sharing: Trending news will be more likely to be shared, commented or talked about by the people who are already interested in that topic.
- Brand relevance: When a brand can make stuff all the time it shows that the brand is able to change and do things at the same time as the brand is supposed to. This means the brand is really good, at keeping up with the brand and making sure the brand is always doing something. The brand is able to do this because the brand is flexible and the brand follows what is happening with the brand.

audience's interests and concerns.

- Ecomsite short-term traffic growth: When you get a lot of visitors to your Ecomsite in an amount of time it can help your Ecomsite get noticed really quickly. This can be good, for your Ecomsite because it can bring in sales and whatever benefits your Ecomsite can get from people visiting your Ecomsite depending on how these visitors found your Ecomsite.

There are some things that people're really into right now for example:

- Reactions to news or field developments
- Seasonal-holiday or event-based content
- Views on social or political issues
- Viral challenges or memes are really fun to talk about. This could be one column where reporters who have things happening around them can write about viral challenges or memes and describe what they see.

- Summary of the most recent product releases, software release updates or findings

However, there are some drawbacks with the trending content approach:

- Short shelf life: Things that are popular now become news very quickly and this affects the long term return on investment of the timely topics. The timely topics do not stay relevant for a time and that is why they impact the long term return, on investment of the timely topics.
- Content saturation: You can easily get lost in a crowd of thousands of creators who are all talking about the same thing unless the content creators have a special way of looking at things a unique angle that makes content creators stand out and that is what makes the content creators and their content special.
- Pressures to mount: The speed at which trends are changing means that people want things to be made fast. This is happening quickly that production is being rushed through as fast as possible. The thing that gets left behind is making sure that the things that are being made are quality and accurate. Trends are changing fast and this is making production go faster and faster. Trends are the thing here and they are what is driving this need, for speed.
- SEO shelf life: When content is trending, you may get a short-term burst of SEO value from it, but this doesn't carry through its rankings history beyond the trend dying down.
- Misalignment risk: Jumping on unimportant or controversial trends can turn off audiences or harm your brand's standing.

Furthermore, not all fads are applicable to all brands. Whenever a post feels too much like it was simply jimmied into the coronavirus crisis, which is a very real thing going on in every video that comes out now, people will stop watching because something didn't

seem authentic. Because of this, brands will need to be selective about trends, making sure they are in line with their own voice and audience.

Strategically, with trending content it is best when it is one part of the larger content mix (with evergreen sheer rock faces and high-traffic wide commercial trails) and combines well with campaign specific content. It can be used as a traffic driver, lead generator or brand awareness builder but you can't put all your eggs in the content strategy basket.

5.5.3 Balancing Evergreen and Trending Strategies

Effective content marketing usually involves a judicious mix of evergreen and trending. While evergreen content establishes long-term authority and steady traffic flow, trending content brings short-term surges of visibility and interaction. Get that ratio right and on-demand brands can stay "in-keeping", thus making their content timeless.

Content slow down: The move that advances by standing No, since these are two types of content camps that can live in harmony the answer is strategic planning, content mapping and audience segmentation. The middle of the wheel is your evergreen content, or high quality content that you can always rely on. The content will continue to serve you and your SEO, generating leads and establishing brand credibility with you doing nothing – no maintenance or updating required.

"Trending" content, meanwhile, should be doled out — and harnessed opportunistically for reach or topical engagement. It infuses a little dynamism into the content calendar, allowing that feeling that your brand is relevant and responsive.

Below is what to do when you're ready to balance those two types of content:

- 80-20 : 80% of your content is evergreen, and only 20% of it is topical / timely. This proportion remains constant, and someone has to play the balance.
- Editorial planning: You will need an editorial calendar – one based on evergreen foundation pieces, but also "holes" that trends should fill (for example: if there are monthly awareness days or new product launches or industry conferences).
- Repurpose content: Transform trending copy into evergreen assets by identifying trends with "staying power," and converting them into guides, checklists or tutorials.
- Data-driven judgments: Leverage your findings to calculate what types of content produce the highest ROI. Refine the mix as you see how your audience interacts with it, and what resonates most with business goals.
- Collaboration across teams: Involve SEO / social teams in planning, concentrate on the content that fits both search and engagement goals.
- Content hub method: Categorize web content such as scholarly (as resource-article) and trendy (blogs, news or social feeds).

Consider the reaction of your target audience as another aspect of content balance. New users may be willing to take the bait with fresh content, whereas returning users want something more meaningful and evergreen. A decent campaign would let you in on both, lighting a fire under at least two kinds of fan.

Another factor is resource management. Evergreen content is generally more time-consuming and costlier to produce, but it pays off long after you've created the piece. Fast, nimble creativity is what gets it done.”

Distributing resources according to the content goals would optimize team effort and overall impact.

Brands also need to maintain content governance, so that even breaking news content is within style, editorial guidelines and tone for the brand. This helps avoid any discrepancies and protects the brand integrity.

In the end, a mixture of both methods will serve to keep your content fresh and on-topic. It combines the best of both worlds, discoverability and shareability, in order to create a holistic user experience that works all the way across the funnel.

Knowledge Check: Evergreen vs Trending Content

1. Which of the following best describes evergreen content?
 - a. Seasonal blog
 - b. Viral meme
 - c. Timeless guide
 - d. News update

2. What is a key benefit of trending content?
 - a. Long shelf life
 - b. Consistent traffic
 - c. Quick visibility
 - d. Low maintenance

3. What is a major drawback of relying only on trending content?

- a. Low engagement
 - b. Poor SEO
 - c. High shelf life
 - d. Short lifespan
-
4. How can evergreen content be kept relevant?
 - a. Frequent deletion
 - b. Daily promotion
 - c. Occasional updates
 - d. Seasonal rewrite
-
5. What ratio is often recommended for balancing evergreen and trending content?
 - a. 90/10
 - b. 80/20
 - c. 60/40
 - d. 50/50

5.6 Summary

Detail of digital personas is created with a wide audience analysis, including those that have had an experience of the brand; based on: demographic profile people in business category research conducted in the last campaign behavior.

Pillar page strategy also builds topical authority, which boosts the long-term ranking of pillar content by effectively acting as a hub for related content.

The buyer's cycle passes through awareness, consideration and decision stages, and each needs specific types of content formats and messaging.

Blogs work as a foundation of content assets educating, informing and engaging users at various stages of the funnel.

But at the same time, videos are known for higher engagement and retention, therefore being employed effectively for storytelling, product demonstrations and brand communication.

Infographics are a way to visualize complex data – making the content easily sharable and digestible.

Landing pages concentrate user attention on a single call to action, increasing conversions via targeted messaging and design.

Lead magnets are rewards in the form of value-providing content that help generate leads by giving potential customers a reason to share their contact details.

Evergreen content offers continual value and traffic, whereas trending content - although viral - allows you to benefit from short-lived attention.

A combination of evergreen and timely topic content should be used to ensure long-term growth and topical visibility.

5.7 Key Terms

Digital Persona: A partly fictional profile of the customer based on factual data and insights.

Content Calendar: A schedule of what content will be published, when and where it will be posted, and by whom.

Topic Cluster: A collection of connected articles focused on a single pillar topic to enhance site structure and search engine optimization.

Pillar Page - A large content page that acts as the “hub” for the topic cluster.

Buyer’s Journey: The journey a customer goes through from the awareness stage, to the consideration stage and finally decision.

Blog: A written content type disseminating information, news or opinions about a specific topic to an audience.

Video Content: A category of multimedia information that is conveyed verbally and visually through video storytelling.

Infographic: A visual rendering of data or information intended to portray complex stories at a glance, and shareable.

Landing Page: A single-purpose web page, typically created to serve a single call-to-action.

Lead Magnet: A free gift given in return for a user’s email address (or other contact info) to help generate leads.

Evergreen Content: Articles that add value and are relevant for a very long time.

Trending Posts: Posts on hot topics, viral content or newsy items.



5.8 Descriptive Questions

(Explain the process of creating digital personas and the significance of audience segmentation.)

What is the role of a content calendar in digital marketing?

Explain what topic clusters are and how these can be used to improve website SEO.

Differentiate between content requirements for awareness, consideration, and decision

stages in the buyer's journey.

Assess the pros and cons of using videos or infographics as content pieces.

What is on an effective landing page and how does that impact user behavior?

Define evergreen and trending content. How can marketers reconcile the two?

Where does a lead magnet fit in with content-based lead gen?

5.9 References

1. Pulizzi, J. (2014). *Epic Content Marketing*. McGraw-Hill Education.
2. Halligan, B., & Shah, D. (2014). *Inbound Marketing: Attract, Engage, and Delight Customers Online*. Wiley.
3. Fishkin, R. (2015). *The Art of SEO*. O'Reilly Media.
4. Patel, N. (2020). *Content Marketing Strategies for Growth*. DigitalMarketer.
5. HubSpot Academy. (2023). *Content Marketing Certification Course Materials*.
6. Chaffey, D., & Ellis-Chadwick, F. (2019). *Digital Marketing: Strategy, Implementation and Practice*. Pearson Education.

Answer Key to Knowledge Check

1. c. Timeless guide
2. c. Quick visibility
3. d. Short lifespan
4. c. Occasional updates
5. b. 80/20

5.10 Case Study: How HubSpot Uses Content Assets for SEO Growth

Background

Indeed, as you may expect from a leading inbound marketing, sales and CRM company—that's the business that HubSpot is in—HubSpot has always been content-driven customer acquisition. From educational blogs to robust resource library, HubSpot as a great example of content asset development and its potential uses for SEO growth, lead gen, and branding.

Problem 1: Low Organic Reach in Early Phases Solution 1.

Challenge:

When HubSpot was created, it worked in an ecosystem that was heavily influenced by the legacy CRM world and the aggressive outbound marketing culture. With no audience, or ad budget for that matter like the big boys, the company had to find a way to generate what admission-standard-scoring kids do in mutual company.

Solution:

HubSpot went hard with blog content for high-volume, long-tail keywords that marketers, salespeople, and customer services teams would be at any point in their buyer journey. The content focused on evergreen

topics such as “How to Write a Marketing Plan” and “Email Marketing Do's and Don'ts.” These articles were on-site SEO optimized with KW clustering, internal linking and schema markup etc. Soon, these posts were ranking for thousands of keywords and driving steady traffic and leads with little upkeep required.

Problem 2: Users hard time to navigate messages and content.

Challenge:

As HubSpot's content library grew, users struggled to find, browse and consume all that.

find relevant, connected resources. Without thematic topic, it was difficult for search engines to interpret the meaning of related content - authority signals in search rankings were hampered.

Solution:

HubSpot embarked on topic cluster and pillar page approach. They picked out as the central themes “Inbound Marketing,” “Sales Enablement,” and “Customer Retention” – then built high-value pillar pages around each. Strong back links were strategically built from relevant cluster content to strengthen site architecture and domain authority.

For instance: the “What is Inbound Marketing?” estimation for links to related dozens of related articles and tools, simply making your pillar page a user-friendly hub and an SEO workhorse.

Problem 3 - Struggle with converting traffic into relevant leads

Challenge:

Even with the massive traffic HubSpot did it took more than blog posts to convert anonymous web visitors into qualified leads.

r). These resources were gated on landing pages with forms and the user’s data was collected. Content was tailored for each stage of the buyer journey to increase relevance and worth. For example, someone reading a post on email marketing tips might choose to test out my "Free Email Campaign Template" that they can download from my site and then get fed into HubSpot's lead nurturing.

Reflective Questions

How did HubSpot use SEO and evergreen content to create sustainable, long-term visibility?

How did it gain in User Experience, Search Engine functionality by topic clustering?

How did lead magnets make it easier to turn traffic into leads?

How does HubSpot remain relevant and authoritative in a competitive landscape when everything about content timeline’s suggests it’s old news?

What can SMBs and mid-sized businesses learn from HubSpot content strategy?

Conclusion

The HubSpot example shows that with a solid content strategy backed by user intent, keyword targeting and asset creation you can literally grow search traffic in perpetuity. By repurposing the evergreen content and adding new value through lead magnets, as well as structuring it in the way we talked about (using topic clusters + pillar pages) HubSpot is now not only one of the best software companies there are but also a great example of content marketing. Their approach illustrates the value of aligning content, search engine and keyword approach 360i (UK) and objective can be to land with your key message at that point.

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 6 V3 (1).docx

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 ATLAS SkillTech University

Document Details

Submission ID

trn:oid::3618:127519422

Submission Date

Feb 4, 2026, 3:20 PM GMT+5:30

Download Date

Feb 4, 2026, 3:24 PM GMT+5:30

File Name

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 6 V3 (1).docx

File Size

163.9 KB

25 Pages

7,579 Words

40,639 Characters

1% Overall Similarity

The combined total of all matches, including overlapping sources, for each database.

Filtered from the Report

- ▶ Bibliography
- ▶ Quoted Text
- ▶ Cited Text
- ▶ Small Matches (less than 15 words)

Match Groups

- 4 Not Cited or Quoted 1%**
 Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- 0 Missing Quotations 0%**
 Matches that are still very similar to source material
- 0 Missing Citation 0%**
 Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- 0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
 Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 1% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 1% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Integrity Flags

0 Integrity Flags for Review

No suspicious text manipulations found.

Our system's algorithms look deeply at a document for any inconsistencies that would set it apart from a normal submission. If we notice something strange, we flag it for you to review.

A Flag is not necessarily an indicator of a problem. However, we'd recommend you focus your attention there for further review.

Match Groups

- 4 Not Cited or Quoted 1%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- 0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
- 0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- 0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 1% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 1% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Top Sources

The sources with the highest number of matches within the submission. Overlapping sources will not be displayed.

1	Submitted works	
	Dublin Business School on 2025-08-28	<1%
2	Internet	
	fastercapital.com	<1%
3	Submitted works	
	Kaplan International Colleges on 2023-11-22	<1%
4	Internet	
	tela.uk	<1%

Unit 6: On-Page SEO Techniques

Learning Objectives:

1. Analyze how user experience (UX) elements, including page speed, mobile responsiveness and readability impact the effectiveness of content and rankings in search engines.
2. Use the best SEO practices to create and format content that satisfies user intent and search engines.
3. Distinguish among different forms of SEO-friendly content such as blogs, landing pages and resource hubs, and know what each addresses requirements for particular marketing objectives.
4. Show that you are capable of performing an SEO audit with existing content and make edits to improve visibility and performance.
5. Crafting copy that strikes a healthy balance between keywords and natural language to help content get noticed as well as engaging users.
6. Analyse real world examples of high ranking SEO content and learn tactics for driving up your user engagement rates and impressing Google in the process.

Content:

- 6.0 Introductory Caselet
- 6.1 Content Optimisation
- 6.2 User Experience Factors
- 6.3 SEO-friendly Content Writing & Blogging
- 6.4 Summary
- 6.5 Key Terms
- 6.6 Descriptive Questions
- 6.7 References
- 6.8 Case Study

6.0 Introductory Caselet

Headline: “Why Rankings Fell at TechVerse”

TechVerse: a mid-size SaaS company focused on team productivity tools; had seen years of consistent monthly organic traffic increase. They had a well maintained blog and were ranking their product pages for several high value keywords. But within three months, the organization saw a drastic drop in both its rankings and site traffic. Their marketing team was confused since there was no change in publishing cadence and they didn't get any announcements on an algorithm update.

An internal review discovered many serious problems. The site had many blog posts that, while keyword friendly, were outdated and did not include current data or internal links. Some also lacked readability with long paragraphs, disabling of formatting on mobile devices and a lack of use of headings and visual elements. Product landing pages were an engineer's wet dream with way too much techno-babble to throw off new visitors.

Further investigation showed that TechVerse was getting outmanoeuvred by competitors offering content that wasn't just SEO-focussed, but also beautifully readable, mobile-optimised and built around user intent. These rival pages had superior meta descriptions, neater design, faster load times and stronger calls to action. TechVerse focused more on how often they were posting and the number of keywords published, rather than quality content or user experience that would contribute to ranking improvement."

The group overhauled their content tactics to do so. They began with refreshing old posts with new stats, better headlines and meta data, improving the mobile UX, reconfiguring the content for a better flow. They introduced our SEO-friendly blogging strategy, which included stuff like: smart internal linking & improved anchor text and content hierarchy.

In four months, TechVerse already recovered in partial rankings with significantly higher average session duration. Their bounce rate decreased, and key content assets saw straightforward increased engagement metrics.

Critical Thinking Question:

Is there a way I can combine content optimization and user experience to better appear in the search engines while not sacrificing my audience?

6.1 Content Optimisation

6.1.1 Meta Tags – Title, Description, Alt Text

Meta Tags – Meta tags are crucial HTML code to help search engine as well as users know what inside your web page. Not always present at the surface of a website, meta tags play an essential part in on-page SEO by determining how pages are indexed,

ranked and displayed by search engines. The most important meta tags include the title tag, meta description and image alt text.

Title Tag

The title tag is also what searchers see when your page gets displayed in search results (SERPs) and is critical to helping people decide whether to click through or not. It should be an honest summary of what the page is about and include your main keyword – it's best to use it as close to the beginning of the description as you can. A good title tag helps to increase click through rate (CTR) and if written well it's about the right length, which is typically less than 60 characters for mobile.

Effective title tag should have the following elements:

- Uniqueness for each page
- Keyword-rich but not spammy
- Reflective of user intent
- Related to the main topic of page

Meta Description

While it doesn't directly impact ranking, the meta description hugely influences CTR by offering a brief glimpse below the title tag in SERP to let users know what's on the page. A good meta description is written 150-160 characters, but still includes a keyword and explains the value of the visit. It acts as a trailer, to help users determine whether or not they want to click on the result.

Best practices include:

- Writing persuasive, benefit-driven text
- If necessary, adding a call to action
- Ensuring no duplication across pages

Alt Text

Alt text (alternative text) describes images on a web page. This does two things: it makes the image more accessible to people with visual impairments, and it can help search engines learn more about your photos for indexing purposes. Understandable alt text should be descriptive, brief and related to the surrounding content. Naturally incorporating Keywords in alt text can also enhance image SEO & help the pages to show up in image search results.

Common mistakes to avoid:

- Keyword stuffing on image alt tags

- To refer the image or picture with imprecise language such as “image” or “picture”.
- Failing to fill in alt text for key images

In a word, meta tags improve the semantics of a webpage. They act as cues for search engines to classify content to certain queries and also influence how your page is displayed in SERPs. When optimised properly, these tags all help to increase your rankings, bring in more traffic and improve user engagement. Meta tags need to be regularly reviewed while performing ongoing SEO maintenance in order to keep them aligned with changes in your keyword strategy and updates you make to your content.

6.1.2 Headers (H1, H2 and H3) and Their Importance

Headers (heading tags) organize the content of a site into logical sections. They not only increase readability and user experience, but also signal to search engines how the hierarchy and importance of information on a page is structured. Using Headers Correctly It's not just H1, it's also H2 and possibly H3 that are important to get right when it comes to optimising your content.

H1 Tag (Main Title)

The H1 tag is generally used once on a page and is the headline for the page. It should clearly

contain the theme of the page within them and have your main keyword in it. The H1 is one of the first pieces of content that a search engine will read to understand further what the page is about and therefore, it is critical for SEO.

Best practices for H1 include:

- Keeping it concise and keyword-focused
- Making it visually prominent
- Preventing more than one H1 on a single page

H2 Tags (Section Headings)

H2 are the sub-headers and describe the primary points of content below the H1. They facilitate breaking up of text into smaller, more readable sections for users who are quickly scanning a page. Every H2 needs to cover a big subtopic, and if there are any it can branch off to related keywords or phrases. H2s are both functional and very aesthetic, leading readers into the post by categorizing the content.

H3 Tags (Subsection Headings)

H3s are contained within H2s and continue to segment content further. You can use them for lists, checklists, or detailed explanations in a long section. Although H3 is less

powerful in SEO, it still contribute to better content structure and readability for complex subjects if implemented correctly.

The importance of header hierarchy:

- A logical content flow is reflected also in the header structure
- Accessibility - Correct hierarchy is good for screen readers and other accessibility tools
- Header structures are used by search engines to understand content context

Headers are also used as anchor points for featured snippets and other rich search results. Good headers can increase the chances for content to be picked up into a snippet, if coupled with short and useful answers.

Common mistakes in header use:

- CSS should not be used to style the headers themselves (in terms of appearance, not content)
- Skipping header level (Ex: Jumping from H1 to H4 without using any other H2 or H3)
- Stuffing your keywords into every heading (and potentially sound like you're using manipulation.)

Your headlines have the potential for being a make or break in terms of both SEO value and user engagement. Pages that are scannable and navigable will keep a visitor, reduce your bounce rate and increase the chance of exploring deeper.

6.1.3 Keyword Placement and Density

Keyword position and density are two critical content optimization elements that will influence how good read, & findable your copies by SEs.

The right keywords are used and integrated so the content stays in-line with search intent and does not sound spammy or contrived.

Keyword Placement

Keyword density is less vital than being strategically placed throughout an article. Search engines give more weight to the first few paragraphs in a web page, and place items at the beginning of the page higher in order of relevance for specific keywords.

HOTS Of course, keywords must be strategically placed.

- Title tag and meta description
- H1 and H2 headers
- The first 100 words of content

- URL slug
- Image alt text and captions
- Internal link anchor text
- Final paragraph or call-to-action

The objective is to indicate to search engines the relevance of our content with respect to some specific search questions, without spoiling the reading experience. Keyword placement should 'fit' and contribute to the jog of what is being communicated throughout the page.

Keyword Density

Keyword density is the frequency at which a keyword appears relative to the total number of words on a page. There is no "ideal" density ratio that everyone agrees on, but as a general rule of thumb most SEOs believe it should be anywhere from 1% to 2% for your main keyword. There are two extremes: Overuse could result in search engine penalties for keyword stuffing, and underuse can compromise the relevance.

To calculate keyword density:

$(\text{Keyword occurrences} / \text{Total number of words}) \times 100$

There are also semantic variations and synonyms to include instead of always using the same keyword phrase. As of now search engines know how to measure the relevancy of a page through Latent Semantic Indexing (LSI) which is an ability to recognize related terms and context. For instance, a page that targets "digital marketing strategy" might contain secondary keywords such as "online or alternative digital marketing strategy", considering intent and contextual relevance.

advertising," SEO planning," and "content calendar."

Common pitfalls to avoid:

- Stuffing keywords unnaturally into sentences
- Repeating keywords in every subheading
- Ignoring user readability to pander to search bots

Content should still always be written for humans first, and search engines second. Good clear content that's easy to read and informative, which incidentally contains strategically placed keywords is always better than stuffy, keyword optimised content.

"Did You Know?"

Google's algorithms prioritize where you place the keyword over how many times you use it—using it in headlines, titles and first paragraphs is more important than using the word itself dozens of times.

As search engine algorithms have evolved, relevance has become more important than the number of times a word or phrase appears in a web page. Marketers need to provide helpful, user-friendly content that satisfies intent behind search queries.

6.1.4 Internal Linking Strategies

Internal linking is when a link on one web page of a site directs the user to another through hyperlinks. It's not just an aspect of user navigation but a (site-wide) "link distribution" strategy too, as how the search engines are served your site is very important for channeling quality throughout and how page authority (or link equity) flows.

The Object and Benefits of Internal Linking

- **Advanced crawlability:** Internal links guide search engines to crawl new content and rank it.
- **Spreading authority:** Pages with a lot of backlinks can spread some authority (and indexing) to other, internal pages, increasing the site-wide SEO value.
- **Higher user engagement:** They keep users on your site or getting them to other relevant content which also increases the time spent on site and reduces bounce rates.
- **Structures content on a website:** You can use internal linking to structure the architecture of your site, and give context between different pieces of content.

Best Practices for Internal Linking

Anchor text information: Don't call the link "click here," instead, provide detailed keywords/anchor texts on it that further explain to search engines and users what is in store.

Link to related content: When you include links, make sure they're contextually relevant and provide added value for the reader.

Too much linking: Keep your internal links per page down to stay focused and avoid watering down authority signals.

Link deep: Don't just link to the home page or top-level sections in a menu – link deeper into your site, where traffic may not flow unabated on its own.

Update old articles: Keep re-reading existing ones and link them to other published pages if they're related somehow.

Types of Internal Links

- **Navigate-ical links:** In menus, sidebars and footers, these help navigate the site.
- **In-text links:** These are placed in body content and are super high quality for SEO.
- **Breadcrumbs:** A visual list of links that describe whereabouts on a site you are.

Link depth and crawl efficiency

Content that takes too many clicks to get to from the homepage might not be crawled as often. Internal linking serves as a strong guidance for the user and web-crawler. One would want to follow the rule of "three-clicks-and-you're-in"///-i.e., all pages should need no more than 3 clicks from home.

6.2 User Experience Factors

6.2.1 Readability and Content Structure

Return to top **Readability and composition** While these factors are also important user experience (UX), they affect how users react or interpret content. The readability is related to how much text in a block is reader-friendly, and content structure refers to how information is organized or placed on the page. These two components interplay to become discoverable, scannable and attractive content.

Importance of Readability

But readability is more than simply the complexity of words, it's sentence length, paragraph spacing and how to use tone and formatting. When content is hard to read, people are far more likely to leave the page regardless of how relevant or how good that content is. Bounce rates go up, time on site goes down and conversions decline when readability does.

Key factors that influence readability:

- **Plain language:** Jargon is sidestepped, and simple sentence forms are employed to facilitate comprehension.
- **Short sentences and paragraphs:** The more we slim down the writing, the less cognitive load it carries, and the more easily and readily we can glide from one paragraph to another.
- **Active voice:** Use the active – and not the passive — voice to make tone more direct, engaging.

Font size and style: Ensure you choose a readable font, eg sans-serif for digital version, taking into account the readability factors including an appropriate size of text.

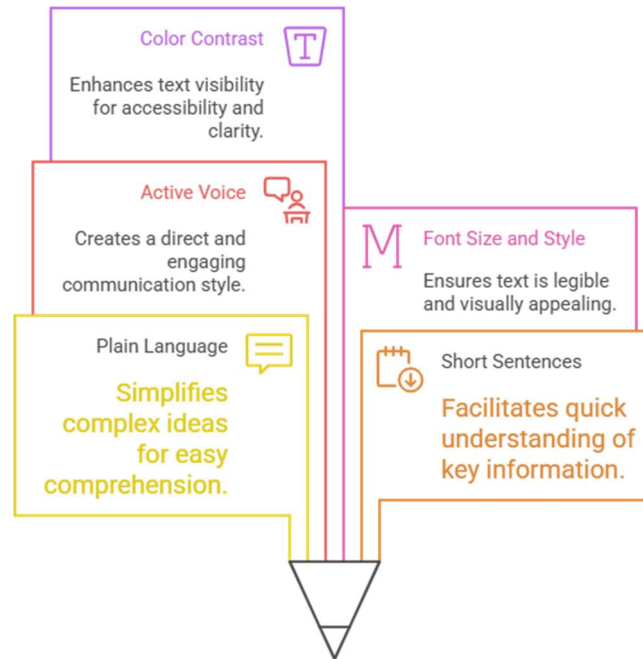


Figure 6.1

Effective Content Structure

Have structured content so it's easy to consume and get in that flow of extracting value for the user. The generally accepted format, bold and bullet ed makes the page useful and entices you to read more.

Content organization is best taught in the following ways:

- **Sound headings and subheadings:** These serve as signposts for both readers and search engines to break content up into manageable sections.
- **Lists and bullet points:** They offer visual relief as you skim a screenful of paragraph after paragraph of text.
- **Visual hierarchy:** Ensure the most important information takes precedence in typography, spacing and layout.
- **Content blocks:** By breaking content into bite-size chomps, attention is sharpened and the main messages are more digestible.
- **Whitespace:** The use of whitespace is a way to help readers not to become overwhelmed and easily read the webpage.

Impact on SEO and UX

Search engines also consider how a page is being read and its structure, when deciding how to rank pages. Clean, well-organized and readable pages are much more likely to rank in search results like featured snippets. And content that can be accessed is also more inclusive and plays on the users' education, levels as well as their language.

The "art of making it easy" was balanced against the need for reader intention and reading action. Copy needs to do more than inform, it has to lead, affirm and convert. Especially if there's a "design for mobile-first scenario" that also applies, then formatting matters even more (since you have less design space).

"Both readability and structure aren't fixed: You'll need to test them with users, receive feedback on their effectiveness and follow metrics like scroll depth, dwell time and exit rate. There are heatmaps, A/B testing and other tools that can provide insight into how users interact with content structure, even though they've been treated like vaudevillians and thrown off the stage.

6.2.2 Navigation and Site Architecture

These govern how a user discovers content, how quickly they can jump between pages and how smoothly search engines can crawl and index the site. A well-thought-out site can facilitate engagement and SEO, while a poor one can create confusion, high bounce rates, low conversions, and make it less likely for visitors to become customers.

Navigation Defined

What is navigation? Navigation refers to the menus, links and pathways that drive users through your website. Functionality of tool is to make easier for user find random things such as info and information, this helps your services with users or learn the past of people or other stuff. This navigation needs to conform to the viewpoint of the user - how they think content should be structured.

Common navigation types:

- Top navigation menu: The main menu that typically sits across the top of the site.
- Sidelines: These are side menus such as Vertical, commonly used for sub-linked sections or categories.
- Breadcrumbs: A series of links that lets users know where they are in the site structure.
- Footer navigation: Includes more subtle, or legal information such as privacy policies and other contact links.
- Search feature: We have Google's search box so you can find specific content faster.

Best Practices for Navigation

- Coherent design: It would be advisable to have the same look and feel throughout the site.
- Restrict menu items: Too many options can paralyze the user; keep it simple and focused.
- Mobile-friendly: You should be able to find your way around seamlessly on smaller screens, often with hamburger menus or dropdowns.

Site Architecture

The term site architecture describes the hierarchical arrangement of all pages on a website. It sets the connections between various pages and how all them are chained to one another. Users should know where they are on a website; the same applies to search engines.

Good architecture would tend to resemble a pyramid such as this:

- Homepage at the top
 - Category pages underneath
 - Message match pages at the bottom
- Strength of a site architecture:
- Depths of the site: Key pages should be accessible within three clicks from the homepage.
 - Logical organization: Arrange like content by kind, under the proper heading or subfolder.
 - Clean URLs Your URLs should reflect your page structure (e.g., /services/email-marketing).
 - Sitemap: A computer file in which the links of your pages open directly to a search engine.

SEO and UX Benefits

(Structure) and it also makes for a more “crawlable” site and eliminates duplicate content, so your link juice flows where it should. User trust at a glance: lower bounce rates and conversion support thanks to easy content discovery.

Common issues include:

- Deep or buried pages
- Orphaned Pages – These are not connected within your site.
- Broken or useless menu entries

Through site audits, usability testing and data analytics you can identify how your navigation may be broken and where to focus your iteration. But above all, easy access all on one page is a cornerstone of an open and sinuous digital experience.

6.2.3 Mobile Friendliness and Page Load Time

Mobile-friendliness and speed are your two key technical/experience factors in the way that your site is rebuilt for users. As users everywhere turn more towards mobile over desktop and search engines migrate to mobile-first indexing, these considerations are even more crucial for both UX (user experience) and SEO.

Mobile Responsiveness

A site should be responsive in that the content flow, layout and functionality adapt for screens of all sizes regardless of device. This would be smartphones and tablets yes, landscape vs portrait orientations are another consideration. Responsive is better as your website will be usable, peoples don't need to zoom in or zoom out and no horizontal scrolling that becomes a headache.

Core components of mobile responsiveness:

- Mobile first : Content is automatically analysed and formatted in a way that fits perfectly on any screen!
- Responsive media: Images and videos scale gently as needed for size and load speed.
- Touch-friendly controls: Big buttons and links for fat fingers, miss-tap-free pressing.
- Streamlined navigation: Menus are designed with fingers in mind, often as dropdowns or sliding panels.

Mobile responsiveness impacts:

- User happiness: Users demand quick, natural mobile interactions.
- SEO ranking: Google includes mobile-friendliness as a factor in rankings, and it prioritises indexing of the mobile version of content.
- Conversions- A bad mobile unfavorable experience can reduce the chances of conversion, especially in e-commerce and lead generation.

Page Speed

Page speed measures how long it takes for the content on a website page to load and become interactive. A slow-

loading page does not only irritate users but also provokes users to increase bounce rates and decrease engagement. Research indicates that people want pages to load in

two seconds or less, and that if a page hasn't loaded vertically in three seconds, retention drops dramatically.

There are many technical causes that could have an influence on the speed of your page:

- Server response time
- Image file sizes
- Code efficiency (HTML, CSS, JavaScript)
- Use of browser caching
- Content Delivery Networks (CDNs)

Optimisation strategies include:

- Compressing images without losing quality
- Minifying CSS and JavaScript
- Lazy loading for below-the-fold content
- Leveraging caching for repeat visits
- Reducing HTTP requests

Page speed is evaluated by tools such as Google PageSpeed Insights and Core Web Vitals, which look at metrics including the:

- First Contentful Paint (FCP)
- Time to Interactive (TTI)
- Largest Contentful Paint (LCP)
- Cumulative Layout Shift (CLS)

Faster sites not only offer improved user experiences, but are rewarded by the search engines too. Pages that take forever to load are penalized for competitive searches if otherwise close in quality to your competitors.

In 2019, you need to constantly analyze and improve mobile responsiveness as well as page load speed. Device fragmentation, software changes and user expectations change, so constant optimisation is necessary to stay ahead of the competition.

Activity: Assess UX on Websites in the Wild

Name: UX SSHibition – Live Critiquing Room Summary & A brief description/notes on submission: Subtitle* The concept is essentially setting up live interview sessions, similar to the one we run at school but adding an event style action right in front of us!

In this exercise, students will form teams and will be given access to actual business websites in various domains including commerce, education, healthcare and media. Each team will assess their theme using a checklist that examines readability, content layout, make sure it's easy to get around in, mobile-friendly and page load speed. Students will recognize usability problems, record pros and cons and generate recommendations for a new design to improve performance. This demonstration of empathy for the user and close critical attention to detail in UX that also serves as a hands-on activity with which participants can participate. Results will be presented to groups in peer discussion format.

6.3 SEO-friendly Content Writing & Blogging

To have a blog you need to plan carefully and think about what your readers want. A good blog is one that people want to read. It also shows up easily when people search for things online.

6.3.1 Writing Content Optimised for Search Engines

When you write a blog you should have an idea of what you want to say and make sure your readers like what they are reading. This way people will keep coming to your blog and you will get more people visiting your blog when they search for things on the internet. Effective blogging is about finding this balance and making sure your blog posts are interesting to your readers and also good for search engines, like Google.

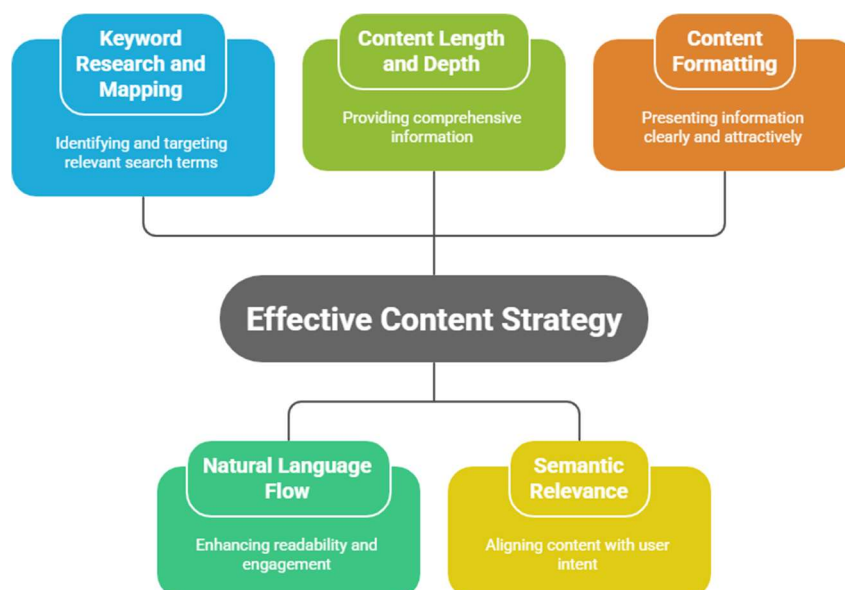


Figure 6.2

6.3.2 Blogging Best Practices

- * Writing about things that people really want to know about
- * Making sure the blogging website is easy to use
- * Creating blog posts all the time so the blogging website stays fresh
- * Paying attention to what people are saying about the blog posts on the blogging website
- * Using language that everyone can understand when writing blog posts for the blogging website

Key blogging best practices are very important, for the blogging website.

- When you make a post you need to know what you want to get from it. Do you want to tell people about something teach them something or get them to do something about it? This is the goal of each post, like getting people to know about a problem learning about a topic or taking action on something that matters.
- When you start writing it is an idea to make a plan first. You should make a list with topics, important details and things you need to think about. This will help your writing make sense and be easy to follow. You can call this list an outline. The outline should have headings, key points and questions to ensure that your writing has a structure, which means your pre-writing planning will really help with this.
- **Make Your Titles Stand Out:** You should put words in the title so it is interesting and what people are looking for when they search for something this way your titles will be very good and people will want to read them because the title has the important words that people are searching for.
- **Readable formatting:** Break text into short paragraphs, subheadings, bullet points, and visual elements for a clean reading experience.
- **SEO basics:** Include target keyword(s) naturally within the headings, title, early introduction, anchor links and meta description.
- **Multimedia elements** are really important. We should use images, videos and other visuals like infographics to make the content more attractive. Then that should be fine and people who learn better with images will also have a time understanding the multimedia. Help, to them, albeit from the marquee additions of multimedia elements.
- **Internal linking:** Link to other related articles or pages in a manner that reinforces site structure, user navigation and link equity.

- Call to action (CTA): nudge readers to do something— a) subscribe, b) download, c) comment, or d) stay on other related content.

These are the kinds of things that help people engage more and trust what you're saying. If you're posting things as most of the time on a consistent basis in a way that is always the same and have some people check what you write before it is published then that helps to ensure much of what you post is good and makes search engines like Google continue to like your site for years. Posting and style are everything, not only for SEO but also quality.

6.3.3 Trying to balance user intent with SEO constraints

We have to dig deeper into what the user's looking for when we produce content. The user intent is everything. First of all, we should ensure the content is nice for user. Then we can contemplate how to make search engines such as the content. That way, people can find the content when they search for something. Great content strategies are about giving users what they want. As it is, we utilize SEO methodologies so that individuals can find the content elsewhere when they search for things through search engines. It's got to be good content for the user intent. Also plays nicely with search engines.

The approach includes:

- To determine what the user wants it to attend making that decision is whether the content about there potentially about giving information helping people find something making in the sales or simply selling stuff. The user intent is very crucial here so we need to realize if the user wants information and he's navigational or transactional, he just wants to carry out a commercial query. All it takes is getting a feel for the user intent behind those informational navigational, commercial or transactional types of queries.
- Keyword-to-intent mapping: We map keywords around different types of content by stage in the buyer's journey - information-related blog posts, consideration comparison articles, and decision product pages.

Read more [3 Reasons Why Your Writing Must be Easy to Understand by Magnet4Blogging](#) #1 Readable Content requires writing fulfill intent: Reading is one way to produce a given purpose, which means that what we write should satisfy that purpose.

- SEO synergy: Sprinkle in keywords judiciously at crucial points (e.g., headline, intro, and subheads; internal links), without sacrificing conversational voice.
- Measuring performance: We need numbers to understand how people are engaging with our stuff. We want to test things like how they adhere to a page or if they are doing what we expect them to. Then we can tweak to get the balance of it being Search Engine Optimization and also making sure that our website is useful, to people who

visit. We need to find that balance between Search Engine Optimization and value to user.

Being true, clear and topical while considering SEO means content not only ranks but connects with readers.

6.3.4 Optimizing for Featured Snippets and Voice Search

Featured snippets are what appear at the top of search engine results pages. They provide you those to the simple answers what it is that you're searching for. It's also what you're hearing when you engage in voice search.

When you ensure your website is friendly to featured snippets, more people get to see it. This is also helpful to you when people are using voice assistants, such as Siri or Google Assistant.

People typically phrase voice search questions more as if they were saying it to someone. They're trying to find something out, so they question someone in a speaking voice.

The thing is — simple languages are easy to understand and digest. The content is structured and formatted so that people can search for answers in a hurry. The best things to do are:

- Question-format keywords to target: Utilize long-tail, colloquial phrasing that starts with who, what, why, where or how.
- Use other formats to be readable. Things like bullet points or numbered steps — that stuff is very useful.

When/If you attempt to answer, split it into some chunks of sentences like small paragraphs.

As a result, there is a much greater chance that your answer will be extracted into snippets and thrown out in the search results when someone's looking for an answer, because it's part of the way the search engines like to do things if you use structured formats — particularly with such stuff as bullet points and numbered steps.

- Keep your answers short and to the point. Try to aim for 40-60 words. The answer must answer the question being asked within the content of what it is that person's looking for about short answers.
- Keep it simple: Pick easy-to-understand headings — “Make a List of the People You Might Ask” — and then provide simple answers right underneath them. Thus, the semantic clarity of text is enhanced by employing subheaders corresponding to voice queries and clear answers are given directly below these headings for a better comprehension of the semantic clarity.

- Assist with context: Employ schema markup, FAQs or a more detailed description to assist search engines in discerning relevancy of content.
- Mobile and speed optimization: When people perform voice searches, they're pretty much always using a mobile phone. That is why it is crucial that your website does not have large pages and that the pages load quick. This means your Mobile and speed optimization are serious, for voice searches.

These tactics increase the likelihood of capturing featured snippets, which better serve searchers using traditional and voice assistants.

Knowledge Check: SEO-friendly Content Writing & Blogging

1. What indicates successful SEO writing?
 - a. Keyword stuffing
 - b. Natural flow
 - c. Short posts
 - d. No links
2. A key blogging best practice is to:
 - a. Ignore headings
 - b. Add CTAs
 - c. Avoid images
 - d. Overuse keywords
3. Balancing SEO with user intent involves:
 - a. Maximizing keyword density
 - b. Writing for search bots
 - c. Delivering value first
 - d. Using hidden text
4. Featured snippets benefit from:
 - a. Long paragraphs
 - b. Bullet lists
 - c. Irrelevant headers
 - d. Dense content

5. Voice-search optimization requires:
 - a. Complex industry jargon
 - b. Question-style phrasing
 - c. Ignoring snippets
 - d. Removing schema markup

6.4 Summary

Search engine depends on meta tags.

Meta tags are stuff like the title of a page what it's about and something called alt text.

They are as fundamental to SEO as the title, the description and the alt text.

They help search engines know what a page is about. This makes it easier for people to find the page when they look for something, what we mean by visibility.

“So all of the meta tags, so title and description and alt text are important for making sure people can find a website.

Correct use of headers, for example H1, H2 and H3 provide structure to the content that is easier to read.

This is because using headers such as H1, H2 and H3 ensure that content is easily readable.

You can also use the H1, H2 and H3 headers So that search engines know what order your content is in. (Not a feature of it to be relaxed for you guys yet).

* The keyword placement in areas is very useful. It helps when we put the number of keywords in our content. This way the content is more relevant. People still like to read it. We do not want to ruin the experience for the people who are reading the content by using many keywords. Keyword placement and balanced keyword density are very important for this. The keyword placement, in high-impact areas and the keyword density work together to make the content better.

* Internal linking is really important because it connects pages that are related to each other. This helps people find what they are looking for on a website. Internal linking also makes it easier for search engines to look through a website.. It helps to distribute link equity throughout the website. Internal linking is a thing, for a website because it helps the website work better. Internal linking does this by connecting related pages and improving crawlability and distributing link equity throughout the website.

This means the site architecture has to make sense and be logical.

When the site navigation is effective and the architecture is logical users and search engines can easily find the content, on the website.

* Mobile responsiveness is really important for people who use websites. They want to be able to see things on their phone or tablet.

Mobile responsiveness and fast page speed are things that people care about when they're on a website.

Search engines, like Google also think that mobile responsiveness and fast page speed are important.

That is why mobile responsiveness and fast page speed are prioritized in search engine algorithms.

☐ Writing SEO-friendly content involves blending keyword optimization with natural language and user-focused value.

* Blogging is really important. There are some things you should do.

Blogging best practices include having a structure when you are writing.

You should try to have titles for your blog posts.

Using multimedia is also an idea when you are blogging.

You should link to parts of your blog this is called internal linking.

And you should have calls to action, in your blog posts this is part of blogging best practices.

Blogging best practices can help you make your blog better.

* The content we create needs to match what the user is looking for. It has to meet the users needs at every step of the way. This means it has to be good when the user is first finding out about something. It has to be good when the user is making a decision about content. The content has to be aligned with the user intent at all times from when they're just becoming aware of something to when they are making a decision, about content.

☐ Featured snippet optimization and voice search readiness involve structuring content with concise answers and semantic clarity.

* To make sure people really like the content you need to get a things right. You need to have a balance of technical things, like SEO and also make sure the writing is good and the website is easy to use. This way the content will do well. People will like it. The technical SEO elements and the quality of the writing are important. You also have to think about the UX considerations so that the content performs well and resonates with the audiences.

6.5 Key Terms

1. **Meta Tags:** HTML elements providing information about a web page to search engines and users.
2. **Alt Text:** A textual description of images used for accessibility and image SEO.
3. **H1 Tag:** The primary heading of a page, indicating the main topic to search engines.
4. **Keyword Density:** This is the number of times a keyword is used in the content compared to how many words are in the content in total. The keyword density is really, about how the keyword appears in the content.
5. **Internal Linking:** The process of connecting related content within a website to guide users and search engines.
6. **Readability** is, about how easy it's for people to read and understand what is written. The thing that matters most is that users can look at the text content and get what it is saying without a lot of trouble. Readability is important because it helps users understand the text content.
7. **Site Architecture:** The hierarchical structure and organization of pages within a website.
8. **Mobile Responsiveness:** The ability of a website to adapt seamlessly to different screen sizes and devices.
9. **Page Speed:** This is how long it takes for a webpage to load and become interactive for users. Page Speed is really important because it affects how users interact with a webpage. When we talk about Page Speed we are talking about the time it takes for a webpage to load and become interactive, for users so Page Speed is a measure of this time.
10. **User Intent:** The underlying goal or purpose behind a user's search query.
11. **Featured Snippet:** A selected search result shown at the top of Google's organic results, answering a query directly.
12. **Voice Search:** A search method using spoken queries, often through mobile assistants or smart devices.

6.6 Descriptive Questions

1. Explain the role of meta tags in improving a web page's search engine visibility.

2. So what happens when we use headers the way? It really helps with the user experience. It also helps with Search Engine Optimization. When we talk about user experience we are talking about how easy it's for people to use a website. Proper use of headers makes it easy for people to find what they are looking for on a website. This is because headers are like titles that tell people what each section of the website is about. The user experience is very important because it determines how long people will stay on a website.

Proper use of headers also helps with Search Engine Optimization. Search Engine Optimization is what helps websites show up near the top of search engine results. When we use headers the way it helps search engines like Google understand what our website is about. This means that when people search for something on Google our website is more likely to show up near the top of the results if it has headers. So proper use of headers is very important, for both user experience and Search Engine Optimization.

3. Discuss the importance of keyword placement and how to avoid keyword stuffing.

4. So what is linking and how does it affect the performance of Search Engine Optimization. Internal linking is really important for Search Engine Optimization performance. It is a way to connect people to pages on your website through internal links. This helps people find information on your website and it also helps Search Engine Optimization performance. Internal linking is good, for your websites Search Engine Optimization performance because it makes it easier for people to find what they are looking for on your website.

5. When we talk about a website, readability and mobile responsiveness are really important for user engagement and ranking. Readability is how easy it is for people to read and understand the content on the website. If the website is not readable people will not stay on it for long. Mobile responsiveness is how well the website works on phones. Most people use their phones to access the internet so if a website is not responsive it will be hard for people to use. This affects user engagement because people will get frustrated and leave the website. Readability and mobile responsiveness also affect ranking because search engines like Google want to show people websites that're easy to use and work well on mobile phones. So if a website has readability and mobile responsiveness it will be ranked higher. This means that readability and mobile responsiveness are crucial, for user engagement and ranking of a website.

6. When we talk about writing content that's good for search engines and also good for the people reading it what are the important things we need to think about to make sure our content is both SEO optimized and user centric meaning it is good for the people who are reading the content and also good for search engines like Google so our

3

content can be found by people searching for things related to the content we are writing about and this is especially important, for the content we write to be seen by a lot of people so what are the critical components of writing this kind of content.

7. Outline best practices for blogging that support visibility, usability, and lead generation.
8. How can a website optimize content for featured snippets and voice-based search queries?

6.7 References

1. Fishkin, R., & Hogenhaven, T. (2015). *The Art of SEO*. O'Reilly Media.
2. Chaffey, D., & Ellis-Chadwick, F. (2019). *Digital Marketing: Strategy, Implementation, and Practice*. Pearson Education.
3. Halligan, B., & Shah, D. (2014). *Inbound Marketing*. Wiley.
4. Moz Learning Center. (2023). *Beginner's Guide to SEO*.
5. HubSpot Academy. (2023). *SEO Training and Content Strategy Resources*.
6. Patel, N. (2023). *SEO Techniques for 2023: A Guide to Content Optimization*.

Answer Key to Knowledge Check

1. b. Natural flow
2. b. Add CTAs
3. c. Delivering value first
4. b. Bullet lists
5. b. Question-style phrasing

6.8 Case Study

Example: How Neil Patel's Blog Does On-Page SEO for Better Ranking

Background

Neil Patel is a digital marketing guru, and co-founder of many well-known SaaS companies. His highly trafficked blog, with millions of unique visitors per month, is an integral component of his content strategy. It is competitive for having thousands of

keywords, such as “SEO tips,” “content marketing strategy” and “Google ranking factors.” The case study examines how his blog manages to maintain top search engine rankings for competitive keywords with the help of powerful on-page SEO strategies.

7-3 Problem Statement(1) High Bounce Rate for Mobile Users

Issue

When Neil Patel’s blog was first getting started, it had a really high bounce rate for mobile users. Although desktop people read long posts, those on mobile pushed away by bad flows and slow loading or cluttered designs.

Solution

Neil Patel’s design team made the site mobile friendly with a combination of responsive frameworks and AMP (which is something you might want to look into also if your website isn’t already AMP-enabled). Content blocks resized, font readability refined and CTAs re-located for comfortable mobile use. The use of lazy loading for images and videos allowed to increase speed.

Outcome

Mobile bounce rates decreased by 27%, average session duration increased by more than 35% and mobile-first indexing rankings improved.

Issue 2: No use of keyword sensibly

Issue

His team was going after a bunch of keywords and the old posts just had an excess use of exact match keywords, leading to lower readability, as well as SEO rankings.

Solution

The blog had been using long-tail semantic keyword strategy. Main keywords were utilized in moderation and related words, synonyms, and LSI (latent semantic indexing) keywords appeared naturally. Also content was reorganized in a way to better distribute keywords and flow for reader with distinct H1, H2, and H3 hierarchies.

Outcome

This change produced more organic visibility as the content could rank for a wider array of search terms. The blog started to claim several featured snippets for many high-intent queries.

General Problem 3: Scarcely Internal Navigation and Interaction

Issue

There was already a large amount of content, but users simply couldn't find related articles or delve deeper into the site. There were no internal links, orphan pages and low visit duration.

Solution

A deliberate approach to link internally “inside the site” was implemented. References (links to relevant articles, tools and landing pages) were included in the blog posts. There was a “Related Posts” section beneath each article and easy access to pillar pages.

Outcome

Time-on-site surged, as previously underperforming pages were suddenly popular and viewed often. It also spread link equity throughout the site, thus enhancing domain authority as a whole.

Reflective Questions

What were some of the main UX challenges that Neil Patel encountered on his blog?

What was the effect of making content mobile friendly on overall engagement and SEO?

What did the team do differently to get better results with keyword strategy and prevent over optimization?

What were the impacts of internal linking on content discoverability and ranking?

What can we learn from this for smaller, resource-poor blogs?

Conclusion

The blog success of Neil Patel is a classic example of how to interleave first principles technical SEO with user. With enhanced mobile friendliness, intelligent keyword stuffing and structure design of semantically relevant content to support quality in-bound linking, the blog perseveres as a top SERP competitor in a ferocious niche. The case shows that SEO-friendly content writing is less about gimmicks and more about good content that is relevant and accessible to users – as well as being interpretable by search engines. How to apply it While marketers and content creators can't exactly replicate Brynteson's approach to SEO, the underlying principle is simple: Stay true to best practices while still producing a product that caters directly to users.

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 7 V3.docx

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 ATLAS SkillTech University

Document Details

Submission ID

trn:oid::3618:127516437

Submission Date

Feb 4, 2026, 2:32 PM GMT+5:30

Download Date

Feb 4, 2026, 2:38 PM GMT+5:30

File Name

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 7 V3.docx

File Size

177.0 KB

38 Pages

10,334 Words

52,347 Characters

1% Overall Similarity

The combined total of all matches, including overlapping sources, for each database.

Filtered from the Report

- ▶ Bibliography
- ▶ Quoted Text
- ▶ Cited Text
- ▶ Small Matches (less than 15 words)

Match Groups

- 4 Not Cited or Quoted 1%**
 Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- 0 Missing Quotations 0%**
 Matches that are still very similar to source material
- 0 Missing Citation 0%**
 Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- 0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
 Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 1% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 1% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Integrity Flags

0 Integrity Flags for Review

No suspicious text manipulations found.

Our system's algorithms look deeply at a document for any inconsistencies that would set it apart from a normal submission. If we notice something strange, we flag it for you to review.

A Flag is not necessarily an indicator of a problem. However, we'd recommend you focus your attention there for further review.

Match Groups

- 4 Not Cited or Quoted 1%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- 0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
- 0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- 0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 1% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 1% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Top Sources

The sources with the highest number of matches within the submission. Overlapping sources will not be displayed.

- Internet**
tsecurity.de <1%
- Submitted works**
University of Brighton on 2015-11-27 <1%
- Submitted works**
LTI on 2025-05-08 <1%
- Internet**
www.classace.io <1%

Unit 7: Technical SEO Techniques

Learning Objectives:

1. Discuss the role of website architecture in improving crawlability and how this affects search engine indexing and accessibility.
2. Assess how page speed, mobile friendliness and Core Web Vitals will influence user experience and SEO performance.
3. Learn and implement structured data via schema markup to enhance a site's
4. search results appearance (rich snippets).
5. Find and diagnose technical SEO problems with Google Search Console, Lighthouse or Screaming Frog.
6. Comparing site architecture (e.g, flat vs. deep architecture) and its effect on the efficiency of a search engine crawl.
7. Implement best practices for mobile-first indexing, such as responsive design and mobile usability.
8. Apply case studies and discuss application of technical SEO elements in practice.

Content:

- 7.0 Introductory Caselet
- 7.1 Website Architecture & Crawlability
- 7.2 Page Speed, Mobile SEO & Core Web Vitals
- 7.3 Structured Data & Schema Markup
- 7.4 Summary
- 7.5 Key Terms
- 7.6 Descriptive Questions
- 7.7 References
- 7.8 Case Study

7.0 Introductory Caselet

Caselet Title: The Mysterious Case of TechNova's Declining Organic Traffic

TechNova was a mid-sized electronics and smart home e-commerce company and they had seen two-plus years of undisturbed, organic traffic growth. Their blog was consistent, product pages were keyword-optimized as hell, and they had a strong backlink profile. But in the past six months, the company saw a staggering fall of organic traffic even though they were still doing what they always did in terms of content and outreach.

The digital marketers initially suspected algorithm updates or more competition. However, a full audit with Google Search Console and other SEO tools discovered an underlying problem—Googlebot wasn't crawling and indexing large chunks of the site properly. There were quite a few URLs that had been excluded from the index because there had been crawl anomalies, and some important pages, like product pages that convert really well, had poor performance scores in terms of slow load times and mobile usability.

Additional analysis revealed a number of technical deficiencies. The website had evolved into a quite complex site-structure with a massive expansion of category and filter pages, that resulted in very deep URL paths – which the Googlebot had trouble to manage. What's more, the website wasn't optimized to comply with Google Core Web Vitals requirements and pulled down low statistic scores in Largest Contentful Paint (LCP), First Input Delay (FID) and Cumulative Layout Shift (CLS). The structured data was missing or implemented incorrectly, which meant the site couldn't show up on rich search results.

Under pressure from stakeholders, the SEO and web development teams were brought in to re-assess the technical structure of the site. They had a mission to re-establish the site's technical SEO core, becoming searchable again, providing a better UX and conforming to changing search engine standards.

Critical Thinking Question:

If you were on the SEO team of TechNova, what would be your top3 priorities to fix technical issues of the site? How would you justify your choices using its impact and effect for search performance?

7.1 Website Architecture & Crawlability

7.1.1 Importance of Website Architecture for SEO

The way a website is set up is really important. This is what I mean by website architecture. It is like a plan that shows how all the different parts of the website are connected and how people can get to them. When it comes to getting a website to show up in search results the website architecture is very important. It helps people and computers that look at websites figure out how to find what they are looking for. If a

website is set up in a way it is easy for people to find the important pages and for computers to understand what the website is, about. This means that the important pages will show up in search results when people look for things that are related to the website.

When it comes to making a website work well with search engines the way the website is organized is really important. Search engines use programs to find and list all the pages on a website. These programs are like robots that look at every page. If a website is hard to navigate or really messy these robots might not see some pages. This means that even if some pages are perfect, for search engines the whole website might still not show up well in search results. Website architecture and search engines are related and website architecture directly affects how well search engines can crawl the website. When you have an simple structure on your website it is really easy for search engines to see how all the different pages and types of content are related to each other. This is good because it helps your website look more important, to search engines, which's what people mean when they talk about site authority. A clean structure is very helpful for search engines to understand your website. It makes your website look more important so your website gets a better site authority.

A good website structure helps with linking. This means that link equity is shared across the site. When we link pages together in a way important pages like the homepage share their authority with other pages. This helps pages or pages that are not as well known get more visibility. It also helps people understand what the site is about. For example if we have a page about cameras and it is linked to from pages about photography accessories or camera reviews it shows that the page about digital cameras is really, about that topic. This is because digital cameras are related to photography accessories and camera reviews.

The user experience is really important. People like to stay on websites that're easy to use. If a website is simple to navigate people can find what they are looking for quickly. The user experience should be simple so people can find things in a few clicks. This is good because it means people do not leave the website away. When people stay on a website longer it is good, for the website. This is something that search engines like Google consider when they decide how to rank websites. The user experience is a part of this so it is worth paying attention to the user experience.

Things that help make a website easy, for search engines to find include:

- URL Structure: Clean, descriptive URLs with logical folder hierarchy (e.g.,

The thing about websites like the ones that show /products/electronics/laptops is that they are really easy to understand. This is true, for both computers that look at websites, which are called bots and for people who look at websites, which are called users. The /products/electronics/laptops pages are easy for both bots and users to get what is going on.

- Navigation Menus: We should make sure the menus, at the top and the bottom of the page are easy to use and help the user find what they are looking for on our website. The menus should also have links that take the user to important pages on our website like the Navigation Menus. This will make it easier for the user to navigate the Navigation Menus and find what they need.

- Breadcrumbs: These things are really helpful. They make it easier for people to use a website.. They also help search engine bots figure out how the website is organized, like how deep the pages go and how they are all connected. Breadcrumbs are very useful, for the websites structure.

- Mobile Architecture: Now that first indexing is the standard, the mobile version of the website needs to be the same as the desktop version. This is so that the mobile website and the desktop website are consistent with each other. The mobile version of the website has to have the structure, as the desktop version of the website.

When a website is not well organized you will find problems like pages that are not linked to from pages, which are called orphan pages. You will also find pages that're too many clicks away from the main page this is called deep nesting. And sometimes the links between pages do not work these are called internal links. All these things make it hard for search engines to look at the website and to add the pages to their list. If you do not fix these problems they will get worse over time. This can mean that the website does not get many visitors as it used to or that the number of visitors does not increase, which is called traffic stagnation or loss. Websites with these issues have problems, with orphan pages, nesting and broken internal links.

So website architecture is really important. It is not about how the website looks or how easy it is to use. Website architecture is a part of technical search engine optimization. This means website architecture plays a role in how well your website content does in search results. Website architecture helps your content compete with content, in organic search.

7.1.2 XML Sitemaps and Their Role

A website needs an XML sitemap. This is a list of the websites URLs that's easy for search engines to understand. The XML sitemap is not like the HTML sitemap that people use to find their way around a website. The XML sitemap is like a map that shows search engines which pages of the website're the most important.

XML sitemaps are very important for something called SEO. This is especially true, for websites or new websites or websites that have content that changes a lot. The XML sitemap helps the search engines find all the pages of the website.

The main job of an XML sitemap is to help search engines like Google and Bing find and list web pages better.

Search engines like Google and Bing are really good at finding pages through links on your website and other websites.

Xml sitemaps give them a straightforward way to find these pages.

This is especially important for web pages that're hard to find because they are deep in the website or do not have many links to them.

XML sitemaps make sure that these important web pages are not missed by search engines, like Google and Bing.

There are several types of XML sitemaps, such as:

- **Standard sitemaps:** These have a list of web page addresses and some extra information. This extra information includes things like when the page was last changed how often the page is updated and how important the page is. The page importance is basically how important the website owner thinks the page is. They also have things like when the page was last modified, which is shown as modification date and update frequency, which is how often the website owner thinks the page will be updated and this is shown as update frequency and page priority which is how important the page is, to the website owner.
- **Image sitemaps** are important because they help search engines find the images on a website. This is useful for image content so people can find the image content when they search for it. The main goal of image sitemaps is to get image content indexed by search engines, which means they can show up in search results for image content. This is good, for the image content because it helps people find the image content.
- **Video sitemaps:** Tailored for video-based content.
- **News sitemaps** are for news websites that need to get their new stories online quickly. This helps people find the news from the news websites. News sitemaps are very useful for news websites because they make it easy for search engines to find the news stories, on the news websites.

Sitemaps should be updated all the time to show content or changes to old content or when content is removed. This way search engines like Google can see the version of the website. A lot of website builders, like WordPress, Drupal or Joomla have tools that can make and update sitemaps for you.

You can only have 50,000 URLs in a sitemap file. The file should also be 50MB or smaller.

If you have a website you can use a sitemap index file to keep track of many sitemap files.

This is really helpful for online stores or websites with a lot of pictures and videos like e-commerce platforms or media-heavy sites with thousands of product pages or article pages. Sitemap files are useful, for these websites.

Search engines do not look at every website address that is listed in the sitemap.. It is very helpful to have a sitemap that does not have any mistakes. This can really help the search engines look at more of your website and add more of your website to their list. You should also tell the search engines about your sitemap by using things like Google Search Console or Bing Webmaster Tools. This helps you see what the search engines think of your website and how they are looking at it. Search engines like Google and Bing can give you information, about your website when you use these tools.

When you are making a sitemap for your website there are some things you should do. Best practices for XML sitemaps include:

- * You should make sure your XML sitemap is easy to find

- * Your XML sitemap should have all the pages that're on your website

- * You need to keep your XML sitemap up to date so it always shows the latest pages on your website.

Best practices for XML sitemaps are important because they help people find your website. Best practices, for XML sitemaps can make your website better.

- Including only canonical URLs to avoid duplication.

- Excluding noindex pages and redirect URLs.

- Regularly validating the sitemap with tools like the W3C validator or through Google Search Console.

- Keeping metadata fields accurate and relevant.

So XML sitemaps are like a way to talk to search engines directly. They help search engines find all the pages on your website, which's really important. This way search engines can see all of your XML sitemaps and the valuable content, in your XML sitemaps will not be missed when they are looking at your website.

7.1.3 Robots.txt – Controlling Search Engine Access

The robots.txt file is a text document that you can find in the main folder of a website. It tells search engine crawlers, which are also known as user agents what parts of the website they should look at and what parts they should not. The robots.txt file is not a rule that everyone has to follow. Some bad bots might ignore it.. The robots.txt file is really important for a website to be set up properly especially when it comes to search engine optimization or SEO for the website.

The way robots.txt works is really easy to understand. It can do a lot of things. It uses things called user-agent declarations and rules that say what is allowed or not allowed to control how crawlers work. For example:

User-agent: *

I do not want people to look at the things in the directory.

So I will say that the private directory is, off limits.

Here are the rules:

* Disallow: /private-directory/

* Allow: /public-directory/

This means people can look at the directory.

The public directory is okay to view.

In this snippet:

- User-agent: * targets all crawlers.
- The thing is, when you put Disallow: /private-directory/ in a file it is, like telling bots to stay from the private directory path. This means that bots will not be allowed to look at the directory. The Disallow: directory/ command is pretty straightforward it just tells bots to not crawl the private directory path.
- Let me tell you about the directory. The public directory is really important. It is located at /public-directory/. This is what permits people to get into the section of our website. The public directory is what allows people to see the section.

People often think that if you do not allow a page with robots.txt it will not show up in search results.. That is not true. This only means the page will not be looked at not that it will not be listed. If other pages link to it you might still see it in search results. There will not be any information, about it. If you do not want a page to be looked at or listed you should use a tag on the page that says no index. You should still let the search engines look at the page though.

There are lots of things you can do with robots.txt. Use cases of robots.txt include:

- Blocking duplicate content areas such as print-friendly versions or filtered navigation pages.

- Preventing crawl overload on large sites by limiting access to resource-heavy sections.
- We need to control how search engines look at the web page addresses that can cause problems and make it hard for them to properly scan the website, which is known as dynamic URLs that can lead to crawl traps.
- Hiding development environments or staging sites from search engines.

If you do not set up the robots.txt file correctly it can cause problems for your websites search engine optimization.

You can block the directory of your website or important things like CSS and JavaScript by mistake.

This can make your website not show up on search engines like Google or it can make your website look really bad because things are not working right.

The robots.txt file and search engine optimization are very important, for your website.

The robots.txt file can block the things like CSS and JavaScript if you are not careful.

Things that people tell their doctors to do of time include:

- * Living wills
- * Power of attorney, for the Advanced directives
- * The Advanced directives that say do not do medical things

* The Advanced directives that say do medical things when someone is very sick

- **Crawl-delay:** Specifies the delay between successive requests to the server (supported by Bing, not Google).
- **Sitemap:** This is where you can find the XML sitemap. The XML sitemap helps search engines like Google to crawl the website. It shows them where everything is, on the Sitemap. This makes it easier for the Sitemap to be crawled.

You should really check your robots.txt file before you put it to use. Try using tools, like Google Search Consoles robots.txt Tester to see if it is working correctly. This will help you figure out if your robots.txt file is doing what you want it to do.

Did you know?

You might be surprised to learn something. Did you know is an interesting way to start a conversation. What is it that you want to tell me about because when someone says did you know it is usually something. Did you know can be, about anything.

The robots.txt file is supposed to stop search engine crawlers from getting to parts of your website.. The thing is, anyone can see this file. They just have to add /robots.txt to your website address.

So if you have directories listed in the robots.txt file it could actually make people notice them instead of keeping them hidden. This is not what the robots.txt file is meant to do. The robots.txt file is supposed to help keep things private.. Because it is a public file it can do the opposite. The robots.txt file can attract attention to the things you want to keep secret.

7.1.4 Canonical Tags for Duplicate Content Management

Canonical tags are something we use on websites to deal with pages that have similar content. We add a line of code to the page that says `<link rel="canonical" href="URL" />`. This line of code tells search engines which version of the page's the most important one.

When we have lots of pages with content it can cause problems. Search engines get confused. Do not know which page to show people. This can also make our website rank lower in search results. Canonical tags help us fix this problem. They tell search engines which page's the real deal so to speak. This helps us keep all the stuff, like links to our website on one page instead of spreading it out across lots of similar pages. We use tags to solve this problem and make our website better for search engines and for people visiting our site. Canonical tags are important, for search engine optimization or SEO because they help us avoid something called keyword cannibalization, which happens when similar pages compete with each other.

For example a website that sells things online may have a lot of website addresses that show the same thing because of things like filters or special codes that are used for each person who visits the site, such, as:

These URLs are all for the product but search engines might see them as different pages if they do not have a canonical tag. This means that the links to the product will be split up and that will hurt the products search engine optimization. The products search engine optimization is the thing, as the products SEO efforts. So the products SEO efforts will be undermined if the URLs do not have a tag.

By using a canonical tag like:

The website tells search engines that all versions of the website should be treated as a thing so search engines combine all the ranking signals and send them to the main website address, which is the canonical URL of the website. This way the website gets ranking signals because the canonical URL of the website gets all the signals.

Canonicalization is especially important for:

- Faceted navigation in e-commerce sites (e.g., filters by size, color, price).
- Content syndication across partner websites or guest blogs.

- Dynamic URL parameters created by CMS platforms or tracking codes.

You have to use tags very carefully. If you do not use them correctly your website ranking will suffer. For example if you set a tag to a webpage that does not exist or to a webpage that redirects to another webpage it will confuse the search engine crawlers. Canonical tags are important for every webpage. Setting canonical tags for every webpage to the homepage is a big mistake that people who are new to this often make and it can actually remove your entire website from the search engine results. Canonical tags need to be used with care. You have to make sure you use canonical tags correctly to avoid problems, with your website ranking.

Canonical tags are like suggestions. Most search engines will listen to them. They can ignore them if the real page content or the way the site is set up says something different, about the canonical version. The search engines will look at the page and the site structure to figure out the canonical version of the page and they can override the canonical tag if they think it is wrong. Canonical tags are important. They are not the final word the search engines have the last say.

Some good things to do include:

- * Doing things the way
- * Following the rules
- * Making sure the best practices are used

Best practices are important and should be used always when we talk about practices and how to use best practices.

We need to think about practices and how they can help us with the best practices we have.

- Ensuring self-referencing canonical tags on all canonical URLs.
- Avoiding chains or loops in canonical references.
- Pairing canonical tags with other tools like 301 redirects or hreflang for international SEO.

When used correctly, canonical tags serve as a reliable mechanism to streamline SEO by eliminating redundancy, consolidating authority, and enhancing content clarity for both users and search engines.

7.2 Page Speed, Mobile SEO & Core Web Vitals

7.2.1 Page Speed and Its Impact on Rankings

Page speed The speed a user's browser is able to fully load the content and page you share. It is an important factor for user experience, and directly impacts the search engine ranking of your site, including Google. The quicker your site loads, the more likely users will stay, engage and convert — which not only makes page speed a technical consideration in terms of user experience, but a business one too.

The goal of search engines is to want the best possible user experience and when your site loads too slowly, it will only get in their way. Even one second of a delay in loading time can really affect bounce and even user happiness. Page Speed and SEO As far as search engine optimization (SEO) is concerned, page speed has an impact on crawl budget efficiency. If a site is slow, crawlers may only index part of the site during their allocated crawl budget, leading to reduced presence in SERPs.

Below is a list of several technical and design factors that can affect your page speed:

- Server response time: The delay between a browser requesting and a web server answering.
- Page size: File, image, script and stylesheet weight in total.
- Render blocking resources: CSS/JS files which may delay rendering.
- Caching: Rendering levels to save and reuse static files for return visits.

There are a few best practices when it comes to optimizing for speed:

- Compressing resources with gzip or brotli can reduce the number of bytes sent over the network.
- Compacting CSS, JavaScript, and HTML code can save many bytes of data and speed up download and parse times.
- Optimizing images, such as next-gen format WebP and responsive image scaling.
- Image and video lazy loading for delaying media based on visibility.
- Leveraging CDNs to geographically distribute content and cut latency.
- Focusing on above-the-fold content so that the critical parts are served first.

Page speed is also a major factor in mobile SEO, as bandwidth and hardware are limited on mobile devices and the faster you can speed up page load time, the better. What slow mobile experiences can result in

a high bounce rate, which negatively affects rankings because it is a negative factor in terms of engagement and dwell time.

Google has been using speed as a ranking factor ever since the “Speed Update” was rolled out in 2018. This is even truer now with Core Web Vitals impacting ranking potential due to page speed related metrics. Even if well-optimized, a website can lose visibility if it doesn’t beat the performance score.

This is why web developers, SEO experts and content makers need to work in close harmony to have good performance without sacrificing design or functionality. Fast-loading pages are no longer a nice-to-have, they are crucial to the success of search and user engagement and therefore digital progress.

7.2.2 Mobile-First Indexing and Best Practices

Mobile-first indexing is a change in the process of how Google and other search engines aggregate, evaluate and rank websites. Rather than indexing and ranking the desktop version of a site, Google has now switched to using the mobile version as primary. The redesign reflects the increasing importance of mobile web traffic, more than 50 percent of it around the world.

Under mobile-first indexing, Google’s spiders predominantly evaluate the content of a website’s mobile version to assess relevance and rankings. If the mobile site mirrors the desktop’s content and structure, elements that are not on the mobile version of your site will be decoupled from Google’s smartphone index, which could impact search performance. So, now the need to optimize for mobile is not just a nice-to-have optional add-on but an absolute necessity.

A number of best practices have been developed to help achieve success with your mobile-first strategy:

- **Fluid Grid or Responsive Design:** Make your page layout fit different devices by using fluid grids and flexible images. This type of implementation is preferred to separate mobile URLs or dynamic serving.
- **Content parity:** Ensure that the mobile site has equivalent content, structured data and metadata as your desktop site. If content is missing on mobile, that can also result in under-indexing.
- **Mobile-Friendly Navigation** Make sure that they can tap a button, have legible fonts and easily read menus. No complicated dropdown or hover states that don't translate to a touch device.
- **Viewport Configuration:** The viewport is sized with the meta tag to control layout on devices based on the device width and prevent zooming.
- **Image Performance:** Image optimization, script minimization, performance prioritisation to suit slower mobile networks.
- **No Interstitials or Other Pop-Ups:** They can easily block content on mobile and they are penalized by search engines if they harm the user experience.
- **Mobile context testing:** Test using mobile emulators/real devices for usability, layout integrity and load performance.

Technical items are also more important than ever (even since indexation is mobile-first). All organized data should be the same on mobile and desktop varieties. Meta tags, such as titles and descriptions, must be the same. There should be availability of images and videos so that it can be accessible in mobile screens.

Sites that use a separate mobile URL (m.example. com should be careful about canonicals and alternates to not cause a duplication issue. Nevertheless, this configuration is becoming less and less supported since it is complex and prone to errors.

Monitoring mobile performance is essential. Google's Mobile-Friendly Test, PageSpeed Insights,

and mobile usability reports in Search Console can be used to diagnose and address problems.

Finally, mobile-first indexing is in tune with user behavior patterns. Stronger visibility, engagement and conversions will no doubt encourage us to think more in the form of a mobile-first strategy across all other strategies including PPC, SEO and also social media.

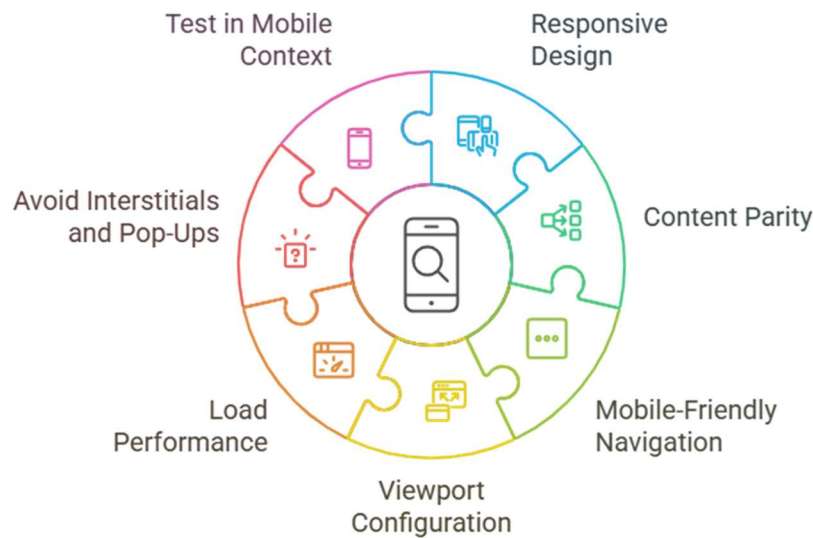


Figure 7.1

7.2.3 Core Web Vitals: LCP, FID and CLS

Core Web Vitals are a variety of performance metrics (originally designed by Google) and that uses these scores as signals in ranking. These are now officially integrated as metrics in Google's ranking algorithm and they look at three main factors: the loading time, how quickly people are able to interact with your site and visual stability.

Largest Contentful Paint (LCP)

LCP tracks the duration for the largest content element that is visible within viewport (e.g., image, heading, text block) to be loaded. It represents the perceived load speed of the page. Any LCP scoring < 2.5 seconds is good. Server response time, large files and render-blocking JavaScript all contribute to slow LCP.

Optimization strategies include:

- o Reducing server response time
- o Optimizing and compressing images
- o Preloading important assets
- o Eliminating render-blocking resources

First Input Delay (FID)

1 FID measures how long it takes from when a user first interacts with a page (i.e. when they click a link) to the time when the browser is actually able to begin processing event handlers in response to that interaction. It measures responsiveness. A desirable FID score is a value below 100 milliseconds. FID is very, very dependent on JavaScript execution time.

Improvements can be made by:

- o Minimizing JavaScript execution
- o Deferring non-critical scripts
- o Using browser caching
- o Dividing large work via requestIdleCallback or web workers

Cumulative Layout Shift (CLS)

CLS is a metric that gauges visual stability by tracking unplanned layout shifts that happen when content loads on a page. A low CLS score is less than 0.1. The jumps usually occur when things such as images or ads load without reserved space.

To reduce CLS:

- o Force fixed width on images, ads and embeds
- o Dynamic content that is not inserted on top of existing content in the page.
- o Preload fonts to prevent layout shifts as a result of font changes

Core Web Vitals are field metrics, as they're based on real user experience data and not lab tests. They are influenced by user location, device type, and network conditions.

Google will use these metrics in addition to other page experience signals, including mobile-friendliness, HTTPS security, and having no intrusive interstitials. Their decisions don't mean you are exclusive if not compliant, but decay the competitive advantage of your site.

“Prioritizing metrics such as LCP, FID and CLS means site owners can have pages that are fast to load, quick to respond to input and keep elements of the page from shifting if not ready” which all adds up to better engagement and improved search positioning.

7.2.4 Tools to Measure and Optimise Page Performance

There are a lot of resources for measuring and testing the speed, readability, and general user experience on a page. They offer insights into both lab and real world performance observations that facilitate webmasters to diagnose problems and take specific optimizations.

Google PageSpeed Insights

Uses real world data provided by the Chrome User Experience Report (CrUX) as well as lab data from Lighthouse to create a holistic performance and user experience score. It identifies growth and diagnostic opportunities across Core Web Vitals and other metrics.

Lighthouse

It is an automated open-source tool embedded in Chrome DevTools that audits for performance, accessibility, best practices, SEO and Progressive Web App criteria. It replicates performance in a supervised setting and provides actionable suggestions.

WebPageTest

Enables you to test performance from different locations, browsers. It also gives you clear visualizations of metrics such as Time to First Byte (TTFB), Speed Index, and page load filmstrips. It supports also scripting for more advanced testing scenarios.

Chrome DevTools

Provides live information about network requests, resource load timing, and script execution. Developers can pinpoint bottlenecks, debug layout shifts and emulate network throttled environments.

Google Search Console

Provides performance reports, including Core Web Vitals based on real user data. It highlights certain URLs with LCP, FID, or CLS issues and organizes them for focused evaluation.

GTmetrix

Merges Lighthouse and classical YSlow for performance rating. It gives you waterfall charts, page composition analysis and historic reports to monitoring the progression over time.

Pingdom Tools



Emphasizes on speed testing and uptime monitoring. It is ideal for being used to diagnose slow load times and keep pace with performance from around the globe.

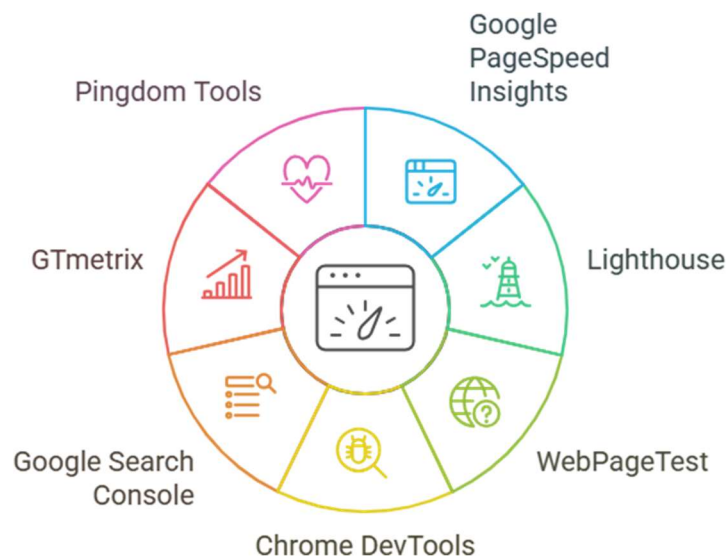


Figure 7.2

Common methods of optimization that have been proposed by these tools are:

- Compressing assets
- Reducing third-party scripts
- Leveraging browser caching
- Implementing lazy loading
- Removing unused CSS and JavaScript
- Using asynchronous loading for scripts

An intelligent strategy to performance monitoring is to use a mix from these tools. Lab data can aid in development, and field data verifies that changes are good for real users. Ongoing testing following updates or re-designs will help you maintain performance expectations and search engine compatibility.

Task: Performance Audit Mission Title: Diagnosis & Optimization Of Your Site

In this lesson, students will audit a live website (their own or public domain) from top to bottom using Google PageSpeed Insights and Chrome DevTools. They also need to report LCP, FID, and CLS scores as well as at least five optimization hints. Finally, students will present a prioritized plan of action to address the site's Core Web Vitals and page speed according to recommendations from tools. This practical exercise will

help students to better comprehend this technical performance indicators and close the gap between theory and practice.

7.3 Structured Data & Schema Markup

7.3.1 Introduction to Structured Data

Structured data is a way to organize information about a web page so it is easy to understand. This makes it simpler for search engines to figure out what the page is about. Search engines can look at a web page. Try to make sense of it on their own but structured data helps webmasters give more details about what the page really means. Structured data uses its set of words and this is usually what it is used for to make things clear. Structured data is important because it helps search engines know what structured data is, on a web page.

annotate elements such as product information, reviews, authors, prices, publication dates, and more.

The internet has a lot of information that is not organized in a way. For instance a product page may have the price. If the product is available written in simple text but search engines have a hard time figuring out what these numbers are for. This is where structured data comes in. It makes things clear, by labeling what each piece of information is. When we use data the right way it helps search engines understand how different things are connected, which makes the search results better. Structured data is important because it helps search engines show the information when people search for something and it does this by making sure the information is indexed correctly.

JSON-LD is a way to write structured data. It is easy to use. You can put it in the HTML head or body tags without any problems. Google likes JSON-LD because it is simple.

JSON-LD is better, than Microdata. Microdata needs you to add notes inside the HTML elements.. Json-LD keeps these notes separate. This makes the HTML code easier to read.

You can use JSON-LD, Microdata or RDFa to write data.. Json-LD is a good choice. It is easy to use. It does not get in the way of the HTML code.

There are lots of things that structured data can tell us about, such as:

- Page content type (Article, Product, Event, FAQ, etc.)
- The things that describe a page, like the headline, the date it was published and who the author's so on.
- When we talk about relationships we are looking at things like when an author writes an article or when a product has reviews from people who have used it and so on. The idea of relationships is really about how different thingsre connected to each other like how an author is connected to the article they write or how a product is connected to the reviews that people leave about it. Relationships are around us and they can be seen in many different ways, such as the relationship between a company and its customers or the relationship between a teacher and their students. In all these cases relationships are about how things interact with each other like how a product has reviews, from people who have bought and used it.

When you do a search on the internet search engines use this markup to make the results look better. They use it to make snippets and knowledge panels and carousels. They even use it for voice search results. The structured data itself does not make your website rank higher.. It does help your website stand out in the search engine results page. This is because it lets search engines do some cool things with your website. Structured data helps with this by letting search engines show features, for your website in the search results.

Key characteristics of structured data:

- Machine-readable: Created specifically for bots, not users.
- Semantic: Conveys the meaning of the content.
- Contextual: Describes relationships and properties.

- The website content should be consistent. It should reflect what is actually on the page. This means the website content must match the on-page content. The actual on-page content is what people see when they visit the website so the website content must be the same as the, on-page content.

People who build and manage websites and experts in search engine optimization must make sure that the information behind the scenes is correct and matches what you see on the page. It also has to follow the rules that Google sets. If the information does not match or is misleading it can cause problems with Google. Structured data is very important. Webmasters and SEO professionals have to get it right so that it accurately reflects the visible content and follows Google's guidelines. Webmasters and SEO professionals need to be careful, with data.

If you do not do things correctly you might face penalties or even removal of rich results eligibility. Structured data is really important for getting your website ready for trends like voice search, AI-based assistants and personalized search experiences with rich results. Rich results are a deal and you need structured data to make the most of them.

You should make sure your website has structured data so it can work well with voice search and AI-based assistants. This will also help you provide search experiences, with rich results. Rich results are what you want for your website so you need to get the structured data right.

7.3.2 Schema Markup Types (Articles, Products, Reviews, FAQs)

This thing gives us a lot of words to label kinds of content. Each label is made for a type of page or kind of data. The kind of label you choose depends on what the content's, about. If you use the label search engines will understand the page correctly and show it with extra features when people search for things.

1. Article Schema

Article schema is something we use to add information to blog posts, news articles and the things we write. It has things like:

- **headline:** Title of the article
- **author:** This is the person or group that created the thing you are looking at the name of the person or organization that wrote it the author is the one who made it.
- **.datePublished:** This is when the article was first made available, to the public. The datePublished is the date when people could first read the article.
- **image:** Associated image with the article

When it comes to news publishers they should really add NewsArticle or BlogPosting as the type. This can be a help because it makes their content show up in Google News and those Top Stories carousels that people see. News publishers can benefit a lot from this because it helps their NewsArticle or BlogPosting get views.

2. Product Schema

The product schema is made for websites that sell things and for lists of products. It helps you point out things like:

- **name:** Product name
- **image:** Product images
- **brand:** Manufacturer or brand
- **sku:** Stock keeping unit

- offers: Including price, currency, availability

This schema lets people see the price and availability of something in the search results so consumers can decide if they want to buy something before they even click on it. The schema makes it easier for people to find what they want and the price and availability of the product which's really helpful when people are trying to make a decision, about what to buy.

3. Review and AggregateRating Schema

People really trust reviews and ratings when they are looking at something. This is because reviews and ratings are like a stamp of approval, from users. The Review information can be included inside the Product information or the Service information. It has things like:

- reviewBody: Text of the review
- reviewRating: Star rating, typically out of 5
- author: Who actually wrote this review I want to know the name of the person who wrote it. The author of the review is the one I am looking for.

The AggregateRating schema puts together reviews to give an overall rating value. This makes it possible to show the star ratings people give in search results. The AggregateRating schema is really useful, for this.

4. FAQ Schema

The FAQPage schema is useful when a page has a list of questions and answers. It includes:

- **mainEntity:** The list of questions and answers
- **Question:** Each question
- **acceptedAnswer:** Each corresponding answer

Google uses this schema to make FAQs that you can collapse in the search results. This makes the page look cleaner and people are more likely to interact with Google. The schema helps Google create these FAQs, which is really good, for the search results. Google does this to make the search results better.

There are some types that are worth mentioning:

- **Event Schema:** For webinars, concerts, workshops
- **Organization Schema:** To provide details about a business entity
- **LocalBusiness Schema:** For brick-and-mortar stores
- **Breadcrumb Schema:** For better navigational trails in search

Correct usage requires choosing the most specific type and nesting it properly when multiple schemas are needed on a single page. The markup should not be deceptive—using FAQ schema on a page that does not actually contain FAQs can lead to manual actions by Google.

7.3.3 Benefits of Rich Snippets in SERPs

Rich snippets are search results that have extra information or pictures. They get this stuff from the webpage itself. You can see things like ratings, images, when events are

happening and answers to asked questions. These rich snippets are different, from the search results that are just blue links. They give you information and are easier to notice. This means people are more likely to click on snippets and it can change how they behave when searching online. Rich snippets can really affect how many people click on them and what they do after that.

Key benefits of rich snippets:

1. Increased Click-Through Rates (CTR)

Rich snippets really make a search result stand out. They do this by showing things like stars, prices of products or answers to asked questions that you can hide and show. This can make more people want to click on the result even if it is not at the top of the list. People are more likely to click on snippets because they give them the information they need quickly. Rich snippets are very useful, for this reason.

2. Better SERP Real Estate

Pages with snippets take up more space on the search results page, which means other peoples stuff gets pushed down lower. This is really good for people who are searching on their phones because the screen is small and you can see the rich snippets easily. Rich snippets are great, for searches.

3. Improved User Experience

When you see information right in the search results you can figure out if it is what you are looking for without having to go to the website. This means people are less likely to leave a website after arriving, which is called a bounce. The people who do visit the website are more likely to be really interested, in the Google search results. The website gets better traffic from Google search results.

4. Higher Conversion Rates

When people search for something. They find what they are looking for in the search results like if a product is available or how much it costs they can make a better decision about what to buy. This helps them buy things faster. Companies get more sales, from the search results.

5. Trust and Credibility

When we see information like customer reviews or details about a business it makes the website seem more trustworthy. The star ratings people give are especially important because they show what other users think and that can affect what people do on the site. Star ratings are a kind of proof that other people like the business so they can help people decide what to do. Showing star ratings and customer reviews can make a website seem reliable and trustworthy and that is what star ratings and customer reviews are all, about.

6. Voice Search Optimization

Rich snippets are really useful because they help voice assistants give answers to peoples search questions. When you use data it makes it more likely that your content will be used when people ask voice assistants something, which is great for getting your stuff seen in places where people do not usually search for things. Rich snippets and structured data are important, for this reason.

7. Eligibility for Featured Results

When you have structured content it is more likely that the search engine will pick it up and show it in featured snippets or knowledge panels. These are the things that you see at the top of the search results page. The structured content that is shown in featured snippets or knowledge panels gets most of the traffic from people who are searching for something. This is because structured content is what people see first when they look at the search results.

It is important to note that adding data does not mean you will get rich snippets. The search engines are the ones that decide when and where to show them.. If you have

valid and relevant structured data on your website and you use it all the time then your website has a better chance of getting rich snippets. Rich snippets are really useful, for websites so it is worth trying to get them by using data.

Rich snippets are really useful for search engine optimization. They do not have an impact, on how high a website ranks. However rich snippets can make people more likely to click on a website. This can help the website do better over time because rich snippets make people want to visit the website. Rich snippets are a thing to have for search engine optimization.

7.3.4 Implementing and Testing Schema Markup

So you want to add schema to your website. To do this you need to put some information into the HTML of your web page. The best way to do this is by using something called JSON-LD. This keeps the information separate from the rest of the stuff on your page and it is pretty easy to keep track of. You usually put this code in the head section of your page or at the end of the HTML.

* It is like adding a label to your web page

* This label helps people and computers understand what your page is about

* JSON-LD is a way to add this label because it is simple to use and does not get in the way of your content.

You can put the JSON-LD code in the <head> section or at the end of the HTML it is up, to you make sure it is there so your schema markup works properly.

<body>.

The implementation process has a lot of things that need to be done. It involves steps:

1. Identify the Appropriate Schema Type

When you are looking at the content like a product or an article you need to pick the specific schema type from Schema.org vocabulary. This is really important because you want to show what is on the page in a way. If you do not do this you might get in trouble for spam and that can hurt you. You have to choose the right schema type, for your product or article to make sure everything is okay.

2. Generate the Schema Code

You can write the JSON-LD script by hand. You can use schema generators to do it for you. If you have a website that uses a platform like WordPress there are plugins that can help you with this, such, as Yoast or Rank Math. These plugins make it easy to add the JSON-LD script to your website.. If you have a custom coded website, the developers who built your website will have to put the JSON-LD script in the code themselves.

3. Validate the Markup

Before you put your stuff online you should use Googles Rich Results Test or the Schema Markup Validator to check your code. These tools will show you what is wrong what you should fix and what is missing which helps you make sure your website follows the rules that search engines, like Google want you to follow so your Rich Results and Schema Markup are okay.

4. Deploy and Monitor

After you add the markup you need to re-index the pages using Google Search Console.

You should check the performance metrics like how many people see your page and how many people click on it in the Enhancements section of Google Search Console to see how the markup is doing.

This will show you how the Google Search Console markup is performing.

Additional considerations during implementation:

- **Consistency:** The information has to be the same. For example if a website has review ratings in the schema these review ratings should also be visible on the website page. This means the review ratings in the schema and the review ratings on the page should be the same. The structured data and the on-page content should match perfectly so the review ratings in the schema are the same as the review ratings, on the page.
- **Hierarchy:** When you have a lot of schema types you need to make sure they are organized in an order. For example a review schema can be put inside a product schema so that people can see the context of the review and understand what the product schema is about, like how the review schema relates to the product schema.
- **Dynamic Content:** When you have an e-commerce site with products that are always changing the information about these products should be updated automatically. This means the people who build the website should use codes to make sure everything is correct and matches the actual products. This way the Dynamic Content on the site will always show the details for the Dynamic Content so customers see the correct information, for the Dynamic Content.

People who are really good with websites can use Google Tag Manager to add schema to their pages in a way. This means they can add the schema to the right page without having to copy and paste the same code over and over. Google Tag Manager makes it easy to update schema on all the pages at the time, which is a big help. This way Google Tag Manager helps people avoid doing the work multiple times and makes it easier to keep everything up, to date.

Testing is something you have to do a lot. You have to check the schema all the time to make sure it still works after you update the site or change the way it looks. The rules for data that search engines use are changed every now and then so you need to stay up to date with the search engine guidelines for structured data and keep learning about the search engine guidelines, for structured data.

Proper implementation of schema markup not only helps search engines understand your content but also qualifies your site for enhanced features in search results. It bridges the gap between machine interpretation and human context, contributing significantly to a holistic SEO strategy.

Knowledge Check: Structured Data & Schema Markup

Q1. What is the most recommended format for structured data implementation by Google?

- a) Microdata
- b) RDFa
- c) JSON-LD
- d) HTML5

Q2. Which schema type should be used for marking up a blog post?

- a) Product
- b) FAQPage
- c) Article
- d) Review

Q3. What property is commonly used in Product schema to indicate pricing?

- a) priceList
- b) offerPrice
- c) offers
- d) cost

Q4. Where is JSON-LD typically placed in the HTML document?

- a) Inside image tags
- b) Footer only

- c) Head or body
- d) CSS file

Q5. Which tool is recommended to test structured data markup?

- a) Analytics
- b) Tag Manager
- c) Rich Results Test
- d) GTmetrix

7.4 Summary

⌘ Architecture of the website has a basic role in SEO because it decides how search engines

crawl, index and rank a website's content.

⌘ Internal linking is efficient with reduced crawl depth and better page authority distribution originated from a clean and logical website structure.

⌘ XML sitemaps act as a road map of important URLs and help search engines efficiently crawl large or dynamically generated websites.

⌘ Robots.txt is a very useful method of letting the search engine spiders know which parts of your site should not be crawled.

” Canonical tags enable consolidate duplicate URLs by indicating the desired version of a page to prevent loss in ranking signal.

⌘ There are hosts of reasons why page speed matters so much for your user's experience as well as search engine ranking, slow pages! cause high bounce rate and low visibility also.

⌘ Mobile-first indexing prioritizes content that is mobile-optimized, meaning both the desktop version and the mobile version of your site should have comparable content and functionality.

⌘ Core Web Vitals—LCP, FID, CLS—assess user experience based on loading performance, interactivity and visual stability, and are included in Google ranking signals.

Tools such as Google PageSpeed Insights, Lighthouse and WebPageTest help [to diagnose performance-related issues] and provide [performance optimisation] recommendations.

Structured data, schema markup for better manners to labels aspects viz articles, products, FAQs and reviews such that search engines can understand web content.

Rich snippets increase search appearance and provide users with extra information about the content in search results to help them make a decision.

Accurate use of structured data markup guarantees eligibility for rich results and to help prompt the consistency between on-page content and Google's search index.

7.5 Key Terms

Website Structure: The way a website is built to best present information in a logical order, both for visitors and search engines.

Crawlability: The extent to which content on the web can be accessed and indexed by search engine bots.

XML Sitemap: A document of website URLs and other metadata that assists search engines to crawl and index pages better.

Robots.txt – A file which tells search engine bots what should not be crawled.

Canonical Tag: Special HTML tag for the preferred version of a web page in case duplicate pages exist.

Page Speed: The amount of time it takes for an webpage to load and render in a browser.

Mobile-First Indexing: Google policy using the mobile version of a page for ranking and indexing.

Core Web Vitals: A group of metrics (LCP, FID, CLS) that analyze various aspects of the real-user page experience.

Structured Data: Markup, formatted data, in a way that search engines can understand.

Schema Markup: A particular syntax of structured data that defines content types and properties.

Rich Snippets: Improved search results with more information like ratings, FAQs or price.

JSON-LD: A simpler way of applying structured markup, preferred by Google for its simplicity.

7.6 Descriptive Questions

Discuss the importance of site structure in relation to SEO and user navigation.

Explain the function and elements of an XML sitemap. How does it help the browsers to index in the search engine?

How can misconfigured robots.txt files hurt my site's ranking in search results?

Describe the concept of canonicalization. Why is it so important when dealing with duplicate content?

Why should you care about Core Web Vitals and search rankings?

Use the schema markup, and compare different types of. What are examples of where each could be used?

What are rich snippets? What are they doing to help visibility and actions in search?

10) Explain the process to implement and test structured data with schema markup?

7.7 References

1. Google Search Central. (2022). Search Engine Optimization (SEO) Starter Guide.
2. Schema.org. (n.d.). The Official Schema Markup Vocabulary.
3. Moz. (2022). The Beginner's Guide to SEO.
4. Google Developers. (2022). Core Web Vitals Overview.
5. Yoast SEO Blog. (2022). Structured Data and SEO.
6. W3C. (n.d.). Robots Exclusion Protocol and Guidelines.

Answer Key to Knowledge Check

1. c) JSON-LD
2. c) Article
3. c) offers
4. c) Head or bod
5. c) Rich Results Test

7.8 Case Study: How Amazon Optimizes Technical SEO for Crawlability & Speed Summary

Amazon, the largest e-commerce platform in the world receives billions of visits per month from search engines. In order to keep the lights on and maintain UX, Amazon has always been at the forefront of SEO by investing heavily in technical SEO such as site architecture that is crawlable, page speed (a mobile first index signal), mobile usability along with structured data depth. In this case study, we're finding out how Amazon addresses those everyday technical SEO problems and remain versatile against search engine and user demands.

Issue 1.2: Alt Text Deep URL Structures and Crawl Waste

Challenge:

With millions of products in stock, Amazon has a complex URL structure and deep page trees. Unmanaged, this leads to orphaned pages and crappy crawlability by the search engines.

Solution:

Amazon solves that by having a very well structured and infinitely scalable hierarchical website. It prioritizes internal linking through:

- Uncluttered paths to category and product pages from the home page
- Frequent use of breadcrumb navigation
- Faceted navigation control with canonical tags for avoiding indexing of URL variants due to filters

Amazon also uses a technique of sitemap segmentation where URLs are organized in product type, regional store and site update frequency categories. This enables Googlebot to more efficiently crawl important pages and help with accelerated indexation of new content.

Issue 2: Page load time impact from rich media content Challenge:

With the media-rich product pages on its site (images, videos, reviews), Amazon is opening itself up to longer load times as well, which won't help rankings and click-throughs – especially if people are trying to reach the site over a mobile network.

Solution:

Assets are served by Amazon's powerful Content Delivery Network (CDN) at the location nearest them. Additionally, it implements:

- Statically ship JS and CSS files with support for both images and secondary content lazy loading

- Asynchronous loading of JavaScript
- CSS and JavaScript minification and compression
- Server-Side-Rendering (SSR) for initial content, to enhance perceived load speed

Amazon maintains optimal thresholds for its Largest Contentful Paint (LCP) and Cumulative Layout Shift (CLS) by always monitoring Core Web Vitals metrics.

Issue 3: How to keep consistency between the world comains and Mobile side?

Challenge:

3.2 Amazon Amazon is multilingual, and available for several countries with tens of thousands of live product listings. Keeping a uniform structured data and mobile site experience for all versions is difficult.

Solution:

Amazon uses templates that include JSON-LD for structured data, which is populated by templated backend logic. It includes schemas for:

- Products
- Reviews and Aggregate Ratings
- Offers and Availability

Layout Amazon adopts a mobile-first approach in its design, which means that parity between the mobile and desktop versions is maintained. With mobile-first indexing, all the desktop pages also have their equivalent as mobile pages and the content on both the desktop and the mobile page are getting covered.

They further utilize hreflang attributes to specify regional page versions and language targeting, avoiding duplication of content and complying with international SEO best practices.

Reflective Questions

How Amazon is using internal linking to enhance its crawlability and indexing elsewhere?

How has Amazon improved the page speed without losing the content richness?

Why is schema markup important for a website with Amazon's size and variety of content?

How does Amazon make sure mobile and desktop versions don't fall out of sync with respect to structured data?

What Technical SEO Lessons Can Smaller e-Commerce Sites Learn from Amazon?

Conclusion

Even more interesting is Amazon's methods are an astonishing example of the criticalness of being focused, scalable as well as data driven in enterprise website/search engine performance. By tackling crawlability with architectural clarity, speed through advanced rendering techniques, and pushing structured data to enhance search listings, Amazon ensures that its enormous digital footprint is able to be found and used. Such tactics can be adapted by smaller websites and focused on the foundational cornerstones of SEO success: crawlability, mobile experience, and structured data.

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 8 V3 (1).docx

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 ATLAS SkillTech University

Document Details

Submission ID

trn:oid::3618:127523026

Submission Date

Feb 4, 2026, 4:06 PM GMT+5:30

Download Date

Feb 4, 2026, 4:09 PM GMT+5:30

File Name

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 8 V3 (1).docx

File Size

176.2 KB

24 Pages

6,757 Words

39,034 Characters





1% Overall Similarity

The combined total of all matches, including overlapping sources, for each database.




Filtered from the Report

- ▶ Bibliography
- ▶ Quoted Text
- ▶ Cited Text
- ▶ Small Matches (less than 15 words)

Match Groups

-  **4 Not Cited or Quoted 1%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
-  **0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
-  **0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
-  **0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 1%  Internet sources
- 0%  Publications
- 0%  Submitted works (Student Papers)

Integrity Flags

0 Integrity Flags for Review

No suspicious text manipulations found.

Our system's algorithms look deeply at a document for any inconsistencies that would set it apart from a normal submission. If we notice something strange, we flag it for you to review.

A Flag is not necessarily an indicator of a problem. However, we'd recommend you focus your attention there for further review.

Match Groups

- 4 Not Cited or Quoted 1%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- 0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
- 0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- 0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 1% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 0% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Top Sources

The sources with the highest number of matches within the submission. Overlapping sources will not be displayed.

- 1** Internet
occupationalmedicine.veooz.com <1%
- 2** Internet
profiletree.com <1%
- 3** Internet
breastreconstruction.veooz.com <1%
- 4** Internet
optometrist.veooz.com <1%

Unit 8: Off-Page SEO Techniques

Learning Objectives:

1. Explain the role of link building in off-page SEO and differentiate between white-hat, black-hat, and gray-hat strategies.
2. Analyze how social signals and online reputation management influence search engine trust and brand authority.
3. Develop and implement local SEO strategies, including citation building and Google Business Profile optimization, to improve visibility in local search results.
4. Evaluate the impact of customer reviews on local rankings, and propose strategies to encourage and manage online reviews ethically.
5. Identify and assess high-authority link opportunities and formulate outreach strategies for effective backlink acquisition.
6. Understand the relationship between NAP consistency, local citations, and map pack rankings in local SEO performance.
7. Apply reputation management tools and social listening techniques to monitor, protect, and enhance a brand's online image.

Content:

- 8.0 Introductory Caselet
- 8.1 Link Building Strategies
- 8.2 Social Signals & Online Reputation Management
- 8.3 Local SEO & Citations
- 8.4 Customer Reviews & Local Ranking Factors
- 8.5 Summary
- 8.6 Key Terms
- 8.7 Descriptive Questions
- 8.8 References
- 8.9 Case Study

8.0 Introductory Caselet

Caselet Title: Elevate Café's Battle for Local Awareness

Like many small business owners, friends Stephen Read and Ben Johnson worked hard to connect with loyal customers of their boutique coffee shop in downtown Austin. Specializing in artisanal coffee and a cozy atmosphere, the café depended on foot traffic and repeat customers. But with newer entrants to the market (many of whom have strong digital marketing teams), Elevate Café suddenly saw a drop-off in new customer numbers.

Despite having a professional website, and an online presence through social media outlets etc., it was difficult for the café to rank in their local search results. When prospective customers Googled “coffee shops near me” or “best latte in Austin,” Elevate hardly ever popped up as one of the top options on Google Maps or organic search results. After they evaluated their internet visibility, Justin and Samantha realized that a lot of their online assets were originating from sources that couldn't be trusted: incorrect business listings on other websites, backlinks coming only from non-authoritative local sites, lack of good reviews and comments by customers and low engagement in social media.

Finally, despite its competitors actively soliciting and responding to customer reviews, Elevate had not pursued any review acquisition tactics. The café had few citations on important local platforms and its Google Business Profile wasn't optimized with updated photos, opening hours or keyword-rich descriptions.

Being aware of the changes in consumer behavior toward on-line discovery and local search, the owners of Elevate Café made a strategic decision to have their location promoted online using a combination of off-page SEO and local optimization. This involved getting good quality local links, interacting with their customers on social media, managing their online reputation effectively and cleaning up their Name, Address and Phone (NAP) information online.

Within weeks Elevate Café started ascending the local rankings, gaining more reviews and earning its place back in search results. “The Leave” brought attention to the importance of off-page signals and local SEO for businesses that are actually trying to influence real world (not algorithm) search result relevance factors in order to grow their business.

Critical Thinking Question:

If you were consulting handle marketing for Elevate Café, what are the top three off-page SEO strategies that you would implement first and describe how each one impacts/ will contribute to the improvement of its local search content?

8.1 Link Building Strategies

8.1.1 Importance of Backlinks in SEO

Backlinks are simply links from other sites to your site. They are among the most powerful SEO ranking factors. Backlinks are essentially “votes of confidence” from other websites, according to search engines. The higher the number of high-quality, relevant backlinks a page has, the more authority it is deemed to hold and the more likely it will rank higher in search engine results pages (SERPs).

There are a number of reasons why backlinks make the difference for SEO:

- **Authority and Trust:** If lots of high-authority sites point to your content, search engines may assume that you’re a trusted source of information. This is central to Google's E-A-T (Expertise, Authoritativeness, Trustworthiness) documentation.
- **Crawl discovery:** Backlinks also are a way for search engines to find new content. The search engine bot comes along to a famous web site and sees the link to another page, then follows that linking and the new page is indexed.
- **Referral Traffic:** Backlinks can also send referral traffic from websites and blogs, or news sites where users can click on the link in the content. This can be very powerful, especially when the referring site is a popular one and has an active community.
- **Ranking Signals:** Search engines consider the high-quality backlinks a ranking signal. Links from relevant sites with high authority pass more-“link equity,” or ranking power, than links from low-authority and non-relevant domains.

But all backlinks are not created equal. Some factors that affect the worth of a backlink:

- **Pertinence:** Of course, more valuable are links on websites within the same or related industry.
- **Linking domain figure of authority:** The higher a domain’s figure of authority, the more valuable the link.
- **Where the link is placed:** Links within the main content are stronger than those in footers or sidebars.
- **Anchor text:** The link’s clickable text is valuable too, since search engines can use it as a clue about the relevance of the target page.

8.1.2 Guest Posting for Authority Building

This is where guest posting comes in, the writing and publishing of posts on other websites. It’s one of the oldest and most effective traffic driving techniques in SEO.

Delivering targeted visitors directly to you, exposure, credibility and higher search engine rankings.

The first challenge to writing as a guest is the search for high quality websites to post upon. These sites should be in your space, with high DA and an engaged audience. You don't necessarily want a link, but instead something that can establish whether you or your brand is the authority.

Crucial steps in effective guest posting campaign:

Hunt Down Opportunities: Search operators, backlink analysis tools and competitor research should be constructive in helping you hunt down those guest post opportunities.

Outreach and Pitching: It helps to tailor your pitches in a way that shows the prospective linker what your content does for their audience. Avoid stock email, and demonstrate knowledge of the site's content.

Writing: Write original, well-researched content in the tone and for the readers of your host site. Links – You can include internal and external links, 1 or 2 back to your own site is fine (Ideally in post not bio).

Link placement: Ensure the link is a) useful and relevant to the context in which it sits, + Avoid overly commercial anchor text that could result in editorial rejection, or cause clashes with SEO best practice.

Establish Relationships: Build relations with editors and content managers. Golden tip: You can make one good post into many if you're clever.

Guest posting is not only about link building. It results in the brand building by providing exposure to new audience. It also raises the author's authority on the subject, over time.

But then, following best practices is important. Excess guest posting for the sake of obtaining links (if in spammy quantity, often with low-quality content) can result in search engine penalties. This doesn't work, because the priority is to generate value for the reader and you can not compromise your editorial policies or quality.

Also, guest posting offers indirect SEO benefits like getting brand mentions, social shares, and referral traffic. These implicit signals can also drive domain authority and content discovery.

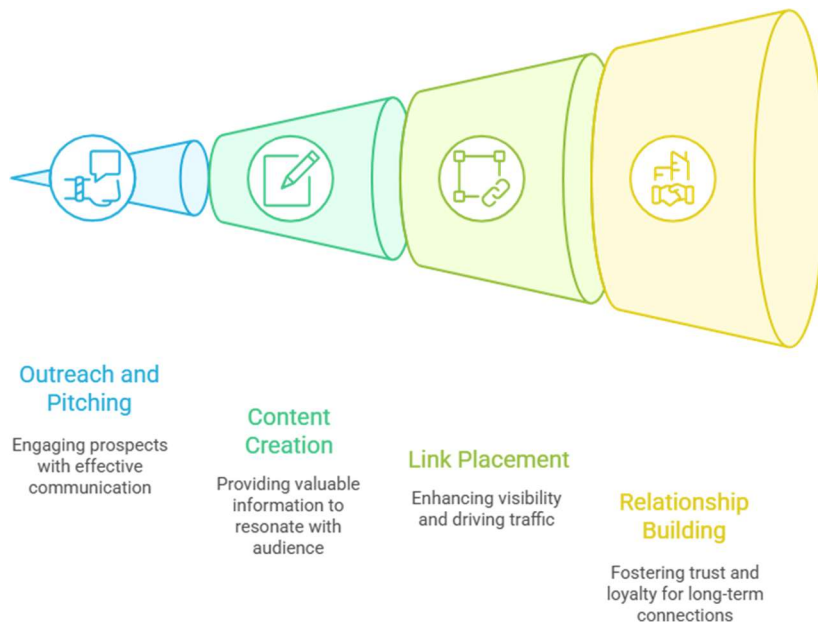


Figure 8.1

8.1.3 Influencer Outreach and Collaborations

Influencer outreach in SEO Influencer outreach means reaching out to people - so influencers are basically beings or entities who have a higher authority online, and they can promote your content, your products or even link to important resources. Influencer collaboration Influencers are a great tool for link building as it's often the influencer's say that decides on whether their audience follows through with reading or not. Where outreach is focused on communication, influencer marketing makes use of the relationships and winning over trust to promote natural linking opportunities.

Quite often, influencers are also running blogs, YouTube channels, podcasts or have extremely active social media profiles.

- **Round-Up Posts:** Make a listicle or expert roundup with more than a few influencers. When published, send to them and ask for a share or link.
- **Interviews and Podcast:** When you invite influencers on your website for interview or podcast show, they might link back to that episode or content.

Effective engagement requires a dialogue that is personal, respectful and beneficial for both parties. Don't send out mass emails and start with researching the influencer's content style, audience profile and values. Sincerity is crucial in long term relationships.

Success of influencer outreach measurement should not be a backlink count. Referral traffic, brand mentions, social shares and linking sites' domain authority are some of the metrics to consider.

A problem commonly faced with influencer outreach involves scaling relationships. Finding, reaching out to, and aligning with influencers is a lot of work. But the result is generally superior quality editorially-earned links, rather than automated or low-quality tactics.

Another consideration is transparency. Clearly state sponsored content or affiliations when applicable according to search engine guidelines and regulatory requirements. The use of rel="sponsored" or rel="nofollow" where applicable can help maintain compliance, while still taking advantage of the association.

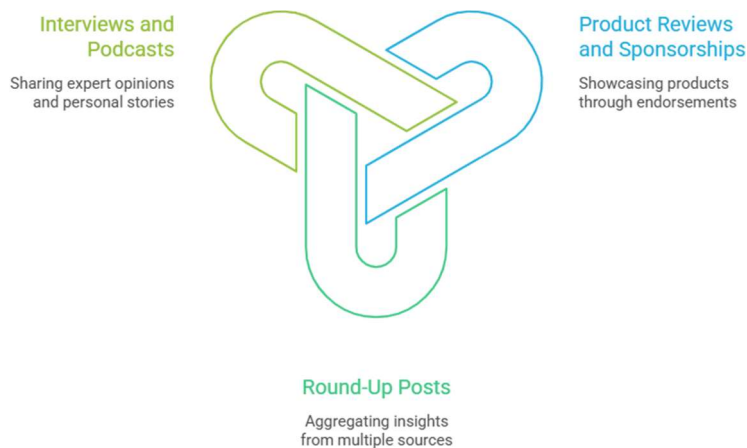


Figure 8.2

Did you know?

"Many influencers with high domain authority manage their own blogs or media sites, which means a successful collaboration can result in editorial links that are more trusted by search engines than links from traditional directories or press releases."

8.1.4 Broken Link Building and Other Advanced Techniques

Broken link building is a sophisticated SEO strategy where you find dead or broken outbound links on relevant pages, and recommend your own content as an alternative. It's a win-win: site owners make their sites better, and you get a quality backlink for offering them an alternative.

The first step is to find websites in your niche with broken or outdated links. One way to do this is with the help of tools such as Ahrefs, Screaming Frog, or Check My Links. Once you've identified broken links, check out the content that a dead link used to point to (if any) and write your own version or suggest an existing piece of content that covers the same subject matter in greater depth/relevancy.

Steps in broken link building:

Research: scan target sites with SEO tools and find 404 errors in outwards links.

Content Creation: If the dead link was to a great piece of content, create an updated version on your site. And if you have related content, everything should match right.

Outreach: You reach out to the webmaster and send a nice email informing them of the broken link, and letting them know that your resource would be an excellent alternative.

Follow-Up: If you don't hear back, a polite follow-up can increase your chances of getting a backlink.

Advantages of broken link building:

- High Response Rate You are offering something of value
 - Builds real relationships with site owners
 - Targets established content niches of known interest
- Other Advanced Link Building Methods include:
- Skyscraper Technique: Discover material that is doing well, create something better and send it to the original audience which has linked to the first one.
 - Unlinked Branded Mentions: Track where your brand is mentioned at and beg for a link être employé.
 - Resource Page Link Building: Find "Resources" or "Helpful Links" pages in your industry, and recommend your content as a suitable addition.
 - HARO (Help a Reporter Out): Answer reporter queries with expert quotes on behalf of links from news sites.

All of these strategies need to be supported by a solid foundation of deep research, targeted outreach and killer content. The pages of links won't count," he continues. "We don't need more links, we need better links." Ultimate Link Building Is About Relevancy And Authority The evolution is not about how many as much as it is about relevancy and authority — and keeping digital relationships sustainable.

By nailing these strategies, you will go a long way to building topical authority, growing organic visibility and developing a robust backlink profile that can withstand the impact of algorithm updates and market adaptations.

8.2 Social Signals and Online Reputation Management

8.2.1 Role of Social Signals in SEO

Social signals are these actions that visitors take when they interact with a website and the brand on social media like likes shares comments etc... Social signals are not a part of google core algorithm but its impact on SEO is so huge. This is one of the debates which can generate a conversation, get content seen and contribute towards a longer life for brands online – all factors which could potentially impact on search.

The Big Kahuna: Content Sharing & Back Link Building The greatest and most obvious way social signals connect with SEO is content sharing and back links. If the content is very promotional and therefore highly shareable on social then there will be more bloggers, journalists and webmasters that could potentially link to it from their own websites.

Indeed, these backlinks are a vital signal that search engine algorithms use when evaluating rank. So social media is a catalyst to earning natural links.

Another one: accelerating your content's indexation speed by using social signals. Search engine also can sometimes crawl and index faster the content with a lot of engagement in their social platforms. If a new blog post or product page takes off on Twitter or LinkedIn, it's going to be discovered and indexed more quickly.

Moreover, social signals help to improve brand signals, which are the factors that can influence CTR and user behavior such as dwell time and bounce rate. A strong following / engaging social profile puts more trust to a user's search and thus makes it easier and "safer" to interact with branded content in SERPs.

Social media itself often returns as top search results for brand searches. Idea Behind: For the regular B2B (Facebook, LinkedIn etc.) and occasionally perusing B2C (Instagram, even YouTube) searchers out there, brand name related searches often index certain platforms well. By optimising these profiles with branded content, NAP (Name, Address, Phone) and links to the main website you can boost your holistic SEO.

While Google have confirmed that likes and shares are not a traditional ranking signal, user interaction driven by social exposure CAN affect your performance in the SERPs. " If people are searching for a brand they already know from social but see in the results and go to, well then of course they'll click on those search results that take them to more information too which boosts engagement signals.

Key takeaways include:

- The social cues raise visibility and the sharability of content.

- Potential for high engagement and subsequent link building opportunities.
- Social sharing boosts the indexing of recently uploaded material.
- Active social profiles can also contribute to brand authority in SERPs.

So, SEO professionals and marketers should stop seeing social media as a direct ranking factor but rather an amplification arm that influencing SEO through visibility, engagement and brand trust.

8.2.2 Managing Online Reputation

Definition of Online Reputation Management (ORM) Online reputation management is a process that monitors and improves how an entity is seen online. Where SEO is concerned, online reputation is simply a form of trust signals, user engagement and branded search results. A good reputation encourages clicks and user loyalty; a bad one gets in the way of online success.

ORM is a set of strategies for shaping the conversation around a brand—tactics SignupGenius wants you to use in pursuit of “positive online sentiment.”

Listening to your brand: The first thing it would do is listen. Brands have to have good tracking tools that can also see mentions across search engines, news sources, blogs and forums, as well as those on social media.

This in turn enables them to react to bad press immediately and strengthen the positive.

Controlling SERP Real Estate: Reputation management is often about using positive or neutral content to control the first page of search results for branded terms. This may be in the form of their official site but also social, blogs, press releases and listings on credible directories.

Review Management- Reviews on Google, Yelp and Trip Advisor are huge factors in consumer decisions. ORM includes asking for positive reviews, responding constructively to negative feedback, flagging spam or incorrect reviews, and listing your brand on popular review websites.

reviews when necessary. Candor and competence in response can transform criticism into an opportunity to build trust.

Content Creation: Issuing good informative and positive content to media would help manage the brand narrative. This could be through ‘thought leadership’ articles, FAQs, case studies, testimonials and rich media that strokes credibility.

Crisis Response Planning: Unfortunate events like product recall, legal problem and PR disaster can cause a tremendous blow to online reputation.

Activity: Social Sentiment Monitoring Challenge

Title: Listening and Responding in Real-Time

They will also be tracking the mentions of your brand — good and bad — as well as mention quality, conversations about brands, and how a brand engages with feedback. Students will also develop a strategic plan to enhance the brand's online reputation and how socially responsive it is. This practical task is a way to prove the value of an aggressive reputation management or of social signals in how people see you and trust you.

8.3 Local SEO & Citations

8.3.1 Basics of Local SEO

Local SEO is a subcategory of search engine optimization that specifically concentrates on increasing visibility in local search results. It is built for local businesses serving one particular city or geographic area — whether they are service providers, brick-and-mortar business, or even a franchise. The aim is to get these businesses in touch with local customers, by helping them tweak their online properties towards local-centric searches.

Local SEO is critical because search has changed. Users are increasingly searching for services “near me” or specifying a city or neighborhood as part of their queries. These searches will often feature localised map-packs, or other localised organic results in place of standard ‘one size fits all’ organic listings. Showing up in these local search results also drastically increases foot traffic, telephone calls, bookings and far more.

Crucial elements for local SEO are:

Google Business Profile (GBP): The building block of local SEO. A complete profile allows a business to display in Google Maps and the local pack (those top three listings you see for most local queries).

Local Citations: A mention of a business's Name, Address, and Phone Number (NAP) on directories, apps, and websites that add trust & authority to a local presence.

On-Page Optimization: Use of local keywords, landing pages for specific locations, schema markup, and the content that is optimized for geographically targeted search.

Reviews and Ratings: User submitted reviews at Google as well as 3rd party sites are your lifeblood – this is what actually builds credibility and affects ranking signals.



Local Backlinks: Earning local authority with links from other local businesses, newspapers, blogs and event portals.

Mobile : As a significant number of local searches are performed on mobile devices, quick-loading websites that look good on different screen sizes are a must!

Behavioral Signals: CTR, check-ins, calls to action, and direction requests are all ways of verifying the popularity of a local site.

Search engines get the most relevant results for a user. For local SEO for example that's looking at proximity (how close the business is to the user), relevance (how strongly does this listing match what someone is searching for) and prominence (how prominent / well known is a business based on information in directory reviews, citation lists and online).

Local SEO isn't just visibility — it's also trust, relevance, and engagement with the community. Companies that excel at local optimization put themselves in a position to get high-intent traffic (i.e. that will convert) very efficiently.

8.3.2 Importance of Local Citations

Local citations are references to a business's name, address and phone number (NAP) online. These citations could be on local business directories, apps and social platforms or other websites.

Popular sites for citations are things like Yelp, Yellow Pages, Facebook, Apple Maps and SIN Number Finish each of these Step 1-10 often called the ONSite work which is on most people's checklists.

TripAdvisor. Citations are among the most important local SEO ranking factors as they validate a business's existence, location and relevance to search engines.

Citations fall into two main categories:

Generic directories, where structured citations are common: Here you get into a lot of what I consider ick entries and (I'll repeat) whose value in terms of local SEO has decreased substantially over time. Examples of such directories include business directories, industry-specific listings and government or chamber of commerce sites.

Unstructured Citations: Mentions of your business in online press releases, social media posts, blogs, news articles and more—NAP information may or may not be found in a standardized format.

Businesses have to preserve them, update them when pertinent information changes and clean out duplicates or errors. And wrongly quotations can fool the customer and lose trust which is also a point that affects on the local ranks.

For businesses in competitive markets accurate and the number of citations can be a differentiator to make your business stand out from competitors. Citations are most effective incorporated into an overall local SEO strategy, alongside reviews, backlinks and on-page optimization.

8.3.3 NAP (Name, Address, Phone) Consistency

Standardised Business Citation A NAP Consistent NAP consistency is the accuracy of a company's Name, Address and Phone number on all web references. This is a key ingredient of local SEO and has a direct impact on how well your business can rank in local search. Inaccurate NAP details can be quite confusing for search engines and local search users alike – people and algorithms alike can lose trust in the business, which is not a good thing.

And when the search engines party as they crawl the web and see multiple versions of a business's contact info, they may regard them as different businesses which exists nowhere. It also weakens the "brand" or perceived authority of the business, and lowers the likelihood of showing up in local packs or with map listings. Mutual users with contradictory message may ultimately lose trust and opt in for the competitor.

If a business appears on Google Business Profile as "ABC Plumbing Services" at "123 Main St," but it is listed elsewhere as "ABC Plumbing Co." at "123 Main Street", the small difference might introduce doubt about what is accurate.

The specific spaces at which the NAP must be compatible are the following:

- Google Business Profile
 - Online directories (Yelp, Bing Places, Yellow Pages)
 - Industry-specific platforms
 - Profiles on Facebook, LinkedIn, and Instagram
 - Contact pages and business websites
- NAP consistency best practices How to keep your NAP details consistent: I know, you simply need to maintain the same information from a starting point, right?

Use a Master Copy: Prepare only one, definitive iteration of your NAP and utilize it consistently and evenly in all platforms.

Don't Abbreviate or Use Variations: Choose a standard format for elements such as "Street" vs. "St." or "Co." vs. "Company," and stick to it.

Keep Track of Citations: Most practitioners will not have a professional to manage their citations, but periodic checks on your own or using tools and software can ensure that there are no inconsistencies.

Prompt address updates: Change all listings immediately if the business moves or has new contact information.

Duplicate Removal: Locate and remove duplicate listings that can be competing or watering down business value.

Website Schema Markup: Add business Name, Address & Phone to structured data (i.e. JSON-LD) to assist search engines in identifying and matching information.

8.3.4 Google Business Profile Optimisation

Google Business Profile (formerly Google My Business) is the single most important tool for local SEO success. It serves as a hub for businesses to easily update their information across Google Search and Google Maps. A well-optimized profile both appears in local packs, drives user engagement and can generate traffic and conversions.

There are a few things to consider when optimizing a Google Business Profile:

Correct and Complete Details: Check the business name, address and phone number (NAP) is correct and exactly the same as it appears on all other online listings. Choose the right primary and secondary business categories to suit search intent.

Business Description Provide a keyword optimized business description that reads well and explains clearly what the business offers, USPs and target service areas.

Photos and Video: Add high-resolution photos of the business, products, services, staff, and location. Active photo uploads businesses have higher click activity and direction requests.

Business Hours: Maintain your business hours, even seasonal and holiday hours can be maintained. Incorrect hours provide a bad user experience and result in negative reviews.

Reviews and Ratings Management: Motivate happy customers to rate and review your business. Shout outs in response to reviews - post both positive and negative ones. Volume and quality of reviews are huge local-search ranking factors.

Google Posts: Share offers, events, updates and announcements with your customers using Google Posts. These show up in your business profile and can encourage more engagement.

In the Q&A Section: Keep an eye on, and respond to, any questions your customers ask. Answering accurately helps in building confidence and reducing the customer effort.

List of Products and Services: Describe what services or products you provide with any pricing details, descriptions, and photos if applicable. This also improves relevancy and search match.

Booking and Chat Options: Allow direct booking, chat or appointment scheduling if applicable. These tools lead from searchers to customers without visiting the website.

Insights and analytics: View performance data on the volume of views, direction requests, and website visits that are provided by Google for this free listing to help you make informed decisions about your listing.

Did you know?

"Businesses that add photos to their Google Business Profile receive 42% more requests for directions on Google Maps and 35% more click-throughs to their websites compared to those that don't."

Regular optimization and active management of a Google Business Profile can significantly improve local rankings and customer trust. It is often the first impression a user gets of a business and plays a central role in converting online searches into offline visits.

8.4 Customer Reviews & Local Ranking Factors

8.4.1 Impact of Customer Reviews on Local SEO

Local SEO Super important are customer reviews in local SEO stuff: And reviews are more than just a social proof and ranking factor that can affect consumer behavior and how search engines perceive your business. For local SEO, reviews are a critical factor for visibility and credibility as well as conversions.

Search engines are trying to give their users the most relevant and trusted information. They look at user-generated content, such as reviews, to decide whether a site is trustworthy if lower. Google especially takes into account: review quantity, recency and sentiment as a part of its local ranking algorithm. A business that has hundreds of recent, good reviews is far more likely to be shown in the local map pack than a business with hardly any or old reviews.

How local SEO is influenced by customer reviews There are several primary ways in which customer reviews impact local SEO:

I: Relevance and Prominence in Local Pack Relevant (25%) Prominent relevant (10%) Excellent prominence (30%) Good prominence (40-50) Decent prominence I would say less than good.

Google also looks at the volume of reviews and average rating when deciding which 3 businesses make it into the top local map results. A high level of reviews and recent review activity helps a business stand out; and the more those reviews are positive, the better.

Click-Through Rates and User Engagement

Star rated listings get clicked on more in map results AND regular results. This increased engagement can result in greater traffic and better behavioral signals (decreased bounce rate, longer dwell time) that indirectly help SEO.

Keyword Relevance

Online reviews frequently include organic keywords about a business's products or services, and the location. These terms allow search engines to identify the context of your business during a query.

Review Velocity and Freshness

All in all, customer review are a vital part of local SEO. They affect findability, reputation and consumer trust, all of which are necessary for any company searching for prominence in local search.

8.4.2 Responding to Reviews Effectively

There are absolutely most definitely 2 sides to a story. Answering positive and negative reviews as part of online reputation management and Local SEO is one thing you can do handle those two sides well. How a company interacts with its reviewers affects potential customers' impressions of the company's reliability, professionalism, and customer service. Google even has said that businesses should respond to reviews so they can show they are actively managing their Google Business Profile and that is factored in local rankings.

There is more to an effective review response than just acknowledging the comment – you really need to take a personal, professional stance and be prepared to resolve if the situation warrants it.

Responding to Positive Reviews

Positive reviews also provide a chance to further customer satisfaction and keep them coming back for more. Best practices include:

- Thanking the reviewer by name
- Referring to something new that they enjoyed in the way of personalization.
- That you would be happy to serve them again
- Re-invite or new capture both parties Work to the sales team.

For example:

“Smooth Operator” Writing: “Thank you Sarah for your kind words about our freshly made coffee and cozy feel.

We’re so glad you enjoyed your visit and hope to see you again soon.”

Responding to Negative Reviews

Negative reviews, though, require a more strategic approach. The point is to solve a problem, protect brand reputation and be transparent.

- Act through quick response to demonstrate attentiveness
- Use reviewer's name, where possible.
- Acknowledge there is a problem and avoid defensiveness
- Propose a solution or offer to move the discussion offline
- Stay Cool, and Be Respectful No Matter the Sound of the Review

For example:

‘Sorry to hear about your experience, Alex! This is not the kind of service we wish to offer and appreciate you bringing this to our attention. “We would like to further discuss this, and make this right — feel free to message us or contact our manager.”

Why Responses Matter

- Establishes Trust: Acknowledging feedback helps the customers feel like their opinion makes a difference.
- Drives More Reviews: If you’re involved, it might inspire other customers to shape up a review.
- Mitigates the Damage of Negative Comments: A professional response to a negative comment can help counteract it.
- Signals Activity to Google: Consistent review activity indicates that the business is well managed and customer focused.

Common Mistakes to Avoid

- Copy-paste or templated responses
- Ignoring negative feedback
- Replying with insults or sarcasm
- Posting your personal information or order number.

And most importantly, your response should be true to your brand's voice and values. Engaging with reviews creates a public perception of trust and may influence search performance and even purchasing decisions.

8.4.3 Local Ranking Signals and Trust Features

Local SEO rankings are based on a cocktail of signs that signal how relevant, authoritative, and reputable a business is with respect to the user's query and location. Search engines use these signals to determine which businesses show up in local search and pack results, which in the Google three-pack are those that display alongside a map of a locality.

Local ranking signals become "key" and knowing them is essential to visibility in a competitive geographic market.

Core Local Ranking Signals:

Google Business Profile (GBP) Optimization

A full and correct GBP is necessary. This consists of the firm's business name, categories, address, phone number, website link, hours of operation and attributes. Regular updates and interaction (e.g. posts, questions, photo uploads) also reinforce this signal.

NAP Consistency

Consistent NAP with all citations adds to trust. Data inconsistency may lead to confusion for search engines and result in a lack of credibility.

Local Citations

The presence and location of a business tend to be validated by listings for it in different directories and websites. Citations, both quantity and quality, can result in notability.

Review Quantity and Sentiment

Reviews which are not only highly reviewed, but which also read well (i.e. the type of language used within them), can have an effect on local and trust rankings. Fresh, varied and high-quality reviews contribute to reputation as well as to SEO.

On-Page Signals

Using local keywords, schema markup and location content on your website will help associate the business with search intent for a region.

Backlinks from Local Sources

Acquiring links from relevant (and local or trusted) domains such as chambers of commerce, local blogs and newspapers also demonstrates domain authority and signals community involvement.

Behavioral Signals

Engines keep a close eye on user behavior when it comes to listings. High CTRs, calls from GBP, directions requests and dwell time suggest business relevance & popularity.

Trust Factors in Local SEO:

- Reputation: Based on reviews, press and social sentiment.
- Transparency: Good communication, return policies and available support.
- Security: The use of HTTPS encryption and privacy policies lend credibility.
- Authority: Expertise shared via blog posts, community participation, or alliances.
- Customer Service: The quality of service for which you pay reflects how quickly and professionally others respond online.

Businesses that want to appear in local search results must consistently check these signals and optimize where necessary. A dominant position in the local search results not only increases your visibility, but it also secures trust and authority which is extremely important in driving customer actions and retention.

Knowledge Check: Customer Reviews & Local Ranking Factors

Q1. Which review factor most directly impacts local map pack rankings?

- a) Review length
- b) Review quantity
- c) Reviewer location
- d) Review emojis

Q2. What is a recommended practice when responding to a negative review?

- a) Ignore it

- b) Argue back
- c) Personalize response
- d) Delete the review

Q3. Which of the following is a local ranking signal?

- a) Page load speed
- b) Social media likes
- c) Local backlinks
- d) Email open rates

Q4. What does NAP stand for in local SEO?

- a) Name And Payment
- b) Name, Address, Phone
- c) National Ad Placement
- d) None above

Q5. Which type of review platform helps diversify trust signals?

- a) Website only
- b) Google only
- c) Multiple platforms
- d) Paid ads

8.5 Summary

Off-page SEO refers to the activities conducted outside of your website that affects your page's search engine rankings, such as backlinks, social media, and online reputation.

Backlinks are still an important ranking factor, and the quality, relevance and authority of linking sites are what matter most.

Guest posts, influencer partnerships and broken link building all work to get you high DA backlinks.

It doesn't affect rankings, but it does help to get your content in front of people and build links.

Reputation management is crucial to brand trust and credibility whether for customer decisions or search visibility.

Social media can help boost brand authority, referral traffic and SEO value.

Local SEO helps businesses to be found in location based searches such as Google Maps and local packs.

If you have citations with matching NAP (Name, Address, Phone) data in all the major local directories it's going to make them more trustworthy and rank better.

The above steps are just a start; it's possible to take advantage of an entire industry that's formed around this topic, but for the purposes of local SEO at its core, optimizing Google Business Profile is crucial if you want both people and Google search to see your business.

Trust factors such as mobile-friendliness, local backlinks and user behavior also play a role in local search visibility and authority.

8.6 Key Terms

Backlink – A link to your site from another website, important for SEO rankings.

Guest Posting – Writing for another website to establish authority and get links back to your site.

Influencer Marketing – Partnering with influencers for exposure and editorial backlinks.

Broken Link Building – Replacing broken links on another site with a link to your relevant content.

SOCIAL SIGNALS – Is the actions of users, such as likes, shares and comments that explain user's emulation of acceptable behaviour, which have been modified practically and related with online visibility.

Online Reputation Management – Keeping an eye on, and changing if need be, what the general public thinks of a brand in digital space.

Local SEO – The process of improving a business' online presence to appear higher when search results are location specific.

Citations – Instances of a business's name, address and phone number found on directories online.

NAP Consistency – Repeatable formatting of a businesses Name, Address and Phone Number everywhere.

Google Business Profile - The instrument to organize the appearance of business in the Google Search and Maps.

3

More Hyperlinks Review Management – Handling reviews as they come in.

Local Ranking Signals – Reviews, citations and behavioral data affecting local search results.

8.7 Descriptive Questions

Explain the Importance of Quality Backlinks (how back links help you rank better in Search Engines)

Explain what guest posting is and the advantages of use it in an off-page SEO?

How influencer outreach improves your SEO and brand exposure?

What are some ingredients of a good online reputation management plan?

Explain what is local SEO and how it differs from the standard organic SEO.

Analysie the importance of NAP consistency and its effects on local search results.

What's the tie between Google Business Profile optimization and customer engagement/local rankings?

What are some best business practices to manage negative customer reviews?

8.8 References

1. Google Search Central. (2023). Improve your local ranking on Google.
2. Moz. (2023). The Beginner's Guide to Link Building.
3. Search Engine Journal. (2023). Local SEO: The Definitive Guide.
4. BrightLocal. (2023). Local Search Ecosystem and Citation Management.
5. HubSpot. (2023). Reputation Management and Review Strategy.
6. Neil Patel. (2023). Off-Page SEO Techniques for 2023.

Answer Key to Knowledge Check

1. b) Review quantity
2. c) Personalize response
3. c) Local backlinks
4. b) Name, Address, Phone
5. c) Multiple platforms

8.9 Case Study: How Starbucks Does Off-Page SEO to Dominate Local SERP

Introduction

Starbucks, an international coffeehouse chain, has thousands of stores in several countries. For such a global company, Starbucks prioritization of locally relevant digital strategies to engage communities on their doorsteps: ") if you do not go onto Instagram the next day"). The agency uses a combined off-page SEO approach of local search engine optimization, reputation management and digital PR to maintain strong visibility in localized searches with the added benefit of improving customer engagement, trust and umpf!

Local store leadership are instructed on providing a professional and timely response to customer feedback. Starbucks ask happy customers to leave a review, but negative reviews are dealt with positively.

By regularly responding to reviews on Google, Yelp and TripAdvisor, Starbucks gains credibility while boosting local presence. Good reviews also help with local pack rankings. This type of proactive review management positively impacts the brand's reputation and helps individual stores to stand out in their local markets.

Issue 2: How to Be Local but National in Your Branding

The Starbucks aesthetic is fairly standardised and corporate, which doesn't always lend itself to local relevance. In order to compete efficaciously in local search, particularly in cities with a plethora of free-standing coffee houses and the like, Starbucks needs to show that they have a presence within certain communities at a hyperlocal level.

Solution:

Starbucks uses store-based landing pages in each location featuring original content such as directions, serving times, events and offers. These pages are full of geo-targeted structured data and structured data. And it also keeps NAP (name, address and phone number) consistent across several hundred local directories and business listings.

The brand also relies heavily on its Google Business Profiles. Profiles for every store include stunning high resolution pictures, FAQs, location specific menus/showtimes/news and updates on product availability. Starbucks is very open at the store level, constantly sharing updates and being relevant for hyperlocal searches. And with investments in these local SEO building blocks – citations, mobile-friendliness and location-focused content — Starbucks elevates itself within search results for local searches.

Problem #3: Not Getting any Organic Mentions & Community Backlinks

Despite being a brand juggernaut, Starbucks has to battle countless numbers of local businesses that can gain some momentum just through the engagement and mentions they have in local media. These are commonly backed up by backlinks from local blogs, the local press and community forums – a key element of off-the-page search engine optimization.

Solution:

Starbucks participates in local sponsorships, sustainability efforts and other collaborations with community groups. These campaigns are usually covered by local news sites and those are of course good backlinks. This might be community pickups or college partnerships or local hiring campaigns.

Including working with influencers and digital PR to showcase local story telling of the brand. Moreover, local bloggers and content creators are welcomed to their store openings or special product launches or community-based activities- resulting in more exposure for Starbucks, at a back-link profile that's difficult to beat.

Through these efforts, Starbucks earns quality mentions and links from local coverage that empowers authority and further boosts search engine trust signals on a local level for each store.

Reflective Questions

How does Starbucks consistently maintain NAP and what is its significance for local SEO?

How does local community engagement contribute to off page SEO for Starbucks?

How does review response management help Starbucks?

How can Starbucks bridge the gap between a national brand identity and local relevance in its digital strategy?

Key takeaways for smaller retailers: SEO lessons from Starbucks There's a lot we can learn from Starbucks about local SEO. onOptionsItemSelected entMove along, there's nothing to see here.

Conclusion

The Starbucks off-awe SEO strategy It also teaches us a lesson: even a big global brand has to think and act locally if it wants to stay part of the mix in competitive local markets. By focusing on reputation management, citation consistency, local content and valuable link building strategies, Starbucks is bolstering the digital footprint of each store. The brand's focus on being part of the community and engaging locally enables it to compete like no other chain, but as a true neighbourhood café at every store. This

latest example highlights why a technical-led SEO approach will only get you so far - and permanent success is still reliant on delivering real community engagement.

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 9 V3.docx

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 ATLAS SkillTech University

Document Details

Submission ID

trn:oid::3618:127521335

Submission Date

Feb 4, 2026, 3:41 PM GMT+5:30

Download Date

Feb 4, 2026, 3:45 PM GMT+5:30

File Name

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 9 V3.docx

File Size

191.8 KB

31 Pages

7,423 Words

43,299 Characters





2% Overall Similarity

The combined total of all matches, including overlapping sources, for each database.




Filtered from the Report

- ▶ Bibliography
- ▶ Quoted Text
- ▶ Cited Text
- ▶ Small Matches (less than 15 words)

Match Groups

-  **9 Not Cited or Quoted 2%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
-  **0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
-  **0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
-  **0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 2%  Internet sources
- 0%  Publications
- 0%  Submitted works (Student Papers)

Integrity Flags

0 Integrity Flags for Review

No suspicious text manipulations found.

Our system's algorithms look deeply at a document for any inconsistencies that would set it apart from a normal submission. If we notice something strange, we flag it for you to review.

A Flag is not necessarily an indicator of a problem. However, we'd recommend you focus your attention there for further review.

Match Groups

- 9 Not Cited or Quoted 2%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- 0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
- 0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- 0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 2% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 0% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Top Sources

The sources with the highest number of matches within the submission. Overlapping sources will not be displayed.

1	Internet	
fastercapital.com		1%
2	Internet	
marketingarcc.com		<1%
3	Internet	
businessdocbox.com		<1%
4	Internet	
www.wiseguyreports.com		<1%

Unit 9: Search Engine Marketing through Google Ads

Learning Objectives:

1. Describe the anatomy of a Google Ads account, which includes campaigns, ad groups and keywords as well as ad creatives.
2. Distinguish between different Google Ads formats, including Search, Display, Video, Shopping and Performance Max campaigns, as well as know when to use them.
3. Aggressively manage ad spend and ROI using budgeting and bidding techniques.
4. Analyze factors affecting Quality Score and optimize ads and landing pages to contribute higher quality performances.
5. Test and analyze multiple attribution models to understand the effects on campaign performance tracking and optimization.
6. Construct and manage a fundamental paid search campaign according to marketing objectives, target audiences, and keyword research.
7. Analyze KPI's of search issues: **click-through rate (CTR), cost per-click (CPC) conversion rate (CR) and return on ad spend (ROAS).**

Content:

- 9.0 Introductory Caselet
- 9.1 Introduction to Paid Search & Google Ads Structure
- 9.2 Types of Google Ads
- 9.3 Budgeting, Bidding Strategies & Quality Score
- 9.4 Attribution Models
- 9.5 **Summary**
- 9.6 **Key Terms**
- 9.7 **Descriptive Questions**
- 9.8 **References**
- 9.9 **Case Study**

9.0 Introductory Caselet

Headline: The Mystery of FitGear's Poor Ad Spend

FitGear, a mid-sized fitness wear company, had recently introduced new products and spent heavily on online marketing to increase its e-commerce sales. Inspired by the results of their organic SEO, the marketing team wanted to take their visibility (and profits) up a couple notches by launching their debut Google Ads campaign. A huge monthly budget and many high-converting products were in store, so the expectations were high.

But after two months, the campaign wasn't providing results significant enough. It had a good CTR and the impressions were up there, but the conversion rate was really low. Cost per click (CPC) was much higher than expected with the team just able to break even on return ad spend (ROAS).

They did an initial audit and found a bunch of problems. Ad account structure was not well-segmented: All of a brand's products were within the same campaign with very little segmentation between brand and non-brand keywords. Ad copies were too generic and did not match user expectation. One problem was that landing pages were not mobile optimised, which in turn meant lots of users were bouncing as a result.

On top of this, the team also picked an automated bidding strategy without a realization that it matched their campaign objectives. They did not know what Quality Score impacted ad rank and how low ad relevance or landing page experience could increase their CPC.

In order to turn this around, FitGear engaged a paid media consultant to reorganize the account. The new strategy was break out into campaigns by product category, test responsive search ads, tightening keyword match types and optimizing landing pages. We also have to optimize the attribution model because we can understand [in-depth] about our customer journey and smoothly control our budget by each channel.

This experience made it clear that effective Google Ads needs not only budget but well developed strategy, technical knowledge and continuous optimization.

Critical Thinking Question:

Imagine that you are a consultant to FitGear -- what would be the THREE parts of their paid search strategy you would first focus on fixing and why changing these elements might lead to better campaign performance?

9.1 Introduction to Paid Search & Google Ads Structure

9.1.1 Fundamentals of Paid Search Marketing

Paid search marketing, also known as search engine marketing (SEM), is a digital advertising tactic businesses can use to place ads on search engine results pages (SERPs) when users search for specific keywords. The largest paid search platform is

Google Ads, but services like Bing Ads are also in line. The basic objective behind paid search is to generate high quality targeted visitors towards a website leading to a user converting into a customer, lead or a subscriber.

The difference with organic search is that visibility takes time to achieve through SEO, whereas paid search results offer near-instant visibility – your brand can appear at the top of search results a couple of hours after launching a PPC campaign. These ad units are generally labeled as "Sponsored" or "Ad" and are usually placed slightly above, adjacent to, or below organic results.

Fundamentals of Paid Search Marketing:

Targeting by Keywords: Advertiser bid for certain keywords that relates with their product/services. If someone searches with a query that includes those keywords, the ad can be served up.

Cost-per-Click (CPC) Model: Advertisers are charged only for the number of clicks their ads receive—it is performance-based advertising model. This behavior motivates you to choose your keywords and audience more carefully so that you can get a decent ROI on your investment.

Ad Auction: Google Ads are displayed based on an auction system where bidding is not determined exclusively by who bids the most, but also takes into account ad quality. Better quality ads can get better ad positions at lower prices.

Quantifiable performance: One can easily measure the effects with paid search by getting detailed tracking of impressions, clicks, conversions and cost metrics. This transparency enables data-driven optimization.

Targeting: Advertisers can target by location, device, time of day, audience demographics and other options. This level of granularity enables accurate campaign segmentation and personalisation.

Landing Page Alignment: Organic and paid search strategists both know the ad copy must align with user intent, ultimately leading to a highly-relevant landing page. Bad alignment will give you lousy Quality Scores and cost more.

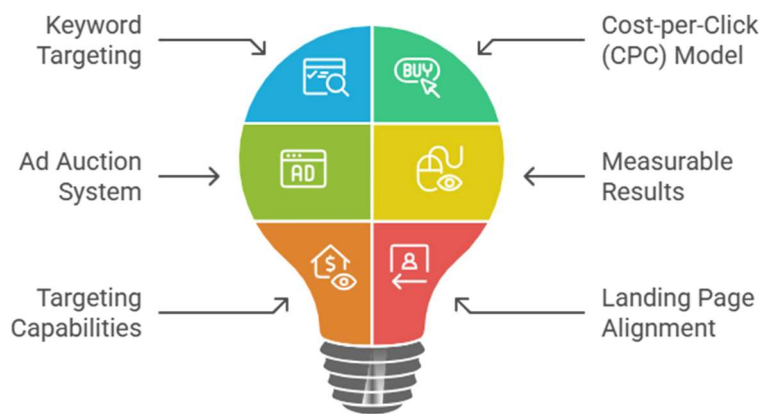


Figure 9.1

Benefits of Paid Search:

- Immediate visibility and traffic
- High intent audience targeting
- Budget flexibility and scalability
- Promotional messages and complete control of who the message goes to
- Robust analytics and conversion tracking

Unfortunately, paid search is not without its drawbacks. Costs can quickly rise in competitive verticals, and performance is largely determined by campaign structure, bid management and ongoing optimizations. Poorly run campaigns are a great way to waste your budget without achieving any real ROI.

For paid search marketing to be effective, advertisers must understand keywords, audience behavior, ad markets and bidding tactics. And when you include frequent testing and performance gauging: paid search can evolve into the purchase driver to build new customers and brand online.

9.1.2 Structure of Google Ads: Campaigns, Ad Groups, Ads

The Google Ads system is structured around a hierarchy and enables advertisers to manage campaigns neatly. Familiarity with this structure will help make account management, budget maintenance and performance tuning much more efficient.

There are three things you should know about a Google Ads account: Campaigns, Ad Groups, and Ads. Every level exists for a reason and influences the targeting, serving and tracking of ads.

Campaigns: The Strategic Layer

At the highest level, a campaign is an overarching advertising goal. A campaign has its own budget and targeting settings, bidding strategy, and (if applicable) ad format type (such as Text ads, Shopping ads, Video ads, etc.). Campaigns are used to:

- Set daily or monthly budgets
- Define geographic and language targeting
- Choosing bidding method (manual CPC, target CPA, maximize conversions)
- Schedule when ads are shown
- Choose ad networks and devices

For instance, a retailer could have different SEO initiatives for branded terms, holiday shopping season promotions and product groupings such as shoes, accessories or electronics.

Ad Groups: The Organizational Layer

Inside each campaign there's one or several ad groups. Ad groups enable advertisers to structure and categorize sets of keywords and ads around a certain theme or product. Each ad group contains:

- Keywords that prompt the ads
- An ad or ads specifically written for those keywords

Ad groups are an aid to relevance between search queries, ad copy and landing pages. So for instance, if you're running a campaign for athletic wear, one ad group could specialize in promoting "running shoes" while another aims at "yoga pants." Maintaining really well themed ad groups is great for Quality Score and relevancy of the advertisement.

Ads: The Creative Layer

The bottom of the hierarchy includes the ad itself—the piece of content that a user sees on the search engine results page. The search ad is what you see on the search engine when it pop ups.

- Headlines (up to three)
- Descriptions (up to two)
- Display URL
- Ad extensions (sitelinks, callouts, structured snippets)

We utilize Responsive Search Ads in Google Ads, which enables dynamic mixing and matching of multiple headlines and descriptions. This type of layout allows the system to experiment with different options and then feed you those that work best.

Key Structural Best Practices:

- Organize your campaigns and ad groups closely by product or theme
- Relevance by keyword, ad copy and landing pages.
- Create uniform nomenclature for large accounts and adhere to it
- Use ad extensions to increase CTR and visibility
- See what is working and not at each level and adjust accordingly.

A well-organized Google Ads account results in more accurate performance tracking, less challenging optimization and savvy use of budget. Unorganised campaigns is a good way to make your life difficult and spend the budget for no purpose - except for flights.

9.1.3 How Google Ads Auction Works

The Google Ads auction is how your ads get to the search engine results page (SERP), where they are showcased, in what order, and above all for which price? This real-time auction takes place each time a user performs a search that results in ads. You need to know how this shopping auction operates in order to drive the best performance, budgets and ROI.

Key Parts of Google Ads Auction:

Eligibility

When a user initiates a search, Google runs through its pool of advertisers to locate all ads that have keywords matching the search term. Only ads with keywords matching the search query will participate in the auction.

Ad Rank

Google uses a metric, Ad Rank, to determine where an ad appears in the results. Ad Rank is calculated with the following equation:

$$\text{Ad Rank} = \text{Amount Bid} \times \text{Quality Score} + \text{Impact of Ad Extensions/Format}$$

This takes it out of the hands of the highest bidder, who doesn't necessary take possession of top slot. Instead, placement is determined by a bid-quality combination.

Quality Score

Quality Score is a number between 1 and 10 that Google gives to you for the following reasons: Quality Score is given by Google, and it runs from 1-10.

- Expected click-through rate (CTR)
- Ad relevance to the keyword
- Landing page experience

A high Quality Score reduced CPC, and a better position for an ad, even at a lower bid.

Cost-per-Click (CPC)

Advertisers do not necessarily pay their highest bid, either. Instead, they pay just a little more than the next highest Ad Rank below them. This is known as the second-price auction setting.

$$\text{CPC} = (\text{Ad Rank of the competitor below} / \text{Your Quality Score}) + \$0.01$$

Ad Extensions and Format Impact

Ad extensions like sitelinks or callouts help drive better ad rankings in search. These can help visibility and CTR, which impact Ad Rank.

Auction Time Factors

All of these auctions are competitive and weigh competing factors, such as:

- User's location
- Device type
- Time of day
- Previous search behavior

These environmental aspects ensure that ads are sampled on a relevant set of users.

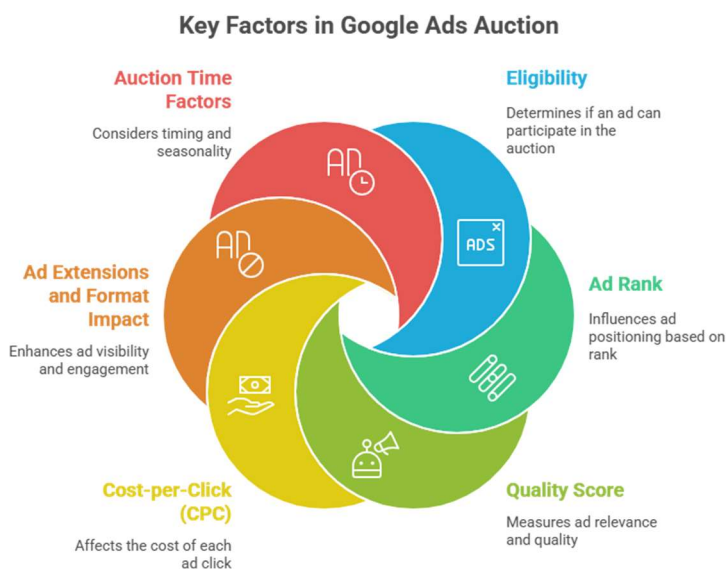


Figure 9.2

How to Win at Auction:

- Increase ad quality and relevance with closely related ad groups

- Make sure landing pages are lightning fast, easy to use on mobile and consistent with ad copy
- Use A/B testing to increase CTR and Quality Score
- Select the right bidding methods according to campaign objectives

Did you know?

“You can appear higher than a competitor in Google Ads even if you have lower bids than them by increasing your Quality Score, which includes factors like keyword and ad relevance or the user’s landing page experience.”

By knowing the auction system, advertisers can make more informed decisions about bidding tactics, budget planning and campaign configuration. It’s how ads are delivered so that they can reach the perfect audience at the perfect moment in time — and do so efficiently.

9.2 Types of Google Ads

9.2.1 Search Ads

These are the default ad format found in Google Ads. When users search for keywords of the advertiser on the Search Engine Results Page (SERP), these ads will show up. Search Ads can be very good for demand-based intent as they appear to users who are in the middle of searching for information about products or services.

Key Characteristics of Search Ads:

Intent-Driven Advertising

Search Ads take advantage of user intent. If a user types in “best running shoes under 100,” then you can get ads on the top or bottom of the SERP that reflect those words. This provides for more opportunities of engagement and conversion.

Pay-Per-Click (PPC) Model

The best thing is, advertisers get billed when people either like or click on the ad, so its cost-effective and you can actually measure your results. The real CPC (cost-per-click) is calculated by Google Ads and depends on the bidding value and Quality Score.

Ad Formats

Ad Search can have three content types:

- Headlines (up to 3)
- Descriptions (up to 2)
- Display URL

- Ad extensions (like sitelinks, callouts, structured snippets, location etc.)

Advantages of Search Ads:

- High-intent targeting
- Clear performance metrics
- Scalable budget options
- Quick visibility in SERPs

Best Practices:

- Tighten ad groups for relevancy
- Craft ad copy that matches user intent and keyword context
- Embed high powered calls to action (e.g., Buy Now, Get a Quote)
- Use ad extensions to Improve Click Through rates

(Search Ads are especially effective for lead generation, direct-response marketing and time-sensitive promotions.) They're typically the backbone of any Google Ads play, especially for companies that need to capture customers who are already searching for their product or service.

9.2.2 Display Ads

Display Ads are image-based ads that show on the GDN, which is made up of more than two million websites and apps, including Google's own properties like YouTube and Gmail. Search Ads vs Display: while search ads serve to specific queries, display ads are disruptive and appear to users browsing content instead of actively searching for something.

Key Features of Display Ads:

Visual Appeal

Display Ads Display ads are banners, images or videos that come in various shapes and sizes. They are static images, animated graphics or responsive display ads that adapt to different placements.

Audience Targeting Options

Here are a few ways from Google to target individuals on the Display Network:

- Affinity Audiences – These are audiences that demonstrate a long-term passion on topics such as travel, fitness

- In-Market Audiences = Users that are actively researching for a type of product/service
- Custom Segments: Based on keywords, URLs or apps
- Remarketing: Reaching people that you've previously engaged with who visited your website or used your app

Flexible Placements

Advertisers have the choice whether to automatically place their ads, or pick websites, apps and channels where they want them to run.

Benefits of Display Ads:

- Wide distribution throughout multiple content platforms
- Great for brand awareness and top-funnel marketing
- Average CPC is lower than Search Ads
- Visually engaging and versatile

Challenges and Considerations:

- Below- Average Conversion Rates: With respect to Search Ads
- Ad fatigue risk -users are passive recipients
- Requires strong creative assets

Display Ads works best for retargeting, brand recognition and remaining top-of-mind in the minds of your potential customers until they are ready to convert. The best method to use is that images are simple, information is brief and targeting is on point in order not to lose unnecessary impressions.

9.2.3 Video Ads (YouTube)

Video Ads are a type of ad format which can be created with Google Ads and is distributed through YouTube and the Google Video Partners network. YouTube Video Ads With thousands of monthly active users on YouTube, Video Ads deliver high-impact ways to reach out to your audience in a storytelling and visual manner.

Types of Video Ads:

Skippable In-Stream Ads

These precede, accompany or follow YouTube videos and can be skipped after 5 seconds.

And, advertisers are only charged if a person watches 30 seconds (or the full video if shorter) or interacts with the ad.

Non-Skippable In-Stream Ads

These are 15 seconds or less, and they have to be watched before the viewer can get to the real video.

Bumper Ads

Six-second, bumper ads that were optimized for reach and frequency. Perfect as short of brand messages or reminders etc.

In-Feed Video Ads

These are displayed in search results, with related videos or on the YouTube homepage. They beckon users to click and watch.

Benefits of Video Ads:

- High engagement rates
- Good for storytelling and branding
- Strong visual and audio impact
- Reach users across devices

Targeting Options:

- Demographics (age, gender, parental status)
- Interests (custom or predefined)
- Keywords and placements
- Remarketing audiences

Best Practices:

- Hook them in the first 5 seconds
- Include branding early and often
- Optimize for mobile viewing
- Use clear calls to action

Brand Awareness / Product discovery Video Ad Formats are especially effective for branding and launching products (they are also a great way to re-engage users at various funnel stages). They can also be used with remarketing lists to drive conversions by serving up tailored messaging to vital potential customers.

9.2.4 Shopping Ads

There is another specialized type of ad that has been created for online retail known as Shopping Ads. These are product ads that appear right in Google search results with a photo + title of the product, price and brand & merchant. They display pretty much at the top of the SERP (usually in a slider/casrousel manner) and on the Shopping tab- among other places via Google's Display Network.

How Shopping Ads Work:

Product Feed

Merchants upload a formatted data feed of their products to Google Merchant Center. This feed has features such as product title, description, image, price, availability and GTIN.

Campaign Setup in Google Ads

Once the feed is approved, advertisers can build Shopping campaigns with multiple ad groups that are divided into different product categories or performance.

Automatic Targeting

Shopping Ads, unlike Search Ads, do not work based on traditional keyword targeting. It does this without any keywords; Google only matches user queries to product data in the feed.

Key Features:

- Product-focused visual presentation
- CPC-based bidding model
- Shopping campaign improvements including more controls and dimensions

Benefits of Shopping Ads:

- High visibility and user intent
- Higher CTR (automatically due to being visual)
- Immediate product comparison across competitors
- Detailed performance reporting by product

Optimization Tips:

- Use high-quality images
- Include keywords in product titles and descriptions

- Ensure pricing and stock is current
- Segment campaigns by product performance

Shopping Ads are one of the most efficient ways to attract potential customers and boost online sales. Their capacity for highlighting product details early in the sales funnel minimizes friction in the buying process, by cutting out low-intent clicks.

9.2.5 Performance Max Campaigns

Performance Max (PMax) is a fully-automated, goal-based campaign type in Google Ads that optimizes for performance across all of Google's inventory—Search, Display, YouTube, Gmail, Discover and Maps. PMax optimizes bidding, budget, audiences, creatives and placement in real time using machine learning.

How Performance Max Works:

Objective-Based Setup

Advertisers establish a specific objective (e.g., lead generation or online sales) and submit creative assets, audience signals and product feeds (if applicable).

Asset Groups

PMax doesn't have traditional ad groups but asset groups which are composed by images, videos, headlines, descriptions, logos and more. Google will build and test the permutations automatically.

Automated Targeting and Bidding

This system leverages Google's AI to deliver ads to the most relevant audience segments across channels by using Smart Bidding strategies like Maximize Conversions or Target ROAS.

Benefits of Performance Max:

- Streamlined campaign management
- Your campaign will be consistent across all Google properties
- Machine learning optimization at scale
- Enhanced reach and conversion potential

Challenges and Considerations:

- Limited insights into placement and keyword performance
- Not as much manual control as in standard campaigns
- Needs to listen to the creativity and data voltages.

Best Practices:

- Offer a variety of top-quality assets for testing
- Specify audience signals to machine learning
- Conversion tracking and value based bidding It is an absolute must to use a tool that allows you to track conversions having enabled value-based bidding.
- Check performance and use exclusion settings when necessary

Performance Max is great for advertisers who want to promote their performance at scale with limited manual overhead. It's for those who already have good conversion tracking and varied creative content.

Activity: Google Ads Campaign Simulation

Title: Create and Classify Campaign Types

In this exercise, students will be given a variety of marketing situations – for example they might need to launch a product, retarget past site visitors or increase brand awareness for a service-based company. According to the objectives, they will choose the most appropriate Google Ads campaign (Search, Display, Video Shopping or Performance Max) and explain why it is that one. They will then provide the framework of the campaign including targeting, ad format and bid strategy. This will allow students to use the theory and practice it in real life where, where, this promotion will justify decision making as well in respect of paid media planning.

9.3 Budgeting, Bidding Strategies and Quality Score

9.3.1 Setting Budgets for Google Ads

Budgeting Form the Bedrock of a successful management for Google Ads campaigns. It has a direct impact on how far, how visible and how well your campaign performs. Because a great budget spends the advertiser's dollars as efficiently as possible on targeting its marketing objectives, whether that is building brand awareness, generating leads or making sales.

Budgets in Google Ads are campaign-level settings that dictate the maximum amount of money an advertiser is willing to spend, on average, each day. Google could spend slightly more than its daily budget on days with higher traffic, but it'll make sure that in a 30-day period you won't exceed the amount of money you'd expect to pay for 30.4 days (your daily budget multiplied by average number of days in a month).

Key Considerations in Budget Setting:

Campaign Goals

Various goals imply various budget distributions. A brand awareness campaign will also optimize toward impressions or potential reach, while a lead generation campaign optimizes for cost per acquisition (CPA) and conversions.

Cost-per-Click (CPC) and Industry Benchmarks

Advertisers should look up the average CPC of the keywords being targeted. In industries like finance or legal or insurance, CPCs can be exponentially higher and you need a much larger budget in order to compete.

Target Audience and Geography

Anything that is national or larger will need much more budget to get into the merely good numbers for impressions and clicks.

Volume and Keyword Match Types

High-volume keywords consume budget quickly. [Broad match keywords] This will drive up your volume of traffic significantly, but it can result in clicks that are not targeted, siphoning off budget faster. This may protect blowing their budget with this amount involving as well.

Test and Learn Phase

Early trials are commonly necessary for new campaigns. An elastic budget is advised, since it allows to aggregate data about performance first in helping determine whether to increase or improve on spending.

Shared Budgets

There are shared budgets in Google Ads that provide a budget for different campaigns to use. This is helpful for advertisers who wish to optimize their spend across evergreen or other closely related campaigns without manually controlling each one.

Budget Management Best Practices:

- Begin with a modest budget and tailor it according to performance.
- Keep a watch on the daily spend and optimize according to the campaign KPIs.
- Utilize automated rules that pause or increase spending at certain times of day or week.
- Evaluate lost impression share due to budget to find areas for expansion.

At the end of the day, budget making is not a single act. It needs to be constantly evaluated in light of performance trends, seasonality and shifting business priorities. A

flexible and data-driven budgeting strategy helps maintain campaign performance in the long term enabling a strong ROI.

9.3.2 Bidding Strategies (Manual CPC, Enhanced CPC, Target CPA, Target ROAS)

Bidding tactics in Google Ads dictate how you pay for people interacting with your ads. It's important to choose the right bidding strategy as it can affect where your ad is shown and how much you'll pay.

efficiency, and overall campaign outcomes. Google has both manual as well as automatic bidding available to its advertisers, enabling them to tailor their bidding strategy based on custom marketing objectives including clicks, conversions or return on ad spend.

Manual CPC (Cost-Per-Click)

With Manual CPC, advertisers can bid a maximum amount they are willing to pay for each keyword or ad group. It allows you to have complete control over how much you are willing to pay on every click.

Advantages:

- Complete control over keyword-level bids
- Good for advertisers with very specific bidding requirements

Limitations:

- Time-consuming to manage at scale
- No assistance from Google's machine learning to improve performance

Enhanced CPC (eCPC)

It's not a fully automated bidding strategy like ECPC. It begins with manual bids and optimizes them on the fly based on a conversion's likelihood. Google could bid higher or lower bids based on signals such as where the user is, what device they are using, and when they are searching.

Advantages:

- Mixes manual handling and AI optimization
- Boost your conversion rates without going fully automated

Limitations:

- Less control than Manual CPC
- Still requires regular monitoring

Target CPA (Cost-Per-Acquisition)

1 Target CPA is a Smart Bidding strategy where Google automatically sets your bids to help get as many conversions as possible at or below your target acquisition cost.

Advantages:

- Complete automation for your desired CPA
- Saves the time and make use of historical data in optimizing

Limitations:

- Requires enough historical conversion data
- Temperature values may vary in low volume campaigns

4. Target ROAS (Return on Ad Spend)

1 The strategy automatically adjusts bids to get the most conversion value at your set target return on ad spend (ROAS). It's great for e-commerce or businesses that have different revenue per conversion.

Advantages:

- Emphasis on value, not volume
- Useful for scaling profitable campaigns

Limitations:

- Requires a lot of conversion data for it to work well
- May result in less volume if your target ROAS is too high

Additional Automated Strategies Include:

- Maximize Clicks: Tries to generate as many clicks as possible for your budget.
- Maximize Conversions: Tries to get the most conversions regardless of individual CPA.
- Maximize conversion value: Optimizes for total conversion value against spend.

The right bidding strategy for you will depend on:

- Business objectives (awareness vs. conversion)
- Campaign type (Search, Display, Shopping)
- Available conversion data
- Budget size and flexibility

Did you know?

“Google Ads can optimize your bids in the auction on a moment-by-moment basis across various signals like device type, time of day or choice of digital content up to 100 times-per-second — even when you’re using manual and/or semi-automated bidding strategies such as Enhanced CPC.”

The right bidding strategy can make a significant difference in overall campaign profitability, so be sure to review and adjust bids regularly.

9.3.3 Understanding and Improving Quality Score

Quality Score is a measure used by Google Ads to estimate the relevance and quality of your ads, keywords and landing pages. It's a big factor in your ad rank and cost-per-click (CPC). Higher Quality Scores can result in more powerful ad positions, and cheaper costs, so it is a key element of campaign optimization.

Components of Quality Score:

Expected Click-Through Rate (CTR)

This quantifies the probability that your ad will actually get clicked when shown. It is determined by historical performance* and the goodness of fit between an ad and its keyword.

Ad Relevance

This is evaluating how well your ad relates to the intent of the user’s search query. By optimizing the ad copy targeting a very specific and appropriate audience, this portion is made better.

Landing Page Experience

Google considers if the landing page is providing value, navigable and related to the ad and keyword. Here, the page speed, mobile friendliness and caliber of your content all play crucial roles.

Quality Score is ranked on a scale of 1 to 10, with 10 being the best. It's applied at the keyword level and represents how well that keyword is performing in its ad group.

Why Quality Score Matters:

- The higher the score, the lower the CPC
- Get better ad placement at lower cost
- Increased ad visibility in competitive auctions

Strategies to Improve Quality Score:

Keyword Organization

Combine keywords into highly themed ad groups so that each ad closely matches the search intent.

Ad Copy Optimization

Use high level keywords in titles, descriptions and headlines. Ensure that the messaging is exciting and takes action to raise CTR.

Landing Page Alignment

Make sure that the landing page follows through on what is promised in the ad. Align page content with keyword intent and cater for mobile usability.

Improve Page Speed

Pages that take forever to load are bad user experiences and even worse for a Quality Score. Utilize tools to quantify and improve load times.

Use of Negative Keywords

Add negative keywords to filter out irrelevant traffic. Relevance and CTR are better (which is great for the Quality Score).

A/B Testing Ads

Run different ads against one another to see which ones do best. CTR and ad relevance can even be affected by fairly subtle differences in phrasing.

Enhancement of Quality Score is not a project, it's an ongoing journey. It's a process that involves tracking performance, testing changes and making the experience as smooth as possible from ad click to sale.

Ad-Rank loving advertisers see more efficient campaigns, better ROI and a competitive advantage in the ad auction market place.

9.4 Attribution Models

9.4.1 Last-Click Attribution

Last-click is the most popular model, and it's also very easy to count in an analytics or advertising platform out of the box. In this model, the sooner someone interacts with your company in the lead process, the more credit is given to that touchpoint for conversion. So any number of prior steps doesn't matter, only the last touch point before the convert matters.

For instance, if a consumer clicks on a display ad, then a social media post, followed by a paid search and finally converts through clicking on the website directly, that last action of clicking directly to access the site would be claimed by the direct channel.

Advantages of Last-Click Attribution:

- Single and compound flow regimes, since the simple solutions are easy to implement, interpret and...
- Useful for determining which channels or campaigns are bringing in the most sales
- Great for businesses that have short sales cycles and decision-making happens more fast-paced

Limitations:

- Disregards the worth of top- and mid-funnel engagements
- Under-represents the contributions of brand-building activities and multi-channel marketing
- Misrepresents what the most effective channels are

Since of course these actions are more prevalent closer to the end, the last-click attribute also skews towards channels like paid search and direct traffic. This model can therefore cause marketers to overspend or overinvest on bottom-of-funnel tactics while deeming awareness and engagement campaigns (i.e., those that introduce the brand) as less important, despite the significant role they play further up the funnel.

Use Cases:

- Small businesses or campaigns that have little to no ability to track results.
- Short direct customer journey use cases
- Budget driven campaigns focused on quick RoI

Its not elegant, yet last-click attribution thrives as a result of the simplicity and legacy hooks in to ad platforms that spread cross whole businesses. But for companies with longer or more intricate buyer's journeys, using only last-click attribution could leave large gaps in your understanding of where the whole conversion path is going.

9.4.2 First-Click Attribution

First-Click Attribution The practice of attributing 100% This is the method wherein we attributed all conversion credit to the first interaction a customer has with a brand or marketing channel. In this model, the first touchpoint is considered to be the most

important since it exposes the user to the brand and starts them on their conversion path.

For example, if a customer finds the company through social media advertising, clicks through an email campaign, views a re-targeting display ad and then makes a purchase off of paid search, that first touchpoint – the social media ad – gets all of the credit for driving the conversion.

Advantages of First-Click Attribution:

- Identifies the channels that are effective in generating initial interest
- Good for tracking brand awareness campaigns
- Supports early-funnel optimization strategies

Limitations:

- Not taking into account other touchpoints, that assist in nurturing and converting the lead
- Disproportionate focus on top-of-funnel activity may drive incorrect budget allocation
- Fails to consider how users move through the funnel

First-click attribution is especially good for identifying what marketing channels are effectively driving new users into the funnel. But ignoring the intermediate and final touchpoints, it possibly can not reflect the actual conversion process.

Use Cases:

- Initiatives to drive new traffic through awareness creation
- Release of new product or service
- Measuring the success of top-of-funnel channels, such as display and social media

Whilst whole, first-click attribution may be restrictive by itself. Comparing particles If you want a more in-depth perspective of the customer journey, you need to compare it with other attribution models.

9.4.3 Linear Model

Chains of Attributions The linear attribution model assigns the same amount of credit to each touchpoint that is part of the conversion path. If a buyer touches three or five or ten channels before converting, they each get equal credit.

For instance, if a person clicks an organic search result and then a display ad and then sees a social media post, which was followed by clicking on a paid search ad that led to

the conversion — each of these four touchpoints would be attributed with 25% of the conversion credit.

Advantages of Linear Attribution:

- Takes an equal view of all contact types
- Puts a \$ value on every leg of the customer journey
- Useful for complex, multi-touch conversion paths

Limitations:

- Values all touchpoints equally, which may be unrealistic
- May place too much weight on low-impact touchpoints and insufficient weight on high-impact ones
- Not suitable for optimization without finer channel separation

“Linear attribution does a good job of showing how marketing adds up.” It reinforces the notion that conversions are not a result of one single interaction, but via an orchestrated effort of different channels.

Use Cases:

- Mid-funnel initiatives that relate to continuous user engagement
- B2B or high consideration B2C industries with long sale cycles

learning about channel synergy and collaborative impact

Of particular value for the use when you're trying to encourage peer-2-peer work between disparate channel owners. However, marketers need to take care in evaluating channel-level impact to prevent broad-brush assumptions.

9.4.4 Time Decay Model

Time decay attribution is a model that assigns more credit to touchpoints closer in time to the conversion. The rationale is that recent interactions have more influence than past ones in guiding a decision.

Credit drops off exponentially with distance from the point of conversion. For instance, if a user clicked an email campaign two weeks ago and then a paid search ad today before converting, the paid search ad would get most of the credit.

Advantages of Time Decay Attribution:

- Puts a face on the dealings that ultimately led to the conversion

- Takes into account previous touchpoints but less and less so.
- Complements the remarketing and retargeting campaigns well

Limitations:

- Can undervalue important early-stage interactions
- Biased toward bottom-of-funnel tactics
- Complex to calculate manually

This model is most effective when lead nurturing over time is key to the sales strategy and retargeting has a significant impact on conversions. It acknowledges that at each waypoint along the journey, something is accomplished but places greater emphasis on the finish.

Use Cases:

- Email drip campaigns or nurture series
- complex, multi-stage buying journey with remarketing pubs running these sites are not responsible for the people on them.
- Long decision process and significant late funnel influence

Lead generation companies and sales factories that are follow-up or closing-stage heavy based tend to like time decay.

9.4.5 Position-Based Model

The position-based attribution model, or U-shaped attribution, attributes 40% of the credit to both the first and last interaction, while spreading the remaining 20% equally between touchpoints in between.

It recognizes that likely the first interaction and last interactions are most impactful: the first for getting awareness, and the last for closing business, while at the same time giving credit to everything in between as a stage on the way to that conversion.

Advantages of Position-Based Attribution:

- Equitable mix of acquisition and conversion touch points
- Recognizes the influence of mid-funnel touchpoints
- Provides more intelligence than just first- or last-click

Limitations:

- Needs extensive monitoring of numerous touchpoints
- Can simplify complex customer journeys too much

- Fixed distribution points will not suit all sales models

Use Cases:

- E-commerce brands that have many marketing touchpoints
- Lead generation funnels that have awareness and closing campaigns.
- Multi-channel campaign analysis for complete full-funnel optimisation

It's a common model for advertisers who want to assign value to exposure or seeing the brand — (insert and organic) discovery as well as last touch just taking the value that's left.

9.4.6 Data-Driven Attribution

The model with the most advanced system of attribution that Google Ads provide is the data-driven attribution (DDA). It applies machine learning and historical data to credit touchpoints in a way consistent with their actual contribution to conversions. Unlike rules-based models, DDA uses user behavior and conversion patterns to understand which touchpoints contributed the most.

Key Features:

- Optimizable attribution weights using performance data
- Updates itself with minimal delay due to new data capture
- Applies account-specific conversion paths for precision

Advantages of Data-Driven Attribution:

- Specific and very accurate to the account profile
- Minimizes bias towards any channel or touchpoint
- Evolves to consumer behavior, which changes over time

Limitations:

- Need high volume of conversions for reliable insights.
- Limited visibility into how precise weights are determined
- Not always accessible to all advertisers at every level of data accord

Use Cases:

- High volume e-commerce or lead generating sites
- Complex, multi-channel marketing ecosystems

- Advertisers with large volumes of conversion data and sophisticated analytics requirements

With the most accurate view of what's driving your conversions let data driven attribution take control; although accuracy will depend on quantity and quality of data. It generates even more actionable insights for advertisers with strong data, helping guide decisions around where to allocate budget and optimize.

Knowledge Check: Attribution Models

Q1. Which model gives all credit to the final touchpoint before conversion?

- a) First-click
- b) Time decay
- c) Last-click
- d) Linear

Q2. Which attribution model gives equal credit to all touchpoints?

- a) Linear
- b) Position-based
- c) Last-click
- d) Time decay

Q3. Which model emphasizes both first and last interactions?

- a) First-click
- b) U-shaped
- c) Linear
- d) Time decay

Q4. What is a key requirement for Data-Driven Attribution?

- a) Email list
- b) High ad spend

- c) Enough conversion data
- d) Manual tracking

Q5. Time decay attribution is most suitable for:

- a) Immediate purchases
- b) One-time clicks
- c) Multi-touch retargeting
- d) Brand awareness

9.5 Summary

⌘ With paid search marketing, businesses are able to target users who looking for product and services by paying focus keywords.

⌘ Google Ad Words uses a structure of Campaigns, ad groups, and ads for organized and strategic implementation.

⌘ Google Ads auction works such that ad position is based on bid, quality of the ad or its performance but not simply who bids most.

⌘ There are different kinds of Google Ads such as the Search, Display, Video, Shopping and Performance Max ads that have varying usage that would fit to specific campaign goals.

⌘ Google Ads – Budgeting in the campaign level where you can adjust a number of settings involving daily budget spend and what part of them should be allocated to marcomms.

⌘ Bidding techniques can be anything between manual (Manual CPC) and machine learning based (Target CPA, Target ROAS) based on business targets and data availability.

⌘ Quality score is one of the most important factors as it correlates with ad performance, and can be affected by your ad relevance, expected CTR & landing page experience.

♣ At the heart of it all is attribution, which allows marketers to see what touchpoints in the customer journey are driving conversions.

⌘ For instance, models such as Last-Click and First-Click give all credit to one interaction but others (e.g., Linear and Position-Based) present a more even view.

⌘ Decay and Algorithmic Attribution –use dynamic behavior based insights featuring the weighing of touchpoints through time, actual performance.

⌘ Selecting the appropriate attribution model is a necessity for accurate ROI reporting and campaign optimization.

⌘ Clients get return on investment with Google Ads by monitoring and optimizing campaigns, then linking strategies to campaign goals/audience trends.

9.6 Key Terms

Paid Search – The practice of advertising on search engines, for which businesses pay each time their ad is clicked.

Google Ads – Google’s product for online advertising which serves search, display, video and shopping ads.

Campaign – The highest tier in Google Ads, which contains ad groups and sets a budget and target.

Ad Group – A group of ads and keywords in a campaign, designed around the same theme.

Quality Score – A score that measures how relevant and high quality your ads and landing pages are.

Manual CPC – A bidding system in which the advertiser manually assigns max cost-per-click bids.

Target CPA – A smart bidding option which optimizes conversions at a cost per acquisition determined by advertiser.

Ad Auction – The action of selecting an ad in response to one of your keywords.

Attribution model – A rule or rules that determine how conversion credits are assigned to a touchpoint.

Last-Click Attribution - Attributes full credit to the last user interaction prior to conversion.

Performance Max – This is a campaign type within Google Ads that tries to automate bidding and placements across all of Google's media offerings.

Machine Learning-Based Attribution – Assigns appropriate value to touchpoints based on their actual contribution to conversions.

9.7 Descriptive Questions

Discuss How Campaign Structure and Set-Up Can Impact Google Ads Performance.

What is the difference between Manual CPC and Target ROAS?

Explain in your own words how Quality Score impacts the Google Ads auction and CPC.

Talk about the varieties of Google Ads and when each is best to use.

What is the downside of using a Last-Click Attribution model for user behavior?

What advantage does the Time Decay model offer to campaigns that have long sales cycles?

What's Data-Driven Attribution? Discuss its benefits compared to rule-based models.

Why is it beneficial to think of your budget in terms of the relationship between budget and campaign goals?

9.8 References

1. Google Ads Help Center. (2023). Understanding the Google Ads Auction.
2. Moz. (2023). Beginner's Guide to Paid Search Marketing.
3. WordStream. (2023). Google Ads Bidding Strategies Explained.
4. HubSpot. (2023). What is a Quality Score in Google Ads?
5. Search Engine Journal. (2023). Attribution Models: A Marketer's Guide.
6. Think with Google. (2023). Data-Driven Advertising and Attribution.

Answer Key to Knowledge Check (9.4)

1. c) Last-click
2. a) Linear
3. b) U-shaped
4. c) Enough conversion data
5. c) Multi-touch retargeting

9.9 Case Study

Title: How Myntra 'sews' up Google Ads for seasonal campaigns Hello folks!

Myntra, the top fashion e-commerce platform in India, experiences intense competition for seasonal sales especially during festive seasons such as Diwali, New Year and End-Of-Season Sale (EOSS). Myntra, with a variety of thousands of brands and categories, uses an advanced Google Ads strategy to increase their visibility in order to attract quality traffic and maximize revenue during peak times.

This case study examines how Myntra meets strategic challenges associated with seasonal campaign planning, execution, and optimization on Google Ads.

Problem 1: Managing Seasonal Budget Assignment to Categories is Not Easy

Seasonal events tend to drive high traffic, not all product categories are equal in their conversion. Myntra had to find a way to dynamically apportion budget to high performing categories such as men's casual wear, women's ethnic wear and footwear during peak sales periods while cutting waste in unrequired areas with low demand.

Solution:

Myntra used [Performance Max campaign formats for] top categories and then reallocated budget on a daily basis based on real-time reporting. These campaigns utilized several assets (video, banner and product feeds) to showcase products in Search, Display, YouTube and Discover.

Myntra also established shared budgets for campaign clusters and used automated rules to raise budget caps in accordance with ROAS thresholds and conversion volume on a specific number of orders.

Impact:

- Top 3 categories: 23% higher conversion rate
 - Budget efficiency up 35% on peak traffic days
 - When it really mattered, the ability to move money between segments in real-time avoided budget wastage
- Engage & ConvertReady to convert - making conversion easier from the start.

Problem 2: Invisible of Competitive Keywords during Sale Time

CPCs peaked as every large brand advertised during the sales forcing Myntra to bid aggressively to hold onto top positions for high intent search terms like "men's t-shirts sale" or "Diwali offers ethnic wear".

Solution:

Myntra leveraged Target Impression Share bidding for their branded and high intent KWs. This helped ensure ads showed up as the first result on SERP during high-

competition time periods. For their long-tail and product-specific queries, they employed Target CPA bidding to remain cost-effective while driving conversions.

They also built SKAGs for their top performing terms to further increase relevance and Quality Score.

Impact:

- average CPC down by 18% - and sales on the rise despite heavier competition
- 42% increase in Impression Share for brand and high converting terms
- Raise Quality Score on high-priority SKAGs

PS3: Conversion Tracking and Attribution Discrepancy in Multi-Device Journeys

Many users started shopping on a mobile device, then finished on desktop — or the other way around. It resulted in lack of attribution, which made it challenging to determine the value from individual campaigns or devices and make decisions about bidding strategy.

Solution:

Myntra adopted Data-Driven Attribution (DDA) and cross-device conversion tracking, thanks to improved conversions. This gave a truer depiction of how all the touchpoints lead to sales.

Leveraging DDA learnings, Myntra refined campaign targeting and invested in channels and devices that had relatively higher assisted conversion value.

Impact:

- See multi-touch attribution paths with 30% more visibility
- Sophisticated device-level bidding delivering on a 25% increase in mobile ROAS
- Better campaign-performance estimates based on past patterns of attribution

Reflective Questions

Why Myntra used Performance Max campaigns for seasonal sales—instead of Search campaigns

How did Myntra beat CPC competition using Target Impression Share?

What were the benefits that Myntra saw after adopting Data-Driven Attribution?

How did SKAGs help you perform better on peak days?

If you were running campaigns for Myntra, what other strategies would you have experimented with in the next festive season?

Conclusion

Myntra's seasonal campaign approach reveals the potential of leveraging Google Ads features in combination with real-time data, bidding insights, and attribution-modeling. However, by addressing problems of dropping budget optimization, keyword competition and multi-device user behaviour, Myntra did everything just right during peak sales. Their adoption of automation, data-informed decision-making, and granular organization of campaigns provides lessons for any advertiser focused on high-stakes retail environments that move quickly.

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 10 V3 (2).docx

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 ATLAS SkillTech University

Document Details

Submission ID

trn:oid::3618:127531325

Submission Date

Feb 4, 2026, 6:27 PM GMT+5:30

Download Date

Feb 4, 2026, 7:02 PM GMT+5:30

File Name

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 10 V3 (2).docx

File Size

194.1 KB

24 Pages

5,635 Words

33,072 Characters

2% Overall Similarity

The combined total of all matches, including overlapping sources, for each database.

Filtered from the Report

- ▶ Bibliography
- ▶ Quoted Text
- ▶ Cited Text
- ▶ Small Matches (less than 15 words)

Match Groups

- **4 Not Cited or Quoted 2%**
 Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- **0 Missing Quotations 0%**
 Matches that are still very similar to source material
- **0 Missing Citation 0%**
 Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- **0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
 Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 2% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 1% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Integrity Flags

0 Integrity Flags for Review

No suspicious text manipulations found.

Our system's algorithms look deeply at a document for any inconsistencies that would set it apart from a normal submission. If we notice something strange, we flag it for you to review.

A Flag is not necessarily an indicator of a problem. However, we'd recommend you focus your attention there for further review.

Match Groups

- 4 Not Cited or Quoted 2%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- 0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
- 0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- 0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 2% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 1% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Top Sources

The sources with the highest number of matches within the submission. Overlapping sources will not be displayed.

- 1 Internet**
www.stepto-and-son.com <1%
- 2 Submitted works**
INholland on 2025-09-17 <1%
- 3 Internet**
icted.org.np <1%
- 4 Internet**
www.designrush.com <1%

Unit 10: Website Analytics & KPI Measurement

Learning Objectives:

1. Describe the basic web analytics concepts and its functions to track and improve digital marketing performance.
2. Analyze and understand important SEO and SEM KPIs such as organic traffic, bounce rate, conversion rate, CTR (click-through-rate), ROAS (return on ad spend).
3. Study user behavior data to understand website performance, such as page-level engagement, session duration, and conversion paths.
4. Distinguish between quantitative and qualitative web data, and utilize both in decision-making.
5. Leverage data based strategies to enhance DM campaigns while meeting business objectives.
6. Leverage analysis tools (e.g. Google Analytics and Search Console) to monitor our campaigns' and diagnose performance issues.
7. Create of actionable results from web analytics reports to drive ongoing SEO, and SEM efforts.

Content:

- 10.0 Introductory Caselet
- 10.1 Introduction to Web Analytics
- 10.2 Key SEO & SEM KPIs
- 10.3 Data-Driven Decision Making
- 10.4 Summary
- 10.5 Key Terms
- 10.6 Descriptive Questions
- 10.7 References
- 10.8 Case Study

10.0 Introductory Caselet

Title: Decoding Success in Digital - A Case Study of EcoTrek Footwear.

EcoTrek Footwear, an eco-friendly shoe company for environmentally conscious millennials, had been pouring resources into digital marketing for the past 12 months. Their campaigns were made up of a combination of SEO content, paid search ads, influencer partnerships and email marketing. As web traffic began to pick up, the leadership team was still worried, though: even with thousands of visitors a day, conversions were stagnant; bounce rates remained high.

Their marketing staff had been so enamored with the initial traffic spike that they hadn't spent much time trying to optimize.

And the content generating the most traffic organically wasn't related to the company's core product offerings. Paid campaigns were generating high click-through rates, but driving to product pages that had poor calls-to-action. Furthermore, Google Analytics conversion tracking was set up incorrectly so it was impossible to track true ROI.

After the team implemented real goal tracking, segmentation and heatmaps they were able to find specific areas where friction existed. By optimizing their landing pages, shifting budgets to the most successful channels and creating KPI dashboards, EcoTrek was starting to translate web insights into tangible business results.

It just goes to show how if you can't measure data, it's like flying blind and that it takes a deeper interpretation of the big data picture in order to help make an informed decision that will drive revenue.

Critical Thinking Question:

Where could EcoTrek have utilized Web analytics at an earlier stage of its strategy so that traffic growth was not decoupled from business performance? What specific KPIs should they have been tracking from day one and why?

10.1 Introduction to Web Analytics

10.1.1 Fundamentals of Web Analytics

Web analytics is the measurement, collection, analysis and reporting of web data for purposes of understanding and optimizing web usage. Marketers, analysts and business owners can monitor the behaviour of your users, evaluate performance with complete reports or personalized reports using different dimensions. At its simplest level, web analytics provides answers to the most important questions such as: Who is coming to your site? How did they find you? What actions are they taking? Where are they leaving?

Core Components of Web Analytics:

User Data Collection:



Data collection Web analytics systems rely on tracking codes being present on a website, however they generally also use other mechanisms to capture the data. This code collects data on user sessions, pageviews, clicks, conversions, page bounce rate, devices and referral source.

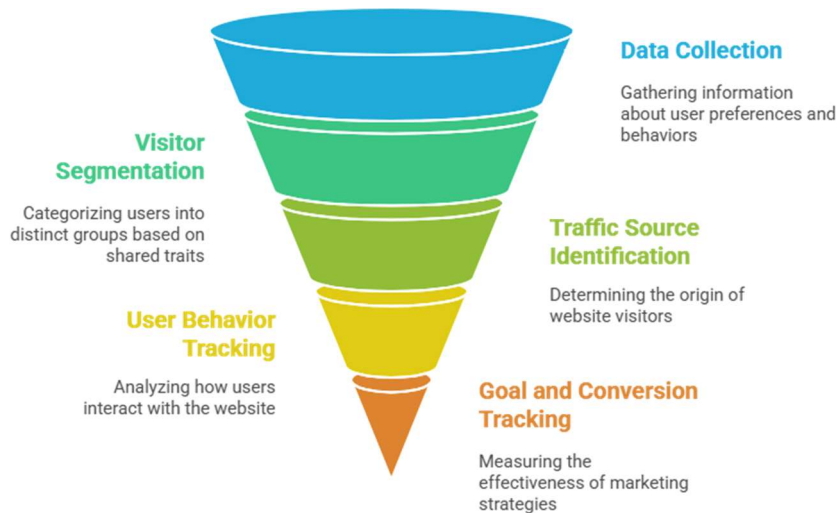


Figure 10.1

Benefits of Web Analytics:

- Improves customer journey comprehension
- Content strategy gets a dose of behavioral data
- Work on A/B testing and UX refinements
- Helps you catch things that might be causing performance issues (throw-wrong etc) early – high exit-rates when an error is thrown, slow-loading pages and the like).
- Addresses the issue within a continuous optimization context with evidence, not with instinct

Challenges in Web Analytics:

- Information Not all of this information may get through if you are using an ad blocker or have blocked cookies.
- Misconfigured goals or event tracking : this could cause some bad data

- Information overload (lacking clear KPIs) can distract

To avoid these problems you'll need to be goal-orientated in your organisation, have a structured data schema and be persistent with tracking. Web analytics when is build on the right way it is not reporting: also is a decision The plugins for Web analytics have to be both star up business that provide sustainable competitive performance on digital.

10.1.2 Google Analytics Overview

The most widely used web analytics tool is definitely Google Analytics. (file the tool employs) It enables companies to gather and analyze user interactions on websites and apps. It's our bedrock benchmark for measuring digital performance.

Key Features of Google Analytics:

Real-Time Reporting:

With its live visitor count feature you can even see who is on your website at the moment and what they are doing, including – -who's visiting right now, -your most popular pages and content performance, traffic sources, user location etc.

Audience Reports:

These reports allow you to see he following about your users: demographics, interests, behavior (new vs returning), technology used and location. The better you know your users, and the more you target.

Acquisition Reports:

This panel displays how visitors are making their way to the site in the first place— through organic search, paid ads, social media, directly typing in the URL or link referral. It is such a good record of what marketing channels actually work.

Behavior Reports:

These show us how users are interacting on our website (e.g. most visited pages, bounced off.

and exits, page speeds and user flow. It also helps you optimize site architecture and content strategies.

Conversion Tracking:

Users can create goals and funnels to track events on their website, such as sign ups, purchases or downloads. This is important to track conversions and ROI.

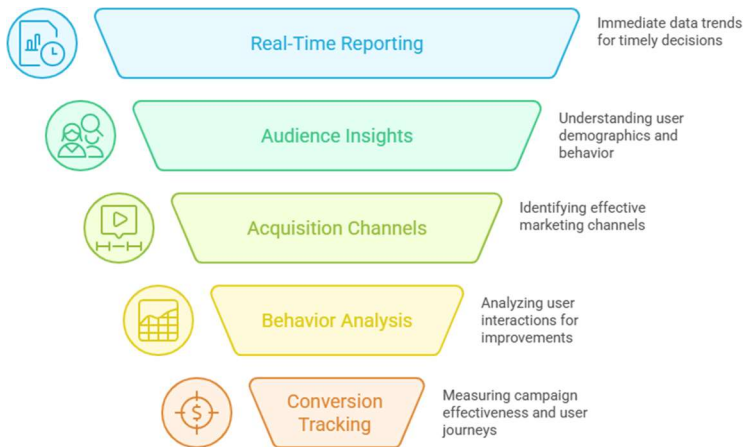


Figure 10.2

Integration Capabilities:

Limitations and Considerations:

- If have big questions — and lots of data to sample from.

Privacy and GDPR or CCPA should be considered

- Should appear to be implemented and with effective follow up audits for the quality control of data maintenance

But for all those — and more — limitations, Google Analytics is well-established in digital marketing because of how malleable, vast and deep it can be. It gives marketers the freedom to experiment, learn and optimize campaigns at scale.

10.1.3 GA4 -Differences and Features Compared to Universal Analytics

So how do the two compare? GA4 (Google Analytics 4) key – GA 4 is the newest version of Analytics, replacing UA. GA4 (for “fourth generation”) was rolled out officially in 2020, driven by a privacy-first stance that applies to a multi-platform world, including more pluses for tracking across websites and mobile apps when using advanced analytics IDs (even if cookie information isn’t there to exploit).

Key Features of GA4:

Event-Based Data Model:

Straightforward so far, right? getUsers Last we had sessions and pageviews as metrics, now in GA4 every interaction is an event.

Enhanced User Privacy Controls:

Given the increased importance of privacy and cookie restrictions, GA4 includes advanced consent modes and data retention settings to keep you compliant while still maintaining your ability to track insights.

Simplified Interface and Reporting:

“GA4 is a departure from pre-set reports which was the core of Classic GA, and instead invites users to create... “.

bespoke dashboards with the Analysis Hub. This makes the tool more expressive, but it depends on using more of the user’s limited training data.

Improved Funnel Analysis and Debugging:

With GA4, marketers can build custom funnels, bucket them by events or parameters and analyze where users are falling off. The in-system debugging feature would further assure that the implementation is correct.

Differences from Universal Analytics:

- Data Structure: GA4 is event-based UA is session-based.
- User Metrics: GA4 values active users more than total users.
- Reporting: GA4 offers the smaller number of predefined reports and favors exploration.
- Goals vs Conversions In GA4, conversions are represented not as fixed goals but rather as specific events.
- Implementation: GA4 mandates a tag implementation that differs from UA, usually via Google Tag Manager.

GA4 was built to stand the test of time in a changing world of data privacy laws and user expectations.

10.1.4 Google Search Console to Get SEO Insights

Google Search Console (GSC) is a free service offered by Google that helps you monitor and maintain your site’s presence in Google Search results.

Key Features of Google Search Console:

Performance Reports:

Ads are reported in granularity by GSC – search queries, impressions, clicks and CTR

(CTR), and average position. Users are able to filter this information by page, device, country and date range.

Coverage Reports:

These reports display the pages that have been successfully indexed by Google and those which have errors or warnings. This aids webmasters in troubleshooting crawling problems that may prevent content from appearing on our search results.

URL Inspection Tool:

To check whether a specific page has been indexed, however, it can be an excellent guide telling you what Google themselves are seeing. Users can also submit new URLs and updated URLs for re-crawling.

Sitemaps Submission:

Users may also submit XML sitemaps to assist Google in crawling the site and indexing new content.

Mobile Usability:

And GSC will alert you to mobile responsive issues like small clickable elements and content hiding off screen.

Core Web Vitals:

GSC provides information on some of the most important UX metrics — including Largest Contentful Paint (LCP), First Input Delay (FID) and Cumulative Layout Shift (CLS)—, which are what will have an effect on your position in the SERPs with Google's page experience update.

Security and Manual Actions:

GSC warns you about security problems (e.g., hacked content or spam), and manual actions from Google if guidelines for webmasters are violated.

Best Practices for Using GSC:

- Keep tabs on index coverage and correct crawl errors whenever they crop up.
- Use performance metrics to spot high-CTR keywords and optimized pages
- Request re-indexing of updated content or pages with the URL inspection tool
- Track Core Web Vitals and fix performance issues to improve UX and rankings

10.2 Key SEO & SEM KPIs

10.2.1 Click-Through Rate (CTR)



In search marketing, this often translates to how many people clicked on a search result or ad where they saw that piece of content on the Search Engine Results Page (SERP).

CTR Formula:

$$\text{CTR} = (\text{Clicks} / \text{Impressions}) * 100$$

CTR in SEO:

For natural search, CTR correlates to the attractiveness and relevancy of your listing to users. And even if a high-ranking page is clicked, low or poor meta title and description can make someone click the same entry lower in the rankings. An optimized snippet with engaging copy, rich results (such as star ratings), and keyword accuracy can have a big impact on organic CTR.

CTR in SEM:

CTR is a significant player in calculating Quality Score (a component that informs ad rank and cost-per-click in paid search). An increased CTR means your ad aligns with search intent, and you are more likely to achieve better positioning for less money.

Factors Influencing CTR:

- Headline/title relevance to the query
- The reference of numbers, emotional triggers or urgency in ad copy
- Meta descriptions, or ad extensions that clarify what the content on the landing page is about
- Search engine results page (SERP) ranking (the higher you rank, the more CTR you'll likely get from searchers)

Improving CTR:

- Test different headlines and descriptions with A/B tests
- Use ad extensions in Google Ads (ie: sitelinks, callouts, structured snippets).
- Use schema markup to for rich snippets in organic search results
- Clean up URLs to be short and sweet by targeting your keywords.

Why CTR Matters:

CTR tell you how good your (paid or organic) ads are at attracting user attention. A high CTR, on the other hand, indicates relevance to both users and algorithms – one that will increase your rankings, make your ads more visible and improve the overall performance of your campaign.

10.2.2 Bounce Rate and Dwell Time

Bounce Rate The percent of visits during which users view only a single page and then exit. It's a big indicator of user dissatisfaction or misalignment between intent and content. **Dwell Time** is the length of time a user stays on a page before going back to the SERP, but it is not directly measurable in most analytics.

Bounce Rate Formula:

$$\text{Bounce Rate} = (\text{Single-Page Visits} / \text{Total Sessions}) * 100$$

High Bounce Rate Causes:

- Irrelevant or low-quality content
- Slow-loading pages
- Misleading meta titles/descriptions
- Poor UX on mobile devices
- Overwhelming ads or pop-ups

Acceptable Bounce Rates by Industry:

- Blogs and news sites: 70–90%
- Retail and e-commerce: 20–40%
- B2B service websites: 25–55%

Dwell Time as an SEO Signal:

While not a direct metric in Google Analytics, dwell time is believed to be a ranking factor to search engines. Longer dwell times are also indicative of more engagement and relevancy, which could mean improved organic results.

Low Bounce Rate and High Dwell Time:

- Good content quality should read the search intent
- Use clear CTAs to lead users further into the website
- Optimize internal linking structure
- Optimize the site for mobiles with quick loading times.
- Use videos or interactive material for keeping your audience engaged.

Cautions:

Not that a high bounce rate is always bad. The user can find what they're looking for and leave, whether on a contact page or blog post. This makes it clear that bounce rate can only be understood in context.

10.2.3 Conversion Rate

Conversion Rate (CVR) – CVR is one of those KPIs that measures the number of visitors to your site who take an action you want them to take, whether it be a purchase, form fill, asset download or newsletter subscription. It is a direct indication of how well traffic from a website or campaign generates business results.

Conversion Rate Formula:

$$\text{Conversion Rate} = (\text{Conversions} / \text{Total Visitors}) \times 100$$

Types of Conversions:

- Macro conversions: purchases, lead submissions
- Micro conversions: Number of video views, newsletter registrations, product clicks

Conversion Rate in SEO:

SEO brings in organic traffic, and conversion rate indicates how well that traffic meets business objectives. Ranking high, with low conversion rates may suggest a misalignment of content or UX issues.

Conversion Rate in SEM:

In paid search, conversion rate is critical to assessing the performance of your ad. Google Ads Conversion tracking that offers additional visibility into ROI by keyword, ad group and campaign.

Factors Affecting Conversion Rate:

- Landing page design and clarity
- Strength of call-to-action (CTA)
- Page load speed
- User Trust & Credibility metrics such as reviews, security badges..
- The importance of the source and keyword intent of traffic

Optimizing for Higher Conversion Rates:

- Test landing pages and headlines with A/B testing
- Customize CTAs for the user's behavior
- Re-engage abandoners with retargeting ads

- Streamline forms and minimize friction on your checkout page

CRO is an amalgamation of analyzing data, understanding user behavior and implementing design best practices to improve the percentage of your website visitors taking meaningful action. It's one of the more ROI-driven fields within digital marketing.

10.2.4 ROI and Cost Metrics

Whatever the size of a campaign – whether SEM or SEO, knowing your Return on Investment (ROI) and related cost metrics is key to deciding whether you have been effective. They provide intelligence on how much money is being produced for the dollars invested and inform decisions about future budgets.

ROI Formula:

$$\text{ROI} = (\text{Revenue} - \text{Cost}) / \text{Cost} \times 100 (1)$$

Key Cost Metrics:

- Cost-Per-Click (CPC): The payment made for each click on a paid ad.
- Leads/Customer Acquisitions (CPA): The amount of money required to obtain a customer or lead.
- Cost-Per-Thousand Impressions (CPM): What it costs to run the ad 1,000 times.
- Return on Ad Spend (ROAS): Total revenue from ads divided by total spend.

Measuring ROI in SEO:

SEO is an investment that has a compounding return over time. This is taking into account traffic increase, conversions from organic and over time savings. Whilst the initial investment could be high (content, tools, audits), the long-term consistent traffic produced will boost ROI.

Measuring ROI in SEM:

With paid search campaigns, you'll see the return on investment in real time. By connecting advertising platforms to analytics and e-commerce systems, companies should be able to tie revenue back to certain campaigns, keywords and audiences.

Improving ROI:

- Focus spend on high-intent keywords
- Pause underperforming ads or audiences
- How to increase CVR through landing page optimization

- Test targeting and bidding strategies consistently

Gradual comprehension of the cost-performance is established through CPA and ROAS metrics which makes decision-making data-driven as well as prohibits money waste. Over time, the insights from these KPIs lead to more efficient and scalable campaigns.

10.2.5 Engagement Metrics (Pages/Session, Avg. Session Duration)

Engagement metrics show what users do after they click. Another two important metrics are page per session and average session duration which reflect user interest, relevance of content and navigational structure.

Pages/Session:

It describes how many pages are viewed by a user in one visit. The deeper the involvement is, and the better internal linking (higher number = more inheritance).

Average Session Duration:

This is the average time users are on the site for a session. The longer, until the next ad break only to an extent indicates that there is user engagement with the content.

Why Engagement Metrics Matter:

- Address user satisfaction and depth of content
- Describe how well a site helps users on their path_goals
- Act as indirect signals to search engines on the quality of a site

Improving Engagement Metrics:

- Leverage engaging content formats (videos, infographics, blogs)
- Add strong internal links and clear site navigation
- Suggest articles or products of interest
- No Intrusive ads or pop-up that are hinder to user experience
- Accelerate page speed and improve mobile usability

Factors Reducing Engagement:

- Poor content relevance or formatting
- Technical problems (broken links, slow-loading pages)
- Lack of intuitive site structure

While these measures aren't conversions, they set an important context. A high engagement site is also that much more likely to convert, have better organic ranks and retain the user over time.

Activity: KPI Mapping Exercise

Title: Synchronizing Metrics with Marketing Goals

In this exercise, participants are presented with a list of marketing goals (such as 'Deepen Brand Engagement', 'Lead Quality' etc.) and an inventory of KPIs.

In pairs or small groups they need to pair each objective with the most appropriate KPIs (for example, CTR, bounce rate, ROI or pages/session). They explain why they made the choices for their KPIs and show what strategy would be based on tracking these KPIs.

10.3 Data-Driven Decision Making

10.3.1 Importance of Data in Marketing Decisions

Data-driven decision making (DDDM) is a strategy where you make your decisions based on data analysis and interpretation. It can be difficult to make sense of all that data your customers generate every minute, between websites, social media sites, email campaigns, paid advertising and customer interactions in an age where companies are drowning in data.

Why Does Data Even Matter In Marketing?

Objective Decision-Making:

Data removes the guesswork — gut-based guesses are removed from the equation, facts only. It gives marketers the ability to test, a little at first, some more later based on what they learn from performance data rather than their instincts.

Customer Understanding:

Data is making it clear in almost invasive detail how customers act, what they like and who they are, as well as where within a journey they are. It leads to more tailored, personalized marketing content.

Campaign Performance Tracking:

That's tough to do, though, when you can't trace it back up through the funnel from an impression or click all the way down to conversion or on-site engagement. "Using KPIs and data such as impressions, click-through-rate (CTR), conversion rate and

engagement rates, You should be ready to track what is effective and what is not in real time.”

Market Segmentation:

"With data driven analysis, marketers are able to segment audiences by behavior, purchase history or location and create more targeted and efficient campaigns.

Predictive Analytics:

Using insights from historical activity, marketers can then have a sense of what new senses will be interested in and do next so they can get ahead of strategy shifts and product planning.

Improved ROI:

Data-driven solutions tend to be low resources intensive, as all investments are funnelled into the top performing channels, creatives and audience segments.

Agile Marketing:

Realtime monitoring and analysis allows for rapid adjustments to poor performing campaign. Marketers can then stop ads that are underperforming, reallocate budgets or adjust content strategies on-the-go.

However, using data effectively requires:

- Mechanism of clean, well-organized & relevant data collection
- Well defined and measurable goals/KPIs that are aligned with business objectives

10.3.2 Creating and Interpreting Reporting Dashboards

The real-time marketing monitoring applications that enable marketers to monitor performance of campaigns and user behavior as it occurs are called report dashboards. And they aggregate disparate data from diverse sources into one place, so that marketers or business people can track KPIs and gain insight easily.

What to Include In Your Reporting Dashboard:

Clarity and Focus:

The dashboard needs to provide focus on key metrics that matter with business goals. Prevent overkill by keeping it to the core KPIs that matter for your target audience.

Real-Time Updates:

Dashboards should be updated with current data to ensure decisions are made using current performance. Accuracy is guaranteed by the inclusion of live sources.

Customizability:

There should be options to filter data by date ranges, channels, campaigns or user segments. This enables more specific analyses and customized insights.

Data Source Integration:

Good dashboards integrate with Google Analytics, Search Console, Google Ads, CRM tools, social media and email. Everyone usually uses something like Google Looker Studio, Tableau or Power BI for this.

Visual Hierarchy:

Charts, tables and graphs may be grouped in such a manner that key data is presented up front. Color code and use visual indicators to draw the eye of your audience to updates, variances or patterns.

Types of Dashboards:

- Executive Dashboards - High-level summary for the senior leadership about ROI, conversions and budget performance.
- Marketing Dashboards - Channel specific dashboards that monitor traffic, engagement, and conversions.
- SEO Dashboards: Stats such as organic traffic, rankings, CTR and bounce rate.
- Paid Campaign Dashboards: Cost, impressions, CPC (cost per click), CTR (click through rate), conversion rate and ROAS.

Interpreting Dashboards:

Compare Periods: Compare week-over-week or month-over-month changes to see trends.

Spot Outliers: Look for spikes or dips that should be identified and analyzed.

Drill Down: Go from the macro to micro (e.g., overall conversions down to how a particular landing page is doing).

Segmentation: See how you are doing, by demographics, device type, location or source and what's working for the holiday.

Dashboards are not just report tools — they're decision aids. Well executed and read, they span from insight to action.

10.3.3 Visualising Data for Stakeholders

But when it's time to present your data to stakeholders — executives, clients or even cross-functional teams — accuracy isn't the only thing: Clarity and narrative are as well. And our infographics turn these complicated data sets into simple formats for communicating patterns, trends and key recommendations.

Why Data Visualisation Matters:

Make Complicated Simple : One glance and you see millions of data points in visual maps, graphs and pie chart.

Improves Retention: Information is retained best when communicated through both words and pictures [as opposed to text and tables].

Allows Decision Making: A user-friendly and self-explanatory graphical interface with legible charts and info graphics promise better understanding of the performance of data, enabling you to make decisions more quickly about certain things.

Best Practices for Data Visualisation:

Tailor to Your Audience:

Senior execs/ C-Level execs – they need macro stats (fin ROI, growth trends) Digital marketers on the other hand are interested in a lot more depth A week later... Adjust your visuals accordingly.

Use the Right Chart Types:

- o Graphs for viewing trends over time
- o Comparative bar charts between categories
- o Proportion measured in pie charts
- o Heatmaps for user behavior
- o Scatter plots for correlations

Avoid Visual Overload:

Then with a limit of visuals per report. Charts can be presented in a way that's overwhelming, confusing or watered down.

Tell a Story:

You're going to lead that stakeholder through a story with: This is what happened. Why? What should we do next? The highlighted notes and key takeaways brought the message home for me.

Highlight Key Metrics:

Highlight victories, dilemmas or trends with color and callouts. For instance, one colour for the metrics which is going downhill and another one showing improvement.

Use Consistent Scales and Timeframes:

Misinterpretations often occur due to misaligned terminology or granularity. Ensure consistency for meaningful comparisons.

Tools for Visualisation:

- Google Looker Studio (Formerly Data Studio)
- Tableau
- Microsoft Power BI
- Excel/Google Sheets (with visualization plug-ins)

Turning your data into an open book erases the wall between analysts and deciders. It transforms fuzzy numbers into narratives that compel action, crystallize trends and concentrate strategic pivots.

10.3.4 Insights for Continuous Optimisation

Digital marketing CRO (Conversion Rate Optimisation) is the ongoing practice of experimenting, measuring and refining your digital marketing efforts according to insights gained from data. It's not just getting campaigns up and tracking performance – your success will depend on the ability to iterate (as in software) and evolve outside of learnings as metrics change, or users don't do what you think they'll do.

Role of Insights in Optimisation:

Identify Performance Gaps:

Data will tell you which assets are underperforming—high-bounce landing pages, low-CTR ads or a problem with your abandoned carts—that need to be identified and fixed to achieve the best results.

A/B and Multivariate Testing:

Insights also generate hypotheses for experiments in other areas of advertising, such as experimenting with different headlines, ad creatives, calls to action or layouts. Testing is data-informed and iterative.

Audience Refinement:

Behavioral data serves marketing by helping to further refine targeting. For instance segmenting high-converting users and creating lookalike audiences in ad serving platforms.

Content Strategy Improvement:

For example, if the engagement metrics show that people stop clicking after 30% article read - then you may need to look at your content format, or placement of CTA's or topic.

Budget Allocation:

ROAS and CPA insights guide areas to invest more in and what to pull back from. Then, some highly-performing channels or campaigns are compared side by side.

SEO and SEM Enhancements:

Low CTR or quality score keywords can be swapped out or rewritten. Pages that rank but don't convert may need to be aligned more closely with user intent.

Framework for Continuous Optimisation:

- Monitor: Leverage Analytics to gather intelligence on touchpoints
- Understand: What are the trends, patterns and outliers?
- Test: Hypothesize, experiment + Iterate • Measure results from testing and Iterate.
- Learnings: Apply what works, and document it
- Repeat: Repeat the cycle to make progress in stages

Challenges to Address:

- Data silos between platforms
- No established KPIs or benchmarks
- Resistance to change within teams
- Data misinterpretation that results from no context

Optimisation is not something that you schedule in and out of as a project, it's an ongoing cycle. There is a very small group of elite marketers out there who are constantly finding and executing on insights, outperforming everyone else who only uses their gut feel or plays it safe with a set strategy.

Knowledge Check: Data-Driven Decision Making

Q1. What is the primary benefit of using a data-driven approach in marketing?

- a) Faster content creation
- b) Lower server load
- c) Informed decisions
- d) Design consistency

Q2. Which of these tools is commonly used for building visual reporting dashboards?

- a) Google Slides
- b) Looker Studio
- c) Google Forms
- d) Canva

Q3. In visualising data, which chart is best for showing trends over time?

- a) Pie chart
- b) Bar graph
- c) Line graph
- d) Scatter plot

Q4. What is the first step in continuous optimisation?

- a) Retargeting
- b) Budget increase
- c) Measure performance
- d) Launch A/B test

Q5. Dashboards should primarily focus on:

- a) Creative assets
- b) Key performance metrics
- c) Server speed
- d) Ad copy design

10.4 Summary

Web analytics empower organizations to accumulate, measure and decipher digital data; they maintain, in order to enhance the performance of a website and optimize ROI.

⌘ User action and SEO visibility can be tracked through Google Analytics and Google Search Console.

GA4, which is the next version of Google Analytics, provides event-based tracking, cross-platform analysis and machine-learning models that predict outcomes.

⌘ Click-through rate (CTR) indicates how good ads or search listings are at drawing users' attention and traffic.

⌘ The bounce rate and dwell time indicate the relevance of content and user engagement.

⌘ The conversion rate is used to gauge how many visitors you are doing a good job taking that step – whether your goal is orders or sign-ups.

⌘ Return on investment and cost based metrics such as CPC, CPA and ROI are critical in assessing marketing profitability and spending money.

⌘ Engagement metrics (average session duration, pages/session) show us how users are interacting with a website.

⌘ Reporting Dashboards allow you to quickly review performance and make strategic decisions with the data visualized.

26 Visualization techniques help users understand complex data more effectively and aid better communication. familiar with the terms of some design patterns, transformation rules or celebrated software entities).546 Copyright © 2007 John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.

3/ Data Informed – Decision making increases agility, customer targeting and campaign success.

⌘ Continuous optimisation uses learning, testing and iteration to improve marketing approaches over time.

10.5 Key Terms

Web Analytics – The monitoring and analyzing of website statistics to understand end user activity.

GA4 – Google Analytics 4: a new generation analytics platform using event-based tracking.

CTR – Click Through Rate, the % of people who click on an ad or a link.

Bounce Rate – Percent of visitors who leave after seeing a single page.

Conversion Rate – The percentage of people visiting the site that perform a desired action.

ROAS – Return on Ad Spend, profit made per currency unit spent on ads.

CPA – Cost Per Acquisition, The amount of money required to acquire a new customer.

Engagement Metrics – Measures of user activity, including session duration and number of pages viewed.

Dashboard – A visual representation of critical measures and data patterns.

Data Visualisation – Presenting data in graphic or pictorial format to make it easier for comprehension.

Attribution – The process of allocating credit to marketing channels or touch points that contributed to a conversion.

Dwell Time – The length of time between a search engine click, and the return to the search results.

10.6 Descriptive Questions

Describe the contribution of Google Analytics to website performance and user behavior assessment.

How the bounce rate and dwell time help for SEO and to improve content?

Compare the capabilities of GA4 vs. Universal Analytics.

In an SEO campaign, what are some of the essential KPI's to look for and why?

What do you feel are some of the benefits of visual dashboards in making it easier to report back to your stakeholders?

Explain how data-driven decision making improves the performance of marketing campaigns.

What is ongoing optimisation, and how do you apply this to your digital strategy?

How can web analytics support conversion rate optimisation?

10.7 References

1. Google Analytics Help – Understanding GA4 and Reporting
2. Moz – Guide to SEO Metrics and KPIs
3. HubSpot – Web Analytics for Beginners
4. Think with Google – Measuring Marketing Performance
5. Search Engine Journal – Bounce Rate and Dwell Time Explained

6. Data Studio Documentation – Building Custom Dashboards

Answer Key to Knowledge Check (10.3)

1. c) Informed decisions
2. b) Looker Studio
3. c) Line graph
4. c) Measure performance
5. b) Key performance metrics

10.8 Case Study

Story: AirBnB And The Power Of Analytics For Conversion Optimization Title How Airbnb Uses Analytics To Revolutionize Conversion Introduction I recently read Long How's stunningly informative post, where he covered 22 conversion rate optimization guidelines to follow.

Airbnb, a worldwide marketplace for short-term housing, relies on its digital platform to connect millions of hosts and travelers around the world. And because business is a transaction-based and experience-driven brand, Airbnb's success hinges on how well it turns website traffic into bookings.

Using web analytics has helped them to refine their user experience, maximize visibility of listings and improve their host and guest conversions.

In this case study, we will look at how Airbnb utilises data analytics to sense and tackle conversion bottlenecks, evolve their understanding of user behaviour, and execute continuous variables A/B testing.

Problem 1: High Traffic Yet Low Booking Conversion

Airbnb Platform received good organic and paid traffic, yet many sessions were not converting into bookings. The company discovered that while users were interested in browsing listings, they were dropping off at the booking phase.

Solution:

Airbnb monitored users' paths from landing pages to final checkout with the help of Google Analytics and internal data platforms. They found that users were turning away

from sessions because they couldn't understand pricing, listing information was inconsistent and reviews were missing.

To address this:

- They added pricing transparency on listing cards (such as fees and taxes).
- Hosts now need to have information filled in on basic fields before we allow listings to be published.
- Search results with enhanced listings and very strong social proof (reviews and ratings).

They also ran A/B tests on different booking interfaces that led to CTA optimization and simplified mobile navigation.

Outcome:

- 22 percent higher listing-to-booking conversion rate.
- Improved session length and return visit rates.
- Reduction of cart abandonment at the point of sale.

Issue 2: Host Onboarding Drops in behind

While bringing on new hosts was a significant business milestone, many of the sign-ups didn't make it all the way through our onboarding process. This created a shortage of supply and local availability.

Solution:

At Airbnb, we utilized funnel analytics to track host funnels through the on-boarding process. They found that users dropped out of the verification or listing creation tasks in high numbers because they were either too complex or presented no explanation.

To resolve this:

- Airbnb redesigned the onboarding flow, including progress bars and tips for in-line support.
- Launched real-time chat support and AI-based recommendations for listing descriptions.
- Created and programmed automatic emails to push users to complete profile, post listings.

Solution:

Airbnb used ML models which had been trained on data contained in web analytics and booking history to personalize search returns. They introduced filters for past behavior, trip type (business vs. leisure) and popular amenities.

This is what they found, in a nutshell - (images and session recordings) with heatmaps generated:

- Users were more likely to click on listings that had higher quality photos and received speedy responses.
- Homes with detailed descriptions performed better in the urban markets.

They then fine-tuned metadata for SEO, so that search engine traffic hit listings closely related to their query intent.

Outcome:

- 40% increase in booking conversions on first page.
- Increased engagement and reduced bounce on listing pages.
- More predictive models behind the listings.

Reflective Questions

How did Airbnb figure out where users were dropping off the booking process?

How did you use A/B testing to increase the performance of your booking interfaces?

How did Airbnb improve the process of acquiring new hosts through analytics?

Why the personalisation in Airbnb search results?

How can smaller companies copy Airbnb's data-based conversion techniques?

Conclusion

That Airbnb success story of conversion optimisation is the best example we have today about how powerful web analytics and data-driven strategies can be. The business has always iterated on its platform by studying user journeys, doing structured testing and taking action based on behaviour.

This strategy not only has enhanced customer experience, it has also been a means for scalable and sustainable expansion. Other companies, large or small, can take some inspiration from how Airbnb has put user experience front and centre to reduce friction in the conversion journey and embed data-informed iteration into their DNA.

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 11 V3 (2).docx

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 ATLAS SkillTech University

Document Details

Submission ID

trn:oid::3618:127581604

Submission Date

Feb 5, 2026, 12:06 PM GMT+5:30

Download Date

Feb 5, 2026, 12:17 PM GMT+5:30

File Name

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 11 V3 (2).docx

File Size

173.7 KB

26 Pages

6,147 Words

35,616 Characters





0% Overall Similarity

The combined total of all matches, including overlapping sources, for each database.




Filtered from the Report

- ▶ Bibliography
- ▶ Quoted Text
- ▶ Cited Text
- ▶ Small Matches (less than 15 words)

Match Groups

-  **1 Not Cited or Quoted 0%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
-  **0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
-  **0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
-  **0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 0%  Internet sources
- 0%  Publications
- 0%  Submitted works (Student Papers)

Integrity Flags

0 Integrity Flags for Review

No suspicious text manipulations found.

Our system's algorithms look deeply at a document for any inconsistencies that would set it apart from a normal submission. If we notice something strange, we flag it for you to review.

A Flag is not necessarily an indicator of a problem. However, we'd recommend you focus your attention there for further review.

Match Groups

- 1 Not Cited or Quoted** 0%
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- 0 Missing Quotations** 0%
Matches that are still very similar to source material
- 0 Missing Citation** 0%
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- 0 Cited and Quoted** 0%
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 0% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 0% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Top Sources

The sources with the highest number of matches within the submission. Overlapping sources will not be displayed.

1 Internet

thimpress.com

<1%

Unit 11: Leveraging Artificial Intelligence in SEO

Learning Objectives:

1. Discover and analyze top artificial intelligence (AI) SEO tools, and learn how they boost SEO workflows by automating them.
2. How have voice search and conversational AI changed how we think about SEO, and how can content be optimized for voice-first searches?
3. Learn What predictive analytics is and How it Can forecast user behavior and predict market trends.
4. Research on the impact of recommendation algorithms in terms on search exposure and advertising targeting by digital marketing channels.
5. Use AI and automation to inform faster, data-driven SEO/SEM campaigns.
6. Examine the moral implications and obstacles of AI in search marketing, such as transparency, bias and data cooperation.
7. Discover real-life examples, illustrating how new technologies play a role in winning SEO/SEM.

Content:

- 11.0 Introductory Caselet
- 11.1 AI-powered SEO Tools
- 11.2 Voice Search & Conversational AI in SEO
- 11.3 Predictive Analytics & Personalisation
- 11.4 Summary
- 11.5 Key Terms
- 11.6 Descriptive Questions
- 11.7 References
- 11.8 Case Study

11.0 Introductory Caselet

Headline: Adapting to Algorithms – The Digital Shift at TravelNest

TravelNest – the seed-stage travel booking platform that had hustled their way to some early SEO success through hands on keyword research, blog content creation and the

usual backlink tactics. This strategy worked for some years, and their organic traffic was growing steadily. Yet in a crowded post-Covid holiday market awash with travel content, TravelNest began to witness a halt in rankings and was no longer seeing the ROI they had come to expect from their SEO investment.

Their marketing team had identified that competitors were using AI-powered tools, while TravelNest was stuck with out-of-date and arduous processes. Tools like Jasper, Clearscope and Surfer SEO were giving competitors the ability to scale content quicker, understand user intent more and optimise in real time. AND consumers were starting to use voice search queries Powers says search demand was evolving, and TravelNest static content not optimised for conversational input.

Meanwhile, the paid media team found it difficult to anticipate how customers would behave during seasonal promotional periods. Without those predictors or a customer segmentation model, that ad spend was just being wasted. The pair knew they needed new tech, and it was no longer a fancy to have if they desired to compete in an industry dominated by personalization, automation and AI-driven decision making.

TravelNest, which operates 2,000 vacation properties across Europe, retooled its online strategy to bounce back. They leaned heavily on AI for faster core content creation, structured data to help visibility within search snippets and support long-tail searches through voice command. They built predictive models on their ad platform to forecast booking trends and advise the best bidding strategy. In just a few months the website was up, organic traffic had improved tremendously and with it so did conversion driven by the better browsing experience.

But the move was also symbolic of a larger trend: In today's cutting-edge search and performance marketing environment, the currency for success moving forward will be the capacity to evolve with new technology — nothing short of a sine qua non for continued success.

Critical Thinking Question:

What pitfalls are there for a company transitioning from traditional SEO/SEM to something driven by AI, and how can these be avoided?

11.1 AI-powered SEO Tools

11.1.1 Surfer SEO for On-Page Optimisation

Surfer SEO is an on-page optimization tool that uses Artificial Intelligence to aid in boosting your on-page search and analytics through actionable data analysis. With other SEO way, you'll just need to assume, with a manual based research that you make but SurferSEO is come with actionable recommendations which are driven by the

active SERP data. Basically, it compares your page to the top pages ranking for a certain keyword and shows you structural and content improvements you can make based on that analysis.

Core Features of Surfer SEO:

Content Editor:

The AI-based content editor is at the heart of what Surfer is offering. When you enter a target keyword, the editor indicates a score while you type — based on its density in comparison to other keywords and semantic usage of it, structure (headings and paragraphs) and length. It also suggests where it would be best to use LSI (Latent Semantic Indexing) keywords to increase topical relevance.

SERP Analyzer:

Surfer crawls the top 50 search results for your keyword and comes up with more than 500 ranking factors, like word count, page speed, backlinks video stats blah blah and on. This enable users to compare their content against some of businesses best-performing competitors.

Audit Tool:

This function makes it possible for the user to check on existing pages and pinpoint on-page SEO problems. It also includes suggestions for missing terms, internal links, meta tag problems and so on.

Keyword Surfer Chrome Extension:

This extension, lets Businesses get search volume data and CPC and keyword suggestions for any keyword in the Google Search Results.

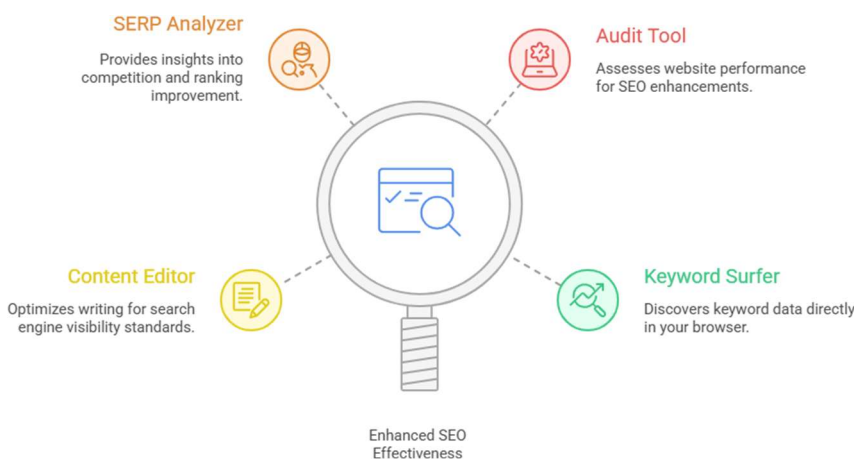


Figure 11.1

Applications in SEO Strategy:

- Creating highly optimized blog content
- Have your landing pages properly optimized for relevancy
- Updating stale content by adding data-backed improvements
- Gap Analysis – Compare your website to competitors

Advantages:

- Saves time through automation
- Better relevance of content with real time data
- If you're new to SEO or just need a refresher, this is an excellent overview for beginners who want the basics. It's also ideal for those on an advanced level.
- Prompts the generation of structured content according to user interest

Limitations:

- Over-reliance on keyword-based advice which could encourage over-optimisation
- Forces users to interpret some metrics and play them against creativity

Surfer SEO fills the chasm that is between manual on-page optimization and autonomy. When marketers can align themselves with things that already rank well, they are able to create quality (keyword-low!) content that still gives algorithms what they want.

11.1.2 Clearscope for Content Relevance & Optimization

Clearscope is a premium SEO copywriting tool largely adopted by developers, content strategists and digital marketers to improve the quality of their contents in terms of relevance, scope and breadth. Its main work is to analyze the best-performing content and suggest better keywords, readabilities, and structure optimizations to make sure your page meets user intent as well as the search engine's algorithms.

Key Features of Clearscope:

Content Grade and Relevance Score:

Clearscope gives each piece of content a content grade (an F to A++ scale) based on its coverage of semantically related keywords. That's something that keeps the content from feeling "thin" to google.

Keyword and Term Suggestions:

Once you key in a focus keyword, Clearscope pulls up other related terms and phrases that must also be present in the text. These are derived from the language of search competitors also ranking for that keyword.

It can also be used with Google Docs and WordPress:

With Clearscope, you can get real-time optimization right in your content authoring tools with our simple add-ons that fit into any workflow.

Readability Score:

It's scored for readability and structure, which pushes content in Google's direction, once again focusing on the user experience.

Strategic Use Cases:

- Developing user- and SEO-friendly long-form content
- Refined-up new articles to improve their position in search rankings
- Support content writers to adhere to SEO goals and KPIs, without having in-depth technical knowledge
- Creating authority content that comprehensively addresses topics

Advantages:

- Intuitive and user-friendly interface
- High-quality keyword and content suggestions
- Encourages the language to be natural instead of keyword-stuffed
- Great for content teams, agencies operating at scale

Limitations:

- Premium cost may not fit all budgets
- Content optimization only – no technical SEO added to the toolkit

Clearscope works well for companies that value in-depth, high-quality content. It marries semantic analysis with readability enhancements so teams can write content that not only works for their users, but also performs well in search engines.

11.1.3 Jasper AI for AI-driven Content Creation

Jasper AI (formerly Jarvis) is a writing assistant powered by artificial intelligence that produces human-like text for blog posts, ads, emails and product descriptions etc. Built on big language models, Jasper enables marketers to scale their content creation in an efficient way, particularly if they are targeting a broad array of keywords or topics

— or different audience segments. It's not exactly a SEO tool but works well with both content marketing and SEO methodologies – especially when combined with tools such as SurferSEO.

Key Features of Jasper AI:

Templates for Various Content Types:

Jasper supplies templates for blog posts, Google Ads, social media captions and beyond. Each template is built following best practices in tone, structure and CTA formatting.

Long-Form Assistant:

This is an option that allows users to create entire blog posts through prompts, tone of voice, and desired length. The AI can write content that is frequently already suitable for a basic SEO copy optimization.

Content Improver and Rewriter:

Jasper can rewrite or optimize content for style, length and tone – which is good for updating old articles or creating location-specific variations.

Integration with Surfer SEO:

In Jasper users can optimise content right inside the tool, with Surfer's recipe, marrying creative generation with live SEO feedback.

Custom Commands and AI Workflows:

Jasper can be given specific instructions to follow (“write a paragraph on digital.

marketing trends”) or create custom workflows that match the goals of your content strategy.

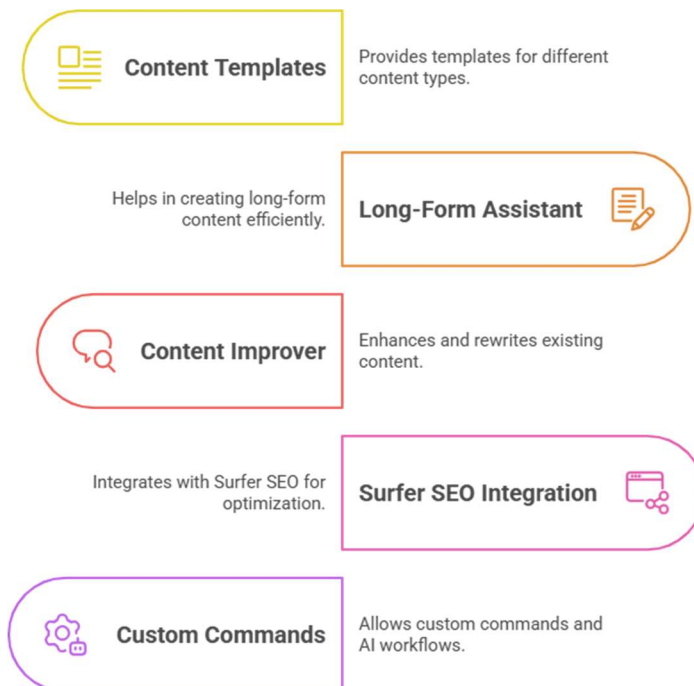


Figure 11.2

Use Cases in SEO:

- Writing SEO blog posts & landing pages at scale
- Creating meta descriptions and title tags
- Writing eCommerce-optimized product descriptions
- Writing up content briefs or outlines for writers

Advantages:

- Accelerates content creation processes
- Generates SEO friendly drafts if used with optimization tools
- Flexible for a variety of content types and industries

Limitations:

- Human intervention needed to check for factual accuracy
- Occasionally the output is cyclic, unoriginal only in absence of definite prompts.

Did you know?

“Jasper AI is capable of creating over 1,000 words of marketing copy in a few minutes; the value comes not only from doing this at scale but also by combining it with human creativity and SEO tools to ensure that quality, tone, and search relevance are on brand.”

Jasper is a team multiplier for content work, especially when speed and scale are essential. But it's most effective when driven by human strategy, and accompanied with strong SEO insights.

11.1.4 MarketMuse for Content Strategy & Topic Clusters

MarketMuse is an AI-powered content planning and optimization platform that enables marketers to research, plan, and craft high quality content. It differs from tools like Clearscope and Surfer SEO, disabusing themselves of taking purely optimized single pages approach and instead going wide on a content strategy through topic clustering and building domain authority.

Core Features of MarketMuse:

Content Inventory & Audit:

MarketMuse comprehensively analyzes all content on a site and delivers an audit based on performance, topical authority and optimization opportunities. It also identifies gaps, overlaps and strengths of content.

Topic Research & Content Briefs:

Here is how it works: It is based on Keywords, user context and SERP analysis to create content briefs. Every brief includes recommended section headings well as questions to consider and word counts are suggested for the Keywords. The Keywords are very important to create these content briefs for the user.

* The detailed content briefs include section headings for the Keywords

* The user context is used to create these content briefs for the Keywords

* The SERP analysis is also used to create these content briefs, for the Keywords

The detailed content briefs are created based on the Keywords and user context and SERP analysis.

Topic Clustering & Strategy:

MarketMuse is really good at creating topic clusters. These are groups of web pages that are connected to a big topic. This is how MarketMuse helps with search engine optimization. It adds depth to the topic and helps the web pages link to each other better. This shows search engines that the website's an authority on MarketMuse topics. MarketMuse does this by making the website have semantic richness and better internal linking. This is important for search engines to see the website as an authority, on MarketMuse topics.

Personalized Difficulty Scores:

MarketMuse has made its way to measure things. They call it the "Topic Authority Score". This score shows how hard it is for a website to get a ranking for a certain MarketMuse keyword. It does this by looking at how power the website has when it comes to the topic in question. The MarketMuse Topic Authority Score is really about the websites content power, on that topic.

Content Optimization Interface:

This thing is like any tool. It will tell you how to make your content better. It looks at how you use words the structure of your writing and how easy it is to read the content. It makes recommendations for improvements, on the content based on term usage, structure and readability of the content.

Use as an SEO and Content Strategy Tool:

- Creating editorial calendars based on strategic voids

- Gaining authority in niche topic clustering
- Making higher-return potential content updates a priority.
- Enhancing site architecture by the semantic content mapping.

Advantages:

- Vision to develop content and strategic communication long plans
- Comprehensive site-wide content analysis
- Comprehensive bulk SEO support, and content publishers of all sizes

Limitations:

Steeper learning curve due to its feature-richness

- Not for flacks or small content shops.

MarketMuse is a tool that helps brands change the way they make content. Of just reacting to things they can be proactive and focus on building authority on certain topics and standing out from the competition. MarketMuse does this by looking at what people're doing and what they want and then using that information to make sure every single piece of content on social media is actually doing something to help with search engine optimization. This means that every piece of content is helping MarketMuse move forward and be more relevant. MarketMuse is, like a game of chess and every move helps MarketMuse win by being more relevant.

11.2 Voice Search and Conversational Artificial Intelligence for Search Engine Optimization Summary

Doing the job of a marketer or Search Engine Optimization expert is really tough. It is like walking on a tightrope. Imagine that you are walking on a tightrope and there are rodeo clowns jumping around you. They are not even wearing clothes they are skinny-dipping.. To make things worse there are sharks in the water below them biting at their feet. This is what it is like to work in marketing and Search Engine Optimization. Voice Search and Conversational Artificial Intelligence, for Search Engine Optimization are making things harder.

11.2.1 Ascent of Voice Search in user behavior

People are searching for information in a natural way. They are using voice to ask for things of typing keywords. This is happening because of voice-enabled devices, like smartphones and smart speakers. Virtual assistants are also part of this trend. As more people use these devices every day it makes us think about how it will affect the way we plan search strategies. What does it mean for marketers and people who work on search engine optimization when people search for things in a human way? Voice search is changing the way we look for information. It is becoming a big part of our daily life.

People like using voice search because it's easy and saves time. Voice search is better, than typing when you want to ask a question. You can just say what you want to know and you do not have to look at the screen. This is really useful when your hands are busy doing something like making food or playing catch or driving a car.

Voice search questions are usually longer. Sound more like how people really talk. Voice search is great because voice search questions are longer and sound more natural. When you want to know the weather you do not have to type "weather London". Instead you can type something like "How's the weather in London this weekend?" This way you are asking about the weather in London in a natural way. You are asking about the weather, in London for this weekend.

These updates are going to change the way people use things in ways. The users of these things need to know what is happening with the updates. The updates will affect the user experiences in ways that the users need to be aware of.

- **Converse:** When people use Converse it feels like they are talking to each other. They use sentences and speak naturally. This means that the people who make the content for Converse have to think about how they write it and make sure it is just right, for Converse.
- **Question-Originated Queries:** A lot of voice searches are actually questions. People ask things like who, what when, where, why and how. The material should be set up to answer these questions directly. This means the information should be easy to find and understand when someone asks a question that starts with who what, when, where why or how.
- **Local Intent:** A lot of people use voice search to find things near them like a coffee shop or a good Italian restaurant in Bangalore. Businesses with stores should really focus on making their local search work better for them so people can find their coffee shop or restaurant when they search for something, like that.
- **Mobile First:** People do a lot of voice searches, on their devices. So it is really important to have a website that works well on devices. This means your website should be Mobile friendly.

When we think about voice search on a scale it makes us see things in a new way. Voice search is telling us that we need to change how we do things. We can not just focus on words that people search for. We need to start paying attention to how people talk. This means we have to understand how people use language in a way. So now people are paying attention to things, like natural language processing, which is also called NLP and featured snippets and structured data. Voice search is making us think about all these things because it is changing how we do search engine optimization, which is also called SEO and how we use voice search to find things.

Additional Considerations:

- When people use Voice Search they usually want to get a specific answer. They are looking for something that gives them what they need, like when they want to buy something or learn more about something. This is what Voice Search is about it is full of intention and people using Voice Search want results that match what they are trying to do whether that is buying something or just finding out more information, about Voice Search.

- Device-Specific Behavior: Users behave differently on phones, smart speakers and voice-enabled TVs. Understanding when voice questions are coming into play can impact the structure and presentation of your content. So, in summary, voice searches is more than a trend – it's a cultural change. Brands who identify and act on this shift by focusing their efforts around voice search potential ranking factors, for instance, are much more likely to be a competitive advantage in the general visibility of your organic results.

11.2.2 Optimising Content for Voice & Conversational Queries

Voice search and conversational query optimisation Get into the right mindset for voice search AND conversational queries. Because users of voice search have a more conversational tone and tend to demand immediate, direct answers, the content strategy must make content structure, sound and technical implementation suitable for these new criteria.

Voice Search Optimisation Best Practices:

Use Natural Language:

Content should be written as if we're speaking to people. This can be achieved by the use of contractions, easy vocabulary and complete sentences when asking questions or replying to them. Instead of targeting "digital marketing tips," consider something like, "What are the best digital marketing tips for small businesses?"

Target Long-Tail Keywords:

Voice searches are typically longer and more detailed. Include long-tail keyword phrases that mimic how someone might ask a question verbally. For instance, you might optimize for "how to make cold brew at home" instead of "cold brew recipe."

Answer Questions Clearly:

Formatting content in a Q&A may improve chances of being featured in voice search. Insert headers like H2 or H3 for questions, followed by quick, accurate answers below.

Leverage Featured Snippets:

Many voice search results are extracted from Google's featured snippets. Writing information that someone is asking and using structured data (schema markup) can optimize your chances of being chosen.

Implement FAQ Sections:

They even have specific FAQ page or blocks within content offer fast answers in a structured way that is great for voice search. They are useful to search engines for quickly determining relevant information.

Enhance Page Load time and Mobile Experience:

Mobile search is often voice search. Speed up your site Serve a fast page and let your users enjoy the experience.

Utilize Structured Data Markup:

Schema markup lets search engines know the meaning of your content. Employing structured data for products, locations, FAQs and articles can help improve visibility in voice search results.

Local SEO Optimization:

Claim The Google My Business Listing And Other Directories For those businesses with a physical presence, voice search optimization would include claiming using location-specific keywords, and encouraging customer reviews.

Tools to Assist Voice SEO:

- Google Search Console (to identify voice-friendly queries)
- AnswerThePublic (to discover question-based keywords)
- SEMrush and Ahrefs (to research long-tail keywords)
- Google's People Also Ask (find conversational search phrases)

As voice search becomes more advanced, it's no longer about ranking high but rather getting a single spoken answer.

11.2.3 Role of AI Assistants (Siri, Alexa, Google Assistant) in SEO

Artificial intelligence-driven voice assistants such as Siri (Apple), Alexa (Amazon), Google Assistant and Cortana (Microsoft) are changing the way in which users search, access and engage with online content. These agents become front and center for the search experience, bridging the user to the search engine. The role of PWA in SEO is attracting more attention as they are being adopted.

How AI Assistants Influence SEO:

Single Answer Delivery:

Compared with regular search engines which usually list a range of results, voice assistants tend to offer just one response. This increases competition for exposure in the voice search. SEOs should be prioritizing content targeted to position zero (and therefore, the featured snippet).

Dependence on Structured Data:

Artificial intelligence (AI) assistants are highly dependent on structured data and schema markup to understand and provide answers to information queries. Pages that have meaningful, well-structured schema are more likely to be spoken by these assistants.

Source Selection:

Each assistant has its own set of references. Google Assistant relies on Google Search and Google My Business, while Alexa leans on Bing and proprietary skills and Siri on Apple Maps and Bing. For this reason, the sources of data currently used by each assistant should be analysed with respect to SEO strategies.

Voice App Integration:

Alexa and Google Assistant enable businesses to create their own voice apps (Skills and Actions). They can serve as voice-first channels for unforgettable experiences such as guided shopping, faq navigation or how to book a trip.

Local Search Optimization:

Voice assistants are commonly used for local queries (e.g., “Where can I find a dry cleaner?”) but normally not as a primaryhub.

cleaner?”). And it directly affects the AI assistant question performance to keep NAPs consistency, control online rating, and local listing optimization.

Conversational Context and NLP:

Assistants perform natural language processing (NLP) on queries. They remember intensions and interactions of users in content must be context- and session-relevant.

Security and Trustworthiness:

AI assistants prioritize trustworthy sources. HTTPS, trustful business information and valuable content are the requirements to fulfill trust of these platforms.

E-commerce Integration:

Now, with the advent of voice commerce, these assistants are executing transactions. Fine-tuning product pages with accurate schema, availability and price information ensures they more effectively integrate with AI-based commerce applications.

As the science of Voice becomes more sophisticated, those kinds of content (fast, structured and user friendly/semantically rich) will still get algorithmic love. SEO in that context is no longer just about ranking — it's about being the authoritative, machine-readable source for the spoken answer.

Activity: Title – Mapping Voice Queries to Content Opportunities

In this appealing activity, students are challenged to think of 10 verbal questions that potential

ask related to a particular business or product (e.g., “What is the best time of year to plant tomatoes in

Delhi?” for a gardening site). In small groups, participants will then map each question to current or planned web content and identify gaps where new content needs to be developed. It's a fun way to get users thinking about voice SEO principles in action, like approaching more long-tail queries and adopting conversational tones and matching search intent.

11.3 Predictive Analytics & Personalisation

11.3.1 AI in Predicting Search Trends

The future of digital marketing is in predictive analytics AI that helps marketers anticipate how a user might behave, predict, plan and align content and SEO strategies with shifting interests.

They find untapped, growing niches.

Content Gap Prediction

By tracking competitors' tactics and forecasts how search behavior will evolve, AI can suggest what is likely to work well. This assists brands in developing content that is proactive, rather than reactionary to trends.

Market Sentiment Integration

AI models using social media and news headlines, and forums can detect turning points in public reaction and interest which SEO strategies seize on as soon as new trends start.

Long-Tail Expansion

Predictive tools can grow keyword lists with long-tail variants that are expected to soar based on language trends, query expansions and user intent analysis. This ensures that your content coverage is relevant as search queries change.

Seasonal Forecasting

For travel or health products and retail, AI can predict peak interest months in advance for content planners to schedule blog posts, landing pages or campaigns.

Cross-Channel Correlation

“Through search, social, and e-commerce trends, we can find signals of what is becoming more popular and use that signal to align our optimization on other channels.”

Implementation Use Cases:

- SEO strategists seeding content long before demand peaks.
- Content calendars driven by predicted user interest, not historical performance.
- Projecting interest surges around events or holidays.

Challenges and Considerations:

- Predictive AI models depend on strong, clean historical data.
- Predictions can be thrown off by sudden events or world crises.
- It's dangerous to base decisions on predictions and not have pathways for nimble responses.

When applied, AI-powered search trend forecasting empowers marketers to drive the direction of searches rather than simply respond to them, by establishing content relevance before demand.

11.3.2 Personalised Content Recommendations

AI-based personalization provides a customized experience to users according to their behavior, choices and context. It allows websites to provide more targeted information, which increases the level of engagement and conversion.

Core Components of AI-Driven Personalization:

Behavioral Segmentation

AI systems are monitoring and logging user behavior — pages viewed, time spent, clicks taken — to categorize them into segments such as first-time visitors, re-engagers or product researchers.

Content Matching Algorithms

Machine learning is processing user journey data to send users to pages or features they are most likely to engage with. This could be blog posts, product pages or resources.

Contextual Personalization

Recommendations can be based on context, such as user's location, device type, season or demographics. For instance, when users are browsing from warmer climates, a travel website may recommend destinations on the beach.

Automated Dynamic Blocks

Home page sections, 'related articles', product carousels: all of these things are adjusted in real time based on per-user profiles.

Recommendation Feedback Loops

Artificial intelligence also fine-tunes recommendations by learning from what users click on, dwell on or skip past — ever narrowing for relevance.

Benefits of Personalised Recommendations:

- More time spent on site and higher engagement
- Higher engagement from more relevant content discovery
- Greater perception of Customer Satisfaction and Loyalty

11.3.3 AI for Dynamic Website Optimisation

Elements of Dynamic AI Optimization:

Adaptive Layouts

An individual customer who has browsed through product categories might receive shortcuts to related departments.

Real-Time Messaging

Create popups or banners with AI that can offer specific messages, for example hour-only deals on product pages if they're idling there but not converting.

A/B Testing Automation

An AI technology can test multiple versions of page elements simultaneously, and send traffic to the version that yields more engagement or conversions automatically.

Form and Flow Adjustments

Are things like signup forms, CTAs able to be changed based on location or path to interaction for example – could it potentially be stripped out if you are on a mobile device? guest checkout for returning shoppers?

Continuous Learning Loops

All of these pursuits feed data to the AI, which tweaks algorithms and trims dynamic elements over time without anyone having to do so by hand.

Strategic Benefits:

11.3.4 Future of AI in SEO

AI and SEO Trends from Today:

Automated Content Strategy Development

Advanced platforms may someday generate full content calendars, outlines and clusters to satisfy the forecasted demands of a user, company or sector.

Voice and Visual Search Integration

AI will get smarter about multimodal queries -- ones that use voice and images as inputs. SEO will also extend to optimization for visual search, so queries like “what is this?” and speakable descriptions.

Real-Time SERP Adaptation

By changing search results as described, the resulting means is that search results then are driven dynamically based on a user's context, behavior and history so the returned content must be generated on the fly with real-time dynamic mark-up.

AI-Driven Search Engines

Search engines are going to get more and more aggressive in how they interpret user intent, interest or sentiment — meaning content needs to be semantically rich, topical fresh and really very relevant now.

Ethical and Fair Search Practices

Transparency, fairness, bias mitigation and accountability will be critical as radical AI systems determine who is seen. SEO will be moral as well as technical.”

Predictive SEO Forecasting

The investment on SEO, content plan and distribution will become dependent of AI generated forecasts and simulations rather than static planning.

Preparations for the Future:

- Maintain robust processes for data quality, tagging and analytics

- Encourage an experimental, iterative approach to SEO

The SEO of the future is an ongoing dance between AI systems, user behaviour and content strategy – so flexibility and technical readiness (plus data-savvy execution) is essential.

Knowledge Check: Predictive Analytics & Personalisation

1. Which function of AI helps forecast rising search keywords?
 - a) Testing headlines
 - b) Trend prediction
 - c) Visual layout
 - d) Link building

2. Personalised recommendations are based on:
 - a) Visitor behavior
 - b) Random choice
 - c) Static templates
 - d) Monthly reports

3. Dynamic website optimization changes content in:
 - a) Monthly reports
 - b) Real time
 - c) Yearly cycles
 - d) Static pages

4. The future of AI in SEO includes:
 - a) Manual updates
 - b) Voice and visual search
 - c) Paper reports
 - d) Flat design only

5. A key risk with dynamic optimization is:
- a) Over-personalization
 - b) Increased traffic
 - c) Better UX
 - d) More keywords

11.4 Summary

⊗ SEO tools such as Surfer SEO, Clearscope, Jasper AI and MarketMuse are some of the many AI-driven tools that automate as well supercharge content creation and optimisation.

⊗ This voice search is redefining user behavior by lengthening, being conversational and inevitably question based queries.

⊗ On-page SEO for voice search includes structured content, natural language and featured snippet targeting.

⊗ @Mentions, major AI Assistants (Siri, Alexa and Google Assistant) use structured data and trusted sources to respond.

⊗ Predictive analysis enables marketers to predict future trends and develop a proactive SEO approach.

⊗ AI-driven personalised content recommendation boosts user engagement and enhances conversion.

⊗ Real-time, Dynamic optimisation of a website and its templates to respond user behaviour (layout/schemas, messages, content).

⊗ Websites tailor themselves towards the intent, device and context of each user thanks to AI resulting in even more customized experience.

⊗ SEO-Future will have an AI driven life with predictive planning, Voice-Visual search and Ethical Automation.

2.3 Algorithmic Solutions λ SEO professionals needs to be transformed from static plan of contents --> dynamic Identify driven (#Romanesko, 2019) focusing on how the content can help people by using various models including AI.

⊗ The impact of structured data, user intent mapping, and semantic content are vital to maintain relevancy in AI informed SERPs.

⊖ Ethical considerations for AI usage, fairness and transparency – these are becoming more relevant to SEO strategy.

11.5 Key Terms

Voice Search – Searching through voice-based queries handheld smart devices.

Conversational AI — AI systems that communicate and respond using natural language processing.

Surfer SEO – Real-time SERP data and content analysis for on-page optimisation.

Clearscope – Content relevance and semantic keyword optimization platform.

Jasper AI – Artificial intelligence writing assistant creates SEO-friendly content for you on autopilot.

MarketMuse – Content strategy tool to help plan your content based on relevance with the help of AI system and clustering.

Featured Snippet – Prominent result displayed at the beginning of Google SERPs, often read out loud in voice search.

Dynamic Optimization – Personalization of online experiences by AI to adjust content and layout in real time.

Predictive Analytics – Leveraging historical data and machine learning to predict future user behavior and trends.

Personalization – The act of customizing content and experiences based on user behavior, preferences or context.

AI Assistants – Software (Siri or Alexa) designed to respond to users in natural language with the help of search engine details.

Structured Data –Code (such as schema markup) placed on web pages to assist search engines determine context of content.

11.6 Descriptive Questions

How do tools like Surfer SEO and Clearscope help with content optimisation?

AI assistants Impact on Voice search and SEO: Discuss the impact of AI assistants in changing voice Search and SEO.

How to optimize for voice search and conversational queries?

Explain of how Predictive Analytics can inform SEO strategy and content planning.

How AI facilitates intelligent website optimisation (and why it matters)

Discuss the merits and disadvantages of AI personalised content recommendations.

Future of AI in SEO and what it means for digital marketers.

What sorts of ethical issues we might run into with SEO as AI becomes more and more prevalent in the field?

11.7 References

1. Google Search Central – Structured Data Guidelines
2. Moz – Voice Search SEO Best Practices
3. HubSpot – How AI is Changing SEO and Content Marketing
4. Search Engine Journal – Predictive SEO with Machine Learning
5. SEMrush – AI-Powered SEO Tools Comparison
6. Think with Google – Future of Search and Personalisation

Answer Key to Knowledge Check (11.3)

1. b) Trend prediction
2. a) Visitor behavior
3. b) Real time
4. b) Voice and visual search
5. a) Over-personalization

11.8 Case Study

Title: How HubSpot Uses AI for Content SEO and Personalization Introduction

The upstart CRM and marketing automation software provider has topped itself time and again as a content marketing exemplar. The company draws in millions of users across the world with large blog, resource hub and learning academy. With the martech space growing ever more competitive, HubSpot has gone with an AI-centric approach to scale their SEO methodology — as well as deliver those one-to-one content experiences at scale.

As the SEO race intensified, so did the pressure to publish more content at a faster clip — and through manual workflows bottlenecks formed.

Solution:

HubSpot also added Jasper AI and Clearscope to help their editors create topic ideas, first drafts and optimization recommendations. Writers relied on Jasper AI to expedite the process of content creation, especially for template-based content such as landing pages or how-to guides. Clearscope even gave us semantic keyword recommendations to guarantee that we were in line with Google's ranking factors.

Surfer SEO was also used in editing to match every post to benchmark top-performing competitors, which meant that the content would be as well-structured, extensive and keyword-rich as needed.

Outcomes:

- Create 45% more content each month
- Better content scoring using Clearscope metrics
- Greater probability of getting on first page for newly published articles

User Experience across Various Segments is Generic: Issue 2

Honorable Mention Despite its wealth of content, HubSpot found that visitors were confused or misguided by the site, particularly first-time users who did not know where to start.

Solution:

It cleared 1:1 personalisation on their blog and knowledge base, along with the behavioural segmentation use case using an AI-based content recommendations engine. Depending on a user browser history, location and business size the platform would serve up dynamic article suggestions, gated content and CTA's specific to where the journey would be.

For instance, if you were reading about CRM for small businesses, you would see related articles, a downloadable CRM setup guide and an invitation to a relevant product webinar.

Outcomes:

- 40% Reduction in bounce rate • 40% Increase in time on site
- 25% improvement in lead-to-trial conversions
- Reduced the bounce rate of organic traffic by 18%

Issue 3: Future Content Trend Is Hard to Predict

Before you could integrate Databox with HubSpot, the content team had to depend on historical analytics and educated guesses to plan their content. With the changing market pace it also resulted in content that was out of sync or missed opportunities.

Solution:

Leveraging predictive analytics, the team utilized AI to sort through historical search trends, social signals and user intent to predict future content opportunities. Using both MarketMuse and internal machine learning models, the team was able to zero in on burgeoning topics like “AI in marketing,” “data privacy trends” and “no-code automation.”

This knowledge informed the quarterly content calendar, both top-of-funnel and product-aligned content was developed as a result.

Outcomes:

- 20% more organic traffic to new content
- Shorter time-to-rank for target keywords
- Content themes more closely aligned with customer needs

Reflective Questions

How did HubSpot find the middle ground between AI automation and quality control on content?

How did you benefit from dynamic personalization on your blog?

How did the predictive analytics benefit HubSpot’s content roadmap?

How can smaller teams replicate HubSpot’s AI-driven content strategy?

When doing content personalisation, how do you give the right respect for ethics while applying AI?

Conclusion

HubSpot’s example shows how AI can become a best friend for you in SEO, content and personalisation at scale. By incorporating instruments such as Jasper AI, Clearscope and predictive analytics platforms, not only did HubSpot help itself become more efficient but it also improved user experience and organic reach. The secret to their success was striking a balance between automation and strategy oversight, keeping content integrity while letting AI supercharge and channel efforts. While search engines change, and user expectation increases, the learnings that HubSpot instilled serve as a blueprint for any business looking to make its SEO future-pronto by leveraging smart technology.

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 12 V3 (3).docx

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 ATLAS SkillTech University

Document Details

Submission ID

trn:oid::3618:127584079

Submission Date

Feb 5, 2026, 12:51 PM GMT+5:30

Download Date

Feb 5, 2026, 12:55 PM GMT+5:30

File Name

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 12 V3 (3).docx

File Size

115.0 KB

17 Pages

4,533 Words

24,308 Characters

0% Overall Similarity

The combined total of all matches, including overlapping sources, for each database.

Filtered from the Report

- ▶ Bibliography
- ▶ Quoted Text
- ▶ Cited Text
- ▶ Small Matches (less than 15 words)

Match Groups

- 0 Not Cited or Quoted 0%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- 0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
- 0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- 0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 0% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 0% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Integrity Flags





0 Integrity Flags for Review

No suspicious text manipulations found.




Our system's algorithms look deeply at a document for any inconsistencies that would set it apart from a normal submission. If we notice something strange, we flag it for you to review.

A Flag is not necessarily an indicator of a problem. However, we'd recommend you focus your attention there for further review.

Match Groups

-  **0 Not Cited or Quoted 0%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
-  **0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
-  **0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
-  **0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 0%  Internet sources
- 0%  Publications
- 0%  Submitted works (Student Papers)

Unit 12: Generative Engine Optimisation (GEO)

Learning Objectives:

1. What are the basic mechanics of generative engines like ChatGPT, Google SGE, and Bing Copilot and how do they impact search ecosystems?
2. Contrast conventional web search engines with AI-based generative engines, and how content is searched for, processed and generated.
3. Assess how generative search will affect SEO and content visibility, and what are the optimization strategies for AI-based search results.
4. Grasp how citations, accuracy and trustworthiness play a part in AI-generated responses -- and how content publishers can respond.
5. Anticipate what's next for generative engine optimisation (GEO) and how to set your business up for future success in search.
6. Use GEO strategy when creating content to optimize (by structuring, tagging and formatting) its visibility in conversational AI interfaces.
7. Critically evaluate ethical and business issues concerning generative search, such as bias, misinformation, and content ownership.

Content:

- 12.0 Introductory Caselet
- 12.1 Understanding Generative Engines
- 12.2 Optimising for AI-driven Search
- 12.3 Future of GEO
- 12.4 Summary
- 12.5 Key Terms
- 12.6 Descriptive Questions
- 12.7 References
- 12.8 Case Study

12.0 Introductory Caselet

Title: Beyond Blue Links – How GenTech Adapted to Emergence of Generative Search Mind the Gap

GenTech, a rapidly expanding B2B SaaS platform, also spent heavily on old school SEO tactics during the past 5 years. They had strong organic traffic, a result of a powerful blog, landing pages targeting high-intent keywords, and consistent inbound links. For years, this formula guaranteed high rankings on Google and a constant stream of inbound leads.

But things took a turn by late 2024. Google opened its Search Generative Experience (SGE) to more users, Bing further integrated its AI Copilot in the search results and services like ChatGPT started offering web-connected answers in a conversational style. GenTech's analyst team observed a small, yet consistent dip in organic clicks – and not just from the pages that still ranked on page one.

The issue hadn't been visibility — it was displacement. Their content was being boiled down, paraphrased and incorporated into AI-transmitted answers — and users often didn't need to click through at all. Instead of referring participants to GenTech's website, generative engines were answering questions with GenTech content snippets (sometimes with competitor information) right in the SERP. The brand was referred to on occasion, but the absence of traffic and attribution caused significant alarm for the marketing team.

In response, GenTech initiated a multi-disciplinary project: to investigate how generative engines work; what kinds of content they prefer and produce; as well as how learnings could be turned into recommendations for optimising visibility in AI-generated summaries.

12.1 Understanding Generative Engines

12.1.1 Overview of Generative Engines

Generative engines, which fundamentally rely on large language models (LLMs), have dramatically changed the manner in which search interfaces interact with users. As opposed to traditional search engines that scrape linked text from indexed web pages, a generative engine understands prompts and new outputs with generated content as natural language responses to a context are created. CROSSNET lie at the intersection of information retrieval and dialogue.

Core Components of Generative Engines:

- Natural Language Processing (NLP): These are systems that process queries given in natural language — try to understand the query rather than just match keywords.

- **Context Preserving Responses:** Unlike traditional search engines where every query can be treated as isolated, a generative search engine should have context preserving responses on top of word based generation.
- **Retrieval-Augmented Generation (RAG):** Many engines are based on RAG, which retrieves real-time or near-real-time data to ensure responses are fresh.
- **Source-Finding:** Some of those engines (like Perplexity) do in-context citing, which means end-users can click on a link and determine where that snippet originally came from.

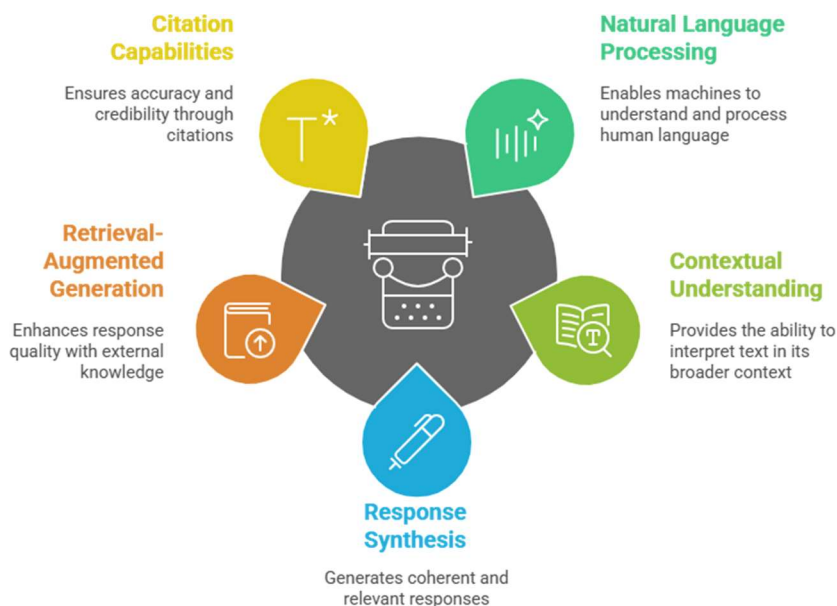


Figure 12.1

Cons for generative engines are potential factual errors (“hallucinations”), lack of visibility into vetting to ensure content is correct and less visibility for the originators who set forth a prompt but might be left behind — with no traffic — by AI responses. But what they lack in Majel programming, the channel surfing interaction they offer metaphorically "dials" us into a different way of retrieving our data.

12.1.2 ChatGPT and Its Applicability to Search .

For example, OpenAI’s ChatGPT [37] is a conversational AI model that has been re-purposed for retrieval. Number Gossip is not technically a search engine, but it functions as one by discussing and interpreting extensively.

Responsibilities:What you will doRole and responsibilities of ChatGPT in Search:

- Questioning Through Dialogue Flow: Fans can ask follow up questions, and for additional query after a search as well as Query Updation & Retrieval (QUR) during half-time in the game.

But if it didn't stop to look out at external evidence, that could mean it started to produce confidently wrong information (in technical terms, something called hallucinations). It's excellent at being flexible and deep, and generated in natural language -- think of it as much more of an intelligent assistant than a link-based search engine.

12.1.3 Perplexity, Gemini and Other Next Generation Engines

Outside of ChatGPT, newer generative search engines have made their debut, most notably

Perplexity AI and Google Gemini.

- Perplexity AI operates as a conversational search assistant. It uses real live web results and combines them with the accumulated answers to show source links in addition to summary.

Did you know?

“Perplexity AI processes web search queries in real time and provides users with short, source-cited answers generated by multiple backend AI models, providing information that is always up-to-date and verifiable.”

The gap between them is far more than just an interface design challenge, it's about the very different way each engine sources content, treats trust and integrates into workflows.

12.1.4 How Generative Engines Differ from Traditional Search Engines

This change in dynamic between generative engines and more classic (search) systems such as Google or Bing is but a part of digital information consumption shift.

Traditional Search Engines:

- Depend on crawling and indexing web pages, and then ranking them through algorithms that prioritize relevance and authority.
- List of links, plus snippets and metadata for users to select and vet sources by hand.
- Transparency and source-crediting must be top priorities if users are to vet content on their own.

Generative Engines:

- Utilize LLMs and RAG to create content on-the-fly, summarizing from multiple sources.
- Give simple answers so people do not have to look things up themselves making it easier for people to find what they need without having to search a lot for natural and compact information, from the internet.
- Sometimes cite support, but otherwise appear as a single voice more or less speaking ex cathedra — traceability, attribution?

So traditional search is like showing people where to find the information they want. On the hand generative engines are like the ones that have all the answers. They think about the situation, the conversation and getting straight, to the point. This has changed the way content teams work with search engines and the rules they follow to get their information seen.

12.2 Optimising for AI-driven Search

12.2.1 Conversational Queries and Natural Language SEO

People are using intelligence to search for things on the internet. This means that the way people search for things is changing. They do not just type a words into the search box anymore. Instead they type out questions or sentences. For example someone might type "portable air purifier for small bedroom" or "how to make vegan cookies chewy". These types of searches are, like the way people talk. Artificial intelligence search solutions are making it possible for people to search the internet in a natural way. Artificial intelligence is helping people find what they are looking for by using intelligence search solutions.

These are questions that people would ask and they need to be dealt with in a way. This way tries to figure out what the person asking the question really wants to know and it needs to sound like the way people normally talk. The optimization has to predict what the user intention is. It has to match the way people speak which is human speech.

Key Tactics for Conversational SEO:

- **Question-centric :** We should focus on the questions that users ask when they speak. We need to organize the content in a way that makes sense using frequently asked questions, headers and short answers that are correct. The questions that users ask are very important so we should give them precedence. Make sure our answers are helpful. This means using question- approach to make it easy for users to find what they are looking for.

- **Long-tail phrasing:** Do not worry much about how many words are in a keyword phrase. Instead use long-tail phrases that sound like the way the long-tail phrasing is used when we talk to each other. The long-tail phrasing should be natural and sound, like something we would say, not something we would type on a computer.

- **Context driven information:** We need to think about what the user's looking at when they ask a question. This means we should include things that help us figure out what they will ask next. For example let us say we have a list of things to do. Then we explain each thing in a few paragraphs. The user may ask questions based on this list and the explanation and this can go back and forth several times.

This means our answers should be short and to the point. If we do this it can help featured snippets read our answers loud or summarize them for people. This can be really helpful for featured snippets. It can make our content more useful for people who are looking for answers to their questions. Featured snippet preparedness is, about making our content work well with featured snippets.

The purpose of SEO is to format the content in a way that is similar, to how people have conversations. This way artificial intelligence engines can. Use the content from conversational SEO. Conversational SEO helps intelligence engines to parse and quote the content.

12.2.2 Zero-Click Search and Featured Responses

People are using things like OpenAIs ChatGPT and Google AI Overviews and Perplexity to find answers. These things are really good at answering questions, in a words. So users do not need to go to websites to find what they are looking for.

This is changing the way we measure if a website is successful. Before we thought a website was successful if a lot of people visited it. Now we think a website is successful if it shows up in the answers that OpenAIs ChatGPT and Google AI Overviews and Perplexity give to people.

Essential considerations for Zero-Click optimization:

- When it comes to the authoritativeness of content AI engines will definitely prefer content from sources. Content that follows the E-A-T rules will be more likely to get quoted by people because it is seen as trustworthy and accurate. The authoritativeness of content is very important. E-A-T content is the kind of content that people will trust and want to share with others.
- When you quote facts you should add information that you got from talking to experts and other good sources. This will make your story better because it will have information, from a good source. You want your story to be based on a source so it sounds true and people will believe it.

12.2.3 Content Structuring for Generative AI Visibility

We have to also think about the content in a way that transcends people reading it but also using it. And Artificial Intelligences, like models work better if the content is packed full of meaning down into manageable chunks – and ideally easy to understand for Artificial Intelligences.

Best practices for structuring:

- How things are organized: Employ hierarchically ascending headings, like big titles, little ones and littler ones than that, to indicate what matters for computer programs that have some grasp of language.
- We have a read out on how when we break up a story, divided into parts is easier to comprehend. We call it a chunked narrative. This means breaking the material up into chunks of pure text that work on their own. The computer can look at these blocks of text and process them to help generate its next output. This leaves room for the computer to respond using the chunked narrative.

- We've got to make sure we're talking about the same things. We can use words that mean one thing. Information about what we are talking about when we do this can help AI models work out what it is that they should be talking about. This is in order for Intelligence models as Semantic clarity models not to lose face. The authors say, when you give the models of intelligence (such as Semantic clarity models) more details, they can tell things apart and not make mistakes or talk about nonsense.
- Schema markup: We could consider adding schema on data when it is applicable like types of data to help the search page has AI models know what our content type is as plain text around FAQs or product information with the use of schema markup.
- points to remember: Begin each section, using short bullet points so that...you know what are the important or key things to know which computers can easily look for and use in order to provide answers about a main topic being discussed which are brief summaries.

These structuring techniques are the way we help the generative engines understand what your content is about. That's what makes the content applicable and valuable for the engines to use in the things that they create. These structuring techniques are used by the generative engines to ensure that the content really is about what you want it to be, about.

12.3 Future of GEO (Generative Engine Optimization)

12.3.1 Content Authenticity in the Age of AI

We need to be absolutely certain that the information we derive from models such as ChatGPT, Gemini and Symbolism is reliable.

These days, however, simply producing something that other humans will look at isn't sufficient.

We have to ensure that the things we build are reliable and true, original and accurate.

This makes a real difference in things like ChatGPT, Gemini and Perplexity.

The content that comes from these generation engines should be accurate and reliable. It can't be redundant, or incorrect, because it doesn't amount to anything.

We're in an age when people want to know that the things they are reading are real and can trust the people who made them.

So while we are generating content we have to think about trust and originality, like is it original, accuracy those elements should be explicit in our content.

That's going to differentiate our content and make people want to read it, trust that the people who made it love the band just as much as someone who uses ChatGPT, Gemini and Perplexity.

Why Authenticity Matters:

- **The facts:** Occasionally, these AI models that are created will simply invent things. Call something a fact when in reality it is not. They'll even say the information is coming from some place but we have no way to verify if that's true. This is really confusing, for the people who rely on these models. It makes what we do discover that much less good." The AI models are basically seeing stuff that doesn't exist — which is what we call hallucinations. This is a problem because it makes it difficult for us to trust what we hear from the AI models about hallucinations and information.
- **Authority Attributions:** Information is not to be trusted. They ignore it. Tell someone about it. That's what happens when the information is bad and people don't trust it. Authority Attributions are crucial because they guide people on what to believe and not to believe. When Authority Attributions are high people trust in the piece of information. Use it.. When Authority Attributions go bad people ignore the information or if they relay it is considered as a fluke.
- **User Trust:** People are hungry for this information. But when AI does such out of context change-of-information, people simply do not believe the system and they don't trust the person who made that content.

Strategies to Maintain Authenticity:

- **Devoid of Factual Error:** Support any claims with evidence and/or source unless it is a well known fact.
- **editing:** I will have to catch the AI citations and correct the mistakes right with the AI citations.
- **We have to verify the work of the Automated Design Intelligence (ADI) system.**

This means we have to look over the recommendations made by the ADI system. We do this to make sure everything is correct before we publish it. The ADI system can make mistakes especially when it is dealing with information or information that can have a big impact. So we need to have a person review the work of the ADI system to make sure it is okay. This is what we call Human-, in-the-loop Oversight. We use it to validate the work of the ADI system especially when it comes to high-impact information.

Being real is more than doing the right thing. It is a Geographic location necessity for people to see a company and trust a company. Authenticity is very important for a company to be visible, in a way and for people to trust a company.

So authenticity is a necessity for a company to be seen and for people to trust the company.

12.3.2 Trust Signals and Authority Building

In GEO the thing that really matters is not about how many other websites link to you but what the artificial intelligence thinks about your content. The artificial intelligence looks for signs that it can trust your content and these signs might actually make it harder for people to read and understand your content. For example the artificial intelligence likes it when your content is well structured and easy to cite and when your website is credible. So things like readability and structure are important, for the intelligence and it also likes it when you have a good domain credibility. The artificial intelligence thinks about your content. How it is presented and this is what really matters in GEO not just the number of backlinks you have.

Knowledge Check: The Future of GEO

1. Why is content authenticity critical in generative search?
 - a) To improve backlinks
 - b) To avoid hallucinations
 - c) To increase load times
 - d) To boost keywords

2. Which formatting aids AI engines in citing your content?
 - a) Long paragraphs
 - b) Bullet summaries
 - c) Rich media only
 - d) Hidden text

3. What is a major ethical concern with GEO?
 - a) Schema markup
 - b) Device speed
 - c) Prompt injection
 - d) Keyword density

4. Future of GEO positions visibility as:
 - a) Higher rankings
 - b) Being included in AI answers
 - c) More backlinks
 - d) Faster page loads

5. Trust signals include:
 - a) Oxymoronic content
 - b) Transparent citations
 - c) No disclosures
 - d) Random keywords

12.4 Summary

□ ChatGPT, Perplexity, and Google Gemini: Top platforms defining the AI search future

⊕ GEO (Generative Engine Optimisation): it is the discipline which strives to ensure the content can be discoverable, trustable and citable by AI engines.

⊕ You must optimize for conversation and long-tail natural language if you want to be visible in generative engines.

Zero-click search experiences require content that is organized, answer-worthy and succinct.

Content needs to be semantically rich and broken down into meaningful parts in order to make it AI-friendly.

⌘ Services such as Semrush AI Toolkit, Profound and Rankscale allow for tracking of AI citations and optimisation for generative platforms.

⌘ Reliability and fact-checking of the content are crucial to prevent hallucination hazards in AI-based generated responses.

⌘ Authoritativeness Focus on trust by a signal, schema markup and deep facts increase the citation likelihood.

- Geo-ethical issues consist in premature injection, uncredited information and bias in AI results.

⌘ GEO is changing the world of digital marketing, as presence is going to be linked with being part of AI-generated response clusters.

⌘ Brands that evolve into AI-first strategies will take on an early lead in the next wave of content discovery and digital engagement.

12.5 Key Terms

GEO – Generative Engine Optimisation; adjusting content to the point of visibility in AI-created search answers.

Generative Engine – Artificial intelligence which can provide the same answer to a question, conversely to showing a list of links.

Zero-Click Search –When your search yields an answer directly in the results and requires no clicks.

Conversational Query– Natural, question-based input that mirrors the way people speak instead of type.

Schema Markup – A format of adding structured data to web pages in order to help search engines understand the content context.

Trust Signals – Features such as author bios, citations, schema and DA that add up to content credibility.

Answer Economy – The online ecosystem in which AI-powered responses eliminate the requirement for traditional web browsing.

Hallucination – A type of failure in which AI models create factually incorrect or bogus material.

Quote Friendly Copy – Authoring copy in a manner easily quotable by AI systems, with proper attribution.

AI Answer Inclusion The appearance of a brand/content source in AI-generated search results.

12.6 Descriptive Questions

Describe the history of generative engines and how they affect traditional search.

What is the difference between keyword SEO and conversational SEO?

Talk about how you can best make your content appear in featured/mostly zero-click search answers.

What are the methods to monitor GEO performance and citation of AI?

Discuss the ethics of GEO, particularly misinformation and attribution.

What makes structured content so important to be visible in generative engine output?

Explain how trust signals can help GEO performance.

Forecast how digital marketing positions will change with the emerging nature of generative search.

12.7 References

1. Google AI Blog – Search Generative Experience (SGE)
2. OpenAI – ChatGPT and Web Browsing
3. Wired – The Changing Nature of AI-Powered Search
4. Search Engine Journal – Future of SEO in the Age of AI
5. Backlinko – Generative Engine Optimisation Explained
6. Semrush – GEO Tools and AI Search Visibility Metrics

Answer Key to Knowledge Check (12.3)

1. b) To avoid hallucinations
2. b) Bullet summaries
3. c) Prompt injection
4. b) Being included in AI answers
5. b) Transparent citations

12.8 Case Study

Title: How The New York Times Uses Generative Engine Optimisation notes

Introduction

The New York Times (NYT) And one of the most respected news publications in the world The NYT has always been very good at SEO with one of a large archive content full of evergreen, breaking, and deep reporting. But with the rise of generative search experiences — like Google's AI Overviews and web-enabled browsing in ChatGPT — NYT faced a new threat: retaining visibility and credit when people might never click at all.

The New York Times made a change and it is interesting to see how they did it. They changed the way they edit their stories. They tried out new ideas to keep people interested in what they have to say. The New York Times wants to stay important and keep its influence in a world where computers and artificial intelligence are playing a role in the news. The New York Times is working to keep its name and be a leader, in the news business even when artificial intelligence is changing the way people get their news.

Problem Statement 1: The Click Through Rates in Traditional Search have been going down. This is about the Click Through Rates in Traditional Search and how they are not doing well. The Click Through Rates, in Traditional Search are getting lower and lower.

When search introduced AI Overviews, the New York Times saw that people were not clicking on their stories much as they used to. The New York Times stories were still showing up. People were not visiting them. The problem was that Google's AI was giving people the answers they needed so they did not need to go to the New York Times website to read the story. This made the New York Times stories less important to visit.

Solution:

They started using a style that is based on geography. This means they put bullets next to summaries and direct quotes from people. The New York Times is using this style to make things easier to read. The New York Times wants to make sure people understand what is going on in places.

* The New York Times uses bullets to make things clear

* The New York Times puts summaries next to these bullets

* The New York Times also includes quotes from people, in these bullets.

We need to have structured data at the top of the article. This will push the Artificial Intelligences into adding citations. We are talking about the sections. The Artificial Intelligences will look at the data, at the top of the article and then they will add the citations to the sections.

such as “Key Takeaways” and “In Brief” were introduced across some news categories.

They even tried to make new tools to see when and how robots were summarizing New York Times articles. This was done so editors could make use of their New York Times content and the content of other people. The goal was to help editors with New York Times articles and other articles by giving them control, over what robots were doing with their New York Times content.

Impact:

- Better NYT Reference citation visibility in Generative Answers
- Preserving brand power without relying merely on clicks
- Informed newsroom adjustments for AI-readiness

Problem 2: The AI response cannot be given to the intelligence properly. The artificial intelligence is not getting the intelligence response. This is a problem, with the intelligence.

The New York Times writes some good articles that are very detailed. Sometimes these articles are used by intelligence to make short summaries for people to read. The

problem is that The New York Times is not always given credit for these articles. This is an issue because it affects how visible The New York Times is and it is also a matter of doing the right thing. The New York Times and its articles deserve to be recognized when they are used to create these summaries.

Solution:

The company also implemented internal policies so that proprietary data could be marked, it deployed schema mark up aggressively and made sure the jump to pattern, authorship and timestamp appeared on every important point in an article. They also had been in active discussions with tech platforms, pushing for clearer accreditation guidelines with AI-generated results.

Impact:

- Improving attribution in Perplexity and Bing AI responses
- Having your work acknowledged as a transparent, citation-worthy reference
- Improved legal and ethical standing on use of content

Problem 3: Transforming Editorial Workflows for AI Expectations

Traditional formats of reporting were not conducive to utilize conversational AI models, whose methods tended to favor structured summaries and simplified narratives.

Solution:

NYT has been training its edit teams on content structuring (AI-first). Reporters were encouraged to include brief definitions and context in their nut graphs, shape headlines around how people searched for the concept, and balance story packages that could answer “who, what, when where why” straight on.

We experimented with formats that are designed for the AI response, specifically voice-first narratives and multi-modal articles that include a layer of textual data, an audio layer to invite new voices into the journalism process (we built this representation by creating both human-readable and language-machine readable text), as well as a machine-readable data layer.

Impact:

- Enhancements in AI readability of long-form content
- More NTY exposure in voice search as well as AI assistants
- Augmentation of the internal GEO dynamic sense

Reflective Questions

How did NYT balance traffic versus zero-click search?

What are the dangers of a publisher if AI paraphrases their content without citing?

How did the NYT alter their articles to be better parsed by AI without sacrificing journalism?

Should media companies cooperate with AI platforms or go it alone to preserve their intellectual property?

To what extent can policy and regulation preserve content in generative spaces?

Conclusion

The NYT case is symptomatic of the fluidity about what a search engine result can include.

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 13 V3 (3).docx

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 ATLAS SkillTech University

Document Details

Submission ID

trn:oid::3618:127584601

Submission Date

Feb 5, 2026, 12:51 PM GMT+5:30

Download Date

Feb 5, 2026, 12:54 PM GMT+5:30

File Name

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 13 V3 (3).docx

File Size

172.2 KB

26 Pages

7,815 Words

41,896 Characters

0% Overall Similarity

The combined total of all matches, including overlapping sources, for each database.

Filtered from the Report

- ▶ Bibliography
- ▶ Quoted Text
- ▶ Cited Text
- ▶ Small Matches (less than 15 words)

Match Groups

- 0 Not Cited or Quoted 0%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- 0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
- 0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- 0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 0% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 0% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Integrity Flags





0 Integrity Flags for Review

No suspicious text manipulations found.




Our system's algorithms look deeply at a document for any inconsistencies that would set it apart from a normal submission. If we notice something strange, we flag it for you to review.

A Flag is not necessarily an indicator of a problem. However, we'd recommend you focus your attention there for further review.

Match Groups

-  **0 Not Cited or Quoted 0%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
-  **0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
-  **0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
-  **0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 0%  Internet sources
- 0%  Publications
- 0%  Submitted works (Student Papers)

Unit 13: Trust, Privacy, and Ethics in the Digital Marketplace

Learning Objectives:

1. Learn the concepts of digital authenticity and transparency, how they contribute to produce user trust using SEO/SEM.
2. Identify major privacy laws and regulations around the globe (e.g., GDPR, CCPA, etc.) and describe how they affect digital marketing strategies.
3. Analyze ethical issues in SEO and SEM, such as black hat tactics, content spinning, and data scraping.
4. Describe the Different types of Google penalties and the ways they are activated as well as how to recover and be compliant.
5. Evaluate the impact of transparency in advertising and user data collections, and how it can change brand credibility and ranking.
6. By these realistic ethics your SEO/SEM should be running for a while and you are in sync with search engine standards. examples
7. Examine grounded business where unethical marketing led to disciplinary actions or negative press, and learn how responsible digital marketing can best be applied.

Content:

- 13.0 Introductory Caselet
- 13.1 Digital Authenticity & Transparency
- 13.2 Privacy Laws and Regulations
- 13.3 Ethical Issues in the Digital Domain
- 13.4 Google Penalties
- 13.5 Summary
- 13.6 Key Terms
- 13.7 Descriptive Questions
- 13.8 References
- 13.9 Case Study

13.0 Introductory Caselet

by Steven Boatsman “When Being Out of The Closet Means Going Out of Business..honoring their advertising requests regardless of how ridiculous they may be is better than losing money.

LinkMarketer had shown some potential and did good SEO in slick-time. Their clientele varied from small e-commerce ventures to medium service providers, the majority of which were seeing huge gains in search rankings within 1-5 weeks. Their secret? It’s a mix of aggressive inbound linking schemes, low-quality content, and keyword stuffing.

The tactic worked for a while. The agency was lauded by clients, and LinkMarketer promoted itself as results first. But underneath, the growing collection of red flags was there. They shared virtually nothing about what they did, completely disregarded that Google Guidelines do indeed change over time and cared very little about the user experience – as long as they could manipulate an algorithm.

Google Unveils Massive Update In early 2024, The Big G unleashed a monster update that targeted content authority and quality of backlink. Author’s note: This was a literal overnight blitzkrieg (as in BANG!) for many LinkMarketer clients – one day they find their rankings nowhere to be found, and pages de-indexed from the search engines and traffic fell to 0. The enraged clients — kept in the dark about how it was done — all demanding, how dare you let Soros start riots and violence in the heartland?! A number of lawsuits were filed and at least one data privacy investigation was initiated after the company discovered that it had been hoovering up cookie data without users agreeing to such collection.

The fallout was swift. LinkMarketer’s reputation collapsed. They had been blacklisted by several industry groups and their own site was penalised under Google’s Webmaster Guidelines.

Inside, the two men confronted a crisis: start anew with transparency or shut down.

This incident puts a huge importance on ethics, transparency and doing the right thing in SEO/SEM. In a world that is more and more dictated by regulation changes, compensating for cheap gains from bad dashy moves will ultimately harm... not only ranking but the brand as will trust of said users be broken.

Critical Thinking Question:

What is your view on how digital marketers can compete on SEO/SEM while being ethical and respectful of privacy laws in a more regulated digital world?

13.1 Digital Authenticity & Transparency

13.1.1 Importance of Authenticity in Digital Marketing

Digital authenticity This term is defined as the degree to which a brand's messaging, values and actions online. It covers how authentic, trustworthy and consistent a brand is seen to be on digital platforms – websites, ads, social media channels, emails and content marketing.

Value Of Authenticity In Digital Marketing The role of authenticity in digital marketing can't be understated, as modern customers are known to have a 'sophisticated eye'. Peoples' tastes have changed, and content that is shiny and sales-y stops working well if it doesn't feel real or transparent. Instead, they are looking for brands that act more human, tell stories with honesty and have clear missions. An authentic brand is the one that can develop emotional relationships with its audience and therefore it has more loyalty and advocates.

One of the reasons attesting to authenticity is repetitive messaging. Brands should strive for the same tone, text and promises via any channel. When a company says one thing but does something it can make people question what they really mean. For example a business that says it cares about the environment in its ads but does not tell people where its products come from or how they are made can seem like it is not being honest. This is what people mean by sustainability. This business is not showing its true commitment, to sustainability.

Another important thing to think about is communication that is focused on a goal. Brands that care about something than just making money also tend to mean more to the people who buy from them. This can happen when brands support causes show they are responsible to society and take a position on things that are important to what the brand is all about, like goal-oriented communication. Brands do this by using goal-oriented communication to talk about the things that matter to them.

Being real also means being open. When you share what really happens behind the scenes admit when you make mistakes and answer peoples criticisms, in public it can actually make people trust you more. This is because you are showing the kind of confidence that Authenticity requires. Authenticity is important. It means you have to be willing to be vulnerable.

honesty and humility. There is no better way to build relationships, than through genuine story telling of real customer experiences or founder stories than some impersonal product pitch.

When people like fans or followers do the thing we will all get better at knowing who to trust over time. This will make the internet a real place.. I think that when people do things just to seem authentic they are already not being real.

From the point of view of someone who works with search engines being authentic is important for how people interact with a website, how often they leave a website and how many times a brand is mentioned. On the hand when people make their own content people stay on the website longer share it more and other websites link back, to it naturally. These are all things that search engines look for when they decide how to rank websites.

Digital marketing authenticity is really important now. It is not something that's just nice to have it is something that we need to have. When people who are looking at ads are careful about what they believe they like companies that tell the truth and have something to say. Digital marketing authenticity is what people want. When companies have marketing authenticity people will keep coming back, to them for a long time and they will make more money.

13.1.2 Transparency as a Trust-Building Factor

What is Transparency in Digital Marketing

Transparency in marketing is when companies are open and honest about the things that affect what people buy. This means people need to know how their information is being used how much things cost and why they see ads. It also means being clear about when someone's paid to say something good about a product.

At a time when people are really thinking about privacy and doing the thing online transparency is very important for businesses. Transparency in marketing helps businesses build trust with people and keep that trust over time. Transparency in marketing is really about being honest and clear, with people so they can make good choices.

Today consumers want to know more about the people and companies they are buying from. They want to understand what these companies are all about and what they stand for. Consumers want to know if the brand they are buying from shares their values. They also want to know if their personal information is being used in a way that's fair and honest. Transparency is important because it gives consumers an idea of what is going on when they interact with a brand. Transparency makes things clear and open which is what consumers are looking for when they buy something from a brand.

Transparency is especially important in the following:

- **Privacy Policies and Consent:** Brands must be honest with users about the information they want to collect from the users and give the users a choice to say yes or no. If the Brands don't make it clear what they do with the users' information that is not in the interest of the user and could bring them into trouble with some laws to protect privacy for these users. "It's all about users understanding what's going on with their information, and letting them make the decision themselves in terms of what they'd like to do."

- **Influencer and Affiliate Disclosure:** If you write about something you have to say if someone paid you to do it. This is critical as individuals need to know if you are getting paid to like a brand. It can even damage the brand if people do not know about it. You could even end up in legal hot water. You have to be honest. For example, let's say someone paid you to write a review or an article about Influencer and Affiliate things.

- **Ad Copy and Value Propositions:** "The best [product here]." If a product says that it is the best people will think what they saying is real.

. If the advertisement is not good or if it tricks people into thinking the product is better than it actually is this makes customers unhappy. It can also hurt the brand. People want to know the truth. So companies should be honest. Say things that can be proven with evidence. Ad Copy and Value Propositions should always be truthful.

- **Pricing and Additional Costs:** When a customer gets a bill with costs that are not clear they might think something fishy is going on. This is not good, for the company because it can make people not trust the brand.

Transparency is not only a legal duty but also a strategic advantage. It sets brands apart in a crowded market and generates repeat business. Most importantly, transparency

means what's promised is indeed what's delivered — and in the digital era, that's a value no business should take lightly.



Figure 13.1

13.1.3 Brand Reputation and Consumer Trust

A brand's reputation is very important to it. These days people can say things about a brand on the internet. It can spread very quickly. So it is really important for a brand to be trusted. We are living in a time when it's not easy for a brand to get people to trust it but it is easy for a brand to lose that trust. For people to trust a brand the brand needs to be real, do the thing and be honest. A brand's reputation is very important, to it.

Trust is built when a company does what it says it will do. They need to give customers experiences every time. When things go wrong they have to be honest, about it.

Reliability is very important because it makes customers want to come. It makes them tell people about the company. Reliability is what makes customers stand up for a brand when people say things about it.

A brand's reputation today is influenced by things. These things can be very important.

* The way people talk about the brand

* What people think about the brand

A brand's reputation is what people think about the brand. So a brand's reputation today is influenced by the brand itself.

- reviews and ratings: What other people think is really important, to people who are buying things. If you have ratings people will probably not want to buy from you.. If you have good ratings it will really help people trust you and your online reviews and ratings.
- Social Media Etiquette: Companies that post things in a way listen to people when they have a problem and do not put out anything that is meant to annoy or upset people tend to be liked more by Social Media users. Social Media is a part of this. When Companies use Social Media the way it is good, for the Companies and the people who use Social Media.
- Content Integrity – When you copy and paste something that's not yours like a topic that someone else came up with or use tricks to get people to click on something it can really hurt your brand name. The things that actually help people trust you are when you show that you are a leader in your field have interesting ideas and back up what you say with facts from other people like Content Integrity does. This is what builds trust with people who read your stuff. That is important, for your brand name and Content Integrity.
- Crisis Response: The way a brand deals with its mistakes, like failures and recalls affects how much people trust the brand. If a brand says nothing or denies what happened it can make things worse.. If a brand is honest and fixes its mistakes it can help stop people from losing trust in the brand. Transparency and taking action can really help when a brand is in a crisis like a controversy or a recall because it shows that the brand is taking responsibility, for its failures.
- Values Alignment: People who buy things today really care about what's important to them. Brands that help people or the earth or do what is often have customers who stick with them longer. This makes people, like these brands even more when they actually do what they say they will do not just talk about it.

You might be surprised to learn something. Did you know is a common way to start a conversation when you want to tell someone about a fact that they probably do not know. I am going to tell you something. Did you know can be really interesting because it is usually followed by some information that you have not heard before. People use did you know to share things with each other.

Consumers want brands to show what they believe in and that means being more than the things they sell. The brand is like a promise we make. It shows people what kind of company we are. People usually trust brands when they are honest and own up to their mistakes not when they try to be perfect. Pryor said this because he thinks that brands should be truthful and take responsibility for what they do. Consumers want to see that brands, like ours are made up of people who really care about what they're doing.

Reputation is a deal these days. It is like something that's alive and always changing. Reputation is made up of what people think of you how much you interact with them online. If you are honest with them. Brands that want to be trusted by people have to put in the effort to build trust with them. They have to make sure people believe in them and what they do. Building trust is not easy. It is very important for brands to do so. Brands that spend money and time on building trust, with people are the ones that will have a reputation.

Authenticity, ethical business, and continued conversation The cornerstones of the open communication model—authenticity in approach, transparent ethical practices (fair labor, fair trade), and ongoing dialogue with stakeholders—wed companies to a new resin-like armor against misinformation campaigns as well as negative publicity.

13.2 Privacy Laws and Regulations

13.2.1 Overview of GDPR (General Data Protection Regulation)

The General Data Protection Regulation is a law in the European Union. This law went into effect on May 25 2018 in all the European Union member states. The General Data Protection Regulation was made to give people control over their own personal information. It also helps to make the rules, about keeping information private the same

all across Europe. The General Data Protection Regulation has become a standard that people look all around the world and it has helped shape laws in other places.

The General Data Protection Regulation is not just for companies based in the European Union. It is also for any company that handles the personal information of people who live in the European Union no matter where that company is located. This has led to companies around the world being responsible for what they do with peoples personal information and they have had to make promises to do things in a certain way, which has made companies all over the world take a closer look, at how they use the personal data of European Union residents.

Here are some of the major tenets of GDPR:

- The data should be held in a way that is lawful and fair. It, too, needs to be treated in a way that a conscientious person would do. That data collection and analysis must be within the law. Be done fairly and transparently. This is "needed so that the data formats have the right" # format. The manner in which the data is collected retained and processed must be lawful, fair and transparent.
- Specified Purpose: Data should only be collected for a clear and sensible purpose. This Data should not be used in a manner that is incompatible with the purpose for which this data was provided to you. The Data may only be used for the purpose it was collected and on the grounds of which the same is processed (purpose specification of the Data).
- Use something but only when you really need it not all the time Just use it as much as is necessary – do not use it more than that the use of should be in accordance to what we actually need – and no more.
- Accuracy: The information we hold about you should be accurate. We need to make sure it's updated all the time. Personal information is very important. We must keep personal information accurate.
- Storage Limitation: We will not retain Personal Information in a manner that enables us to identify the Relevant Individuals for longer than is necessary. We must ensure that Personal Information is retained only for as long as it's needed to serve the Relevant Individuals. This means we must take care with Personal Information how it is stored, and ensure that we do not retain this for longer than we need to, so that Relevant Individuals can be protected.

- **Privacy and Integrity:** We need to be sure that we have security processes in place to protect our data from the bad guys. This also means that we need to ensure the integrity and Confidentiality of our data is not threatened by those who should not have access. We have to do this to secure our data.
- **Accounting:** Firms must show not only that they are following the rules with their paperwork and how things are done on the inside of the company. “I think they just have to prove that their accounting is okay by keeping records and making sure everything is done right.” This is a big deal for accounting, because companies need to be honest and transparent about, well, their stuff. Accounting is a part of this.

Marketers have to deal with limits because of the G.D.P.R. Rules.

The G.D.P.R. Rules are affecting things like email marketing and cookie following and behavioural targeting.

All these things like email marketing and cookie following and behavioural targeting have to be done only after the user gives permission.

They can not have pre-checked boxes for things, like email marketing and cookie following and behavioural targeting.

The General Data Protection Regulation rules are very clear. Users of a service should have to say it is okay before any company can use their information. People who buy things have the right to see what information a company has about them. They also have the right to change or delete their information. Companies need to be upfront and honest about how they use peoples information. They have to tell people what they are doing with their data. The companies have to give people an idea of what is going on with their data and this is what the General Data Protection Regulation is all, about.

The General Data Protection Regulation or GDPR also created the position of a Data Protection Officer for companies that handle a lot of data. If a company has a data breach they have to tell the authorities about it within 72 hours. They also have to inform the people affected by the data breach if the risk to these people's high. This is a part of the GDPR rules for companies that process large amounts of personal data, like a Data Protection Officer overseeing the process.

If a company does not follow the rules the company will have to pay a lot of money. The company can get a fine of up to €20 million or 4% of the company's annual turnover whichever amount is more. This is why privacy compliance is so important, to companies. The fines are so high that companies are spending a lot of money to make sure they are doing the thing with privacy compliance.

13.2.2 CCPA (California Consumer Privacy Act)

The CCPA- California Consumer Privacy Act is one of the largest consumer privacy laws passed in the state of California and became effective on January 1, 2020. It gives California residents certain rights on how their information is collected, used, shared and sold by businesses. While it is a state law, its impact has been felt nationally and even globally at companies that work or sell to customers in California.

The intent behind CCPA is to empower consumers over their personal information, and hold businesses accountable. Unlike GDPR it is not “fire and forget,” but more of a right to opt-out and transparency.

Key CCPA Provisions Some of the key components of the CCPA are:

- **Right to Know:** Consumers have the right to know what personal information has been gathered and why.
- **Deletion Rights:** Consumers have the right to request that we delete personal information about you.
- **Opt-Out Rights:** You have the right to opt-out of allowing us to sell your personal information.
- **Non-Discrimination Right:** Businesses are not allowed to discriminate against consumers for exercising their rights under the CCPA.

In order to be subject under CCPA, a business must satisfy one of the following:

- Annual gross receipts are greater than \$25 million
- Buys, sells or receives the personal information of 100,000 or more consumers or households
- Receives 50 percent or more of its annual revenues from selling consumers' personal information

Under CCPA, businesses must provide updated privacy policies that use plain language to explain

rights of consumers, and the means and mechanisms for their exercise. In addition, businesses must

include a link that says “Do Not Sell My Personal Information” on their websites.

From a digital marketing standpoint, CCPA throws into question several key strategies – from remarketing to lookalike audiences to behavioral targeting. It shifts more of the onus to marketers that personal data is collected and used in a transparent and consumer preference-respecting way.

While the CCPA does not carry penalties as punitive as that of GDPR, failure to comply can come with penalties such as fines and charges. CPRA Further extends and enhances the CCPA with broader enforcement elements and additional consumer rights were proposed to take effect in 2023 under the California Privacy Rights Act (CPRA).

For digital marketers, compliance is no longer just about avoiding penalties — it’s about establishing trust with users long term.

13.2.3 Other Global Privacy Regulations (India’s DPDP Act, etc.)

And though GDPR and CCPA are some of the most-publicised privacy laws, they are part of a slew of countries around the world ruling on their own regulations as data misuse and lack of transparency becomes more widespread.

The most important new entry is the Digital Personal Data Protection (DPDP) Act of 2023 in India. The Act creates a framework for the protection of personal data and establishes that companies or entities that handle such data be held accountable.

manage it responsibly. It is grounded on concepts equivalent to those in GDPR, such as limitation of processing, purpose specification, consent and rights.

Under the DPDP Act:

- Companies must get clear, informed consent to collect personal data.
- Users have options to opt out from providing consent, update data or delete data.
- Data fiduciaries would have to inform users and the Data Protection Board if there is a breach.
- Special protections will apply to children’s data and not be usable for targeted advertising.

Some other countries also adopted the comparable data protection laws:

- Brazil’s LGPD is similar to GDPR and it covers data processed in Brazil.

- PIPEDA (Canada) – Personal Information Protection and Electronic Documents Act
This act regulates the collection and use of personal information by private-sector organizations.

- China's PIPL is one of the strictest regulations in the world, featuring tight restrictions on cross-border data transfers.

13.3 Ethical Issues in the Digital Domain

13.3.1 Black-Hat vs. White-Hat Practices

White-hat SEO are methods which conform to search engine guidelines that focus on the user and web visitor. This would involve developing unique, high quality content, creating authority and natural backlinks, optimizing page load time, having a mobile-friendly design, using schema markup etc. White-hat tactics focus on permanence and reliability over the long haul. They increase content value, satisfaction and branding level as well.

In sharp contrast to white-hat SEO, black-hat SEO consists of techniques aimed at manipulating search engine algorithms for short-term, usually artificial gains. Common black-hat methods include:

- Keyword stuffing: Cramming webpages with too many subjects and keywords for the sole purpose of increasing rank.
- Cloaking: Serving one set of content to users and another to search engines as a way to deceive the latter.
- Link farms and PBNs (Private Blog Networks): Building spammy backlinks from huge numbers of low-quality sites.
- Text or links hidden from the user: Covering text or links in a misleading way that is visible to search engines, but not to users.
- Content scraping: Copying content from other sources to republish on your site.

These are also unethical activities as they deceive users, taint the content and break the rules of platforms. It's true that black-hat tactics can sometimes deliver small, short-term results, but the risks far outweigh any temporary reward – penalties from search engines, loss of rankings or even getting your domain blacklisted and putting your reputation on the line.

The final variety, grey-hat SEO, is a combination of the other two. These are the kind of tactics that might not run afoul of rules but would raise ethical eyebrows. There may be some cases such as overly aggressive guestposts or AI generated content with close to no human moderation.

Black-hat vs. white-hat, in other words, is no longer just a technical decision for marketers to make, but a matter of communicating brand values as well. Ethical marketing practices help users trust your service and comply with the required laws, promoting a sustainable digital growth. Not only will businesses, that opt for the white hat route, be getting ready to win with algorithms but in a digital world that is demanding of brands which are honest and transparent.

13.3.2 Moral Hazards in Data and Targeting

The ascent of digital data as a medium for collecting has armed marketers with more knowledge about users and what they do and like to use than they probably dreamed was possible. But this also means an enormous potential for personalized intervention — with huge moral grey areas. There is a fine line between individualized and personal, and crossing it thoughtlessly could lead to difficulties both in pictures — Privacy! — and with regulators.

Informed consent remains a significant ethical issue. “A lot of users are not even aware how much is being collected, why it’s collected and who it’s shared with.”

While most websites display a cookie banner and privacy policy, they are typically written in dry legalese that discourages users from reading them in full.

Also cited as a concern is behavioral targeting, where data such as browsing habits, location and searches fuels the placement of personalized ads. It works, but has the potential to be scary for end-users who do not know how closely their behavior is being monitored. We might associate the appearance of ads connected with a personal health search with creepiness and surveillance anxiety.

Data consolidation and profiling are also morally ambiguous. Marketers can build extremely targeted profiles around who people are and what they are interested in as well as past behavior. Although this provides a very fine grained segmentation, it could potentially cause discrimination of some bidding classes, by excluding these from offers or by pricing them differently due to perceived economic value.

Another problem is reputation in retargeting. When done right, retargeting can lead to conversions but it also has the potential to irritate and even disturb users who believe they are being stalked throughout the internet. AI and predictive algorithms The same kinds of issues arise from the use of AI and predictive algorithms as with data management: bias, transparency, whether we can really trust the wisdom they produce.

Secondly, advertising geared towards non-savvy consumers, such as children or the elderly, is to be approached with concern. These communities may be unaware of what it means to have data collected on them or how to critically assess online content, and they are thus more easily manipulated.

- Transparency in data practices

- Minimal data collection
- Consent-driven targeting
- Avoidance of exploitative tactics

13.3.3 Role of Marketers in Promoting Responsible Practices

Marketers control what happens online. They aren't just cash cows — they are experience builders and stewards of data use. In the wake of this, they have a distinct duty to encourage ethical action and responsible behavior throughout the digital-advertising sector.

One avenue to proper this responsibility is ethical leadership. Dishonorably behaving and doing business: Marketers need to be truthful and not dishonorable by "being straight" when running campaigns. That is to say we need to be extremely careful jumping to conclusions, making grandiose claims and assertions or conducting (the equivalent of) tests that proceed from A/B -> consumer-impacting behaviour driven by negative dark patterns / microsoft Design toolkit >[hidden opt-out of mandatory subscribing].

Marketers have to be responsible advocates for the privacy of users, as well. But in an age where surveillance just seems to be the norm and our data are being sold like cow meat on the decentralized bazaar ethically inclined marketer might still have some leverage by insisting on minimal transparency, no grossly excessive data collection, and even advertise use of user well-being over razor sharp perf top lines. Marketers can get under the hoods and work elbow to elbow with their firm's legal and compliance folks to craft campaigns that are not just legal, but sensitive.

And there is also a critical role in public education and internal advocacy. Within their companies, marketers themselves should be driving the internal conversations about the ethics around tools, platforms and targeting strategies. They help provide a culture of accountability by asking questions, suggesting alternatives and documenting procedures.

Marketers will also have to consider the ethics of AI and algorithm-driven decisioning that underpins targeting and personalisation. That includes re-evaluating A.I. tools for embedded bias, ensuring data sources are diverse and fair and being transparent about automated decision-making in ad delivery or pricing.

Did you know?

More than 70% of the global marketers surveyed agree it's not just their job to ensure campaign effectiveness; but they must now also become custodians of ethical digital engagement and assure trust and values in an increasingly data-driven world.

Responsible marketing should also involve thinking through the second-order implications of a campaign. This extends from scaremongering, to misinformation or bias. It is also about the inclusivity and accessibility in terms of content, and towards cultural sensitivities and the diversity needs.

And marketers can also follow and reply to comments. Ignoring your customers' complaints, especially when they touch on privacy or ethics, can have a serious dent on a brand's value and reputation. The more proactive and open we are in communicating, the greater opportunity we have of building stronger connections with those audiences.

Last but not the least, ethical responsibility in marketing is no limitation -it's a strategy. Brands that are deemed to be trustworthy, respectful and value-driven will find it easier to thrive by gaining a threshold worth organi.. trong, D (2002).

Marketers now have the tools, control and platforms to push for a more ethical and user-centred digital world that cjnently doesn't exist - we should step up with intent and responsibility vp audience engagement at Eurosport Discovery, ads.

13.4 Google Penalties

13.4.1 Common Google Penalties and Their Causes

Google penalties refer to punitive measures taken by the search engine to degrade a website's visibility in its search results, either temporarily or permanently, due to a contravention of Google's Webmaster Guidelines. These penalties can be algorithmic or manual. Understanding these penalties and why they happen is critical for digital marketers, SEO specialists, and website owners who want to create long-term search-friendly websites.

Algorithmic penalties are applied and removed automatically by something like Google's core updates or an algorithm like Penguin or Panda. These are not reported to webmasters but can be noticed if rankings suddenly drop after an algorithm update. Algorithm action impact huge percentages of the web and are intended to enhance content quality, link integrity, and user experience.

Manual penalties are levied by Google's human reviewers, and result from sites that have been found in clear breach of the guidelines. When a manual action is imposed, Google notifies the site owner through the Search Console, and tells you what they did.

Here are some common Google penalties:

Unnatural Links to Your Site: Initiated when Google identifies spammy or manipulative inbound links. This could mean purchasing links, taking part in link farms or excessive reciprocal linking.

Low Value/Thinness Content: Pages that offer little or no value – poor-quality content, duplicate copies of other pages (especially on the same site), doorway pages or scraped content – will probably be devalued if not removed from the index.

Keyword Overload: Jamming of content full with keywords to manipulate rankings is a violation for Content Quality and will get affected in terms visibility.

Cloaking and Sneaky Redirects: If something is displayed to a user that is different than what Google crawled on the web page, Google will consider it cloaking and penalize the site accordingly.

Spammy Structured Markup: Implementing schema or markup code that falsifies data in an attempt to be deceptive to users or search engines might lead to a penalty, especially if rich snippets are exploited.

User-Created Spam: It's not just links that webmasters can get in trouble for but unmoderated comments or forums as well, which can be filled with spammy posts and links.

Hacked Site: A repeatedly hacked site can be negatively affected until the issue is resolved and reconsideration requested.

A penalty recovery starts with a cause analysis, correction and sometimes recon request (for manual penalties). Algorithmic penalties often involve fixing whatever is wrong with your site, then waiting for the next update cycle.

Awareness of these causes helps the Webmaster refrain from taking shortcuts and embarking on ethical SEO technique. Avoiding penalties is far easier than removing them, not to mention the livelihood impact on your traffic and brand.

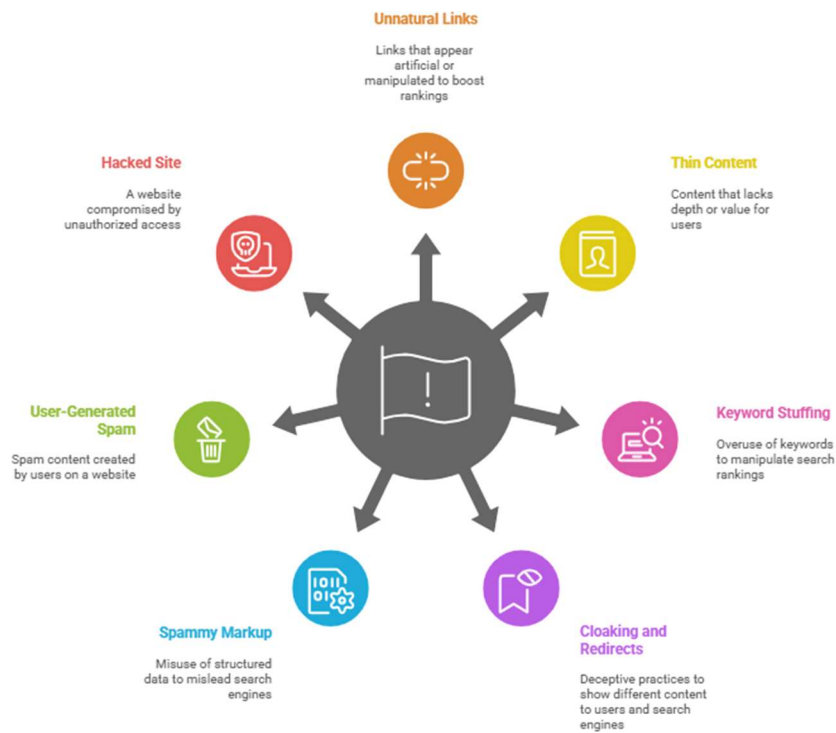


Figure 13.2

13.4.2 Impact of Black-Hat SEO

Black-hat SEO is a set of practices that are used to get higher search rankings in an unethical manner not following the guidelines, and includes such manipulative techniques as spam links. These approaches target algorithmic workarounds vs. a better user experience and content quality.

Although some of these techniques might provide you with quick results, you run a high risk of long-term penalties as in Google penalties.

Key black-hat techniques include:

- **Cloaking**: Presenting different content to a search engine than to a user in an attempt to deceive or manipulate the site's ranking.
- **Keyword Stuffing**: Using content, meta tags or alt text with an unusually high concentration of keywords.
- **Link Schemes**: The act of buying or selling links, joining link farms or utilizing automated tools to generate links.

- **Cloaking:** Serving different content to search engines than users in a deceptive manner.
- **Content Automation:** A bot or software that generates large volumes of content that has low quality and meaningless.
- **Duplicate Content and Scraping:** It is Copy-Pasting content from other websites but adding no or little value.

This approach can be absolutely devastating:

Manual Penalties: these are penalties that Google manually applies and it can negatively affect the full site or only partial ones. This can result in loss of rankings and deindexing.

Drop in Organic: Unnatural techniques often cause wide fluctuations in search presence, which leads to traffic drop and a sense of distrust amongst users.

Reputation Damage: If users get spammed with non-correlated or irrelevant content, they can perceive the site as untrustworthy. The damage to reputation is not easily undone.

Financial Loss: Diminished organic traffic can result in fewer conversions, sales and ad revenue. When it's bad, it can actually be harmful to business.

Recovery Time and Expense: Finding and fixing violations, sending reconsideration requests and recovering rankings may require months of work by experienced webmasters.

Legal Risks: Some black-hat tactics, such as scraping copyrighted content or invading user privacy, carry with them the risks of lawsuits.

Even so, black-hat tactics endure as businesses feel pressure to compete, remain ignorant that the rules have changed or in some cases simply want to cheat their way out of slow natural growth. But keep in mind, there will be consequences over the long-term since Google's algorithm is now more advanced and punishment will cost you much more than what you may have gotten out of it.

Marketers can discourage stakeholders from engaging in black-hat SEO and promote campaigns that adhere to ethical, people-first principles. Darwinism Building a digital empire from lies is not sustainable in an environment that treasures quality, trust and transparency.

13.4.3 White-Hat SEO as a Sustainable Approach

White-hat SEO is the optimization of your website based on search engine rules and primarily for users leading to organic, long-term growth. **White-Hat vs. Black-Hat** Unlike black-hat approaches, white-hat methods are ethical and transparent and can openly

be sustained over time. They help lay the groundwork for strong digital presence that not only bring in traffic but built brand's credibility and trust together.

Some of the most important aspects in white-hat SEO process are:

Produce Valuable Content: You have to write useful and interesting content for your users. This entails a comprehensive research, proper structure and matching building with user intent.

- **Reputation Management:** Use of white-hat techniques in protecting a positive online reputation while staying away from being associated with spam or low-quality websites.
- **Better Conversion Rates:** A site that's optimized serves its user's purpose and will generally have better conversion rates.

It takes patience, commitment and a user-first mentality to implement white-hat SEO.

"It's not going to come overnight but it will prepare us to be successful at what we want." For marketers

in order to establish credibility and keep up with the times, white-hat SEO is now the only avenue.

Knowledge Check – 13.4 Google Penalties

1. What typically triggers a manual Google penalty?
 - a. Fast site speed
 - b. Cloaking tactics
 - c. Organic backlinks
 - d. Mobile-friendly design

2. Which is a black-hat SEO method?
 - a. Original blogs
 - b. Meta descriptions
 - c. Link farms
 - d. HTTPS encryption

3. What is a key feature of white-hat SEO?

- a. Hidden text
 - b. Keyword stuffing
 - c. Buying backlinks
 - d. User-focused content
-
4. What happens during an algorithmic penalty?
 - a. Manual notification
 - b. Automated ranking drop
 - c. Link removal
 - d. Reconsideration request
-
5. What can help recover from a Google penalty?
 - a. Buying new domains
 - b. Submitting a reconsideration request
 - c. Hiding affected pages
 - d. Posting more ads

13.5 Summary

⊞ Digital believability and honesty is however crucial for making sure that users have trust in SEO & SEM activities.

⊞ Ethical marketing should strike a balance between customization and privacy respecting users.

⊞ Black-hat SEO works well for an initial period, but usually results in Google downranking or banning the website and long-term loss.

⊞ Good SEO is man-centered (User Centered) and abides by search engine guidelines, where as White-Hat SEO is not so aggressive that they violate any term of service.

⊞ Rigorous regulations such as GDPR, CCPA and others require that the private data can only be collected, used, shared in certain way.

⊞ Violations of privacy laws may result in substantial penalties, legal liability and consumer distrust.

⌘ Ethical challenges for digital marketers usually include themes around data gathering, behavioural targeting, and profiling.

(continued...) × Marketers must actively support responsible practice by developing campaigns that do not only respect the rights of users but also legal guidelines.

⌘ Google penalties are manual or algorithmic in response to offences including link schemes, cloaking and thin content.

⌘ To resolve penalties it has required comprehensive audits, remediation and often a request for reconsideration.

⌘ Following Digital Ethics helps to promote durable relationships and minimize the chance of digital disaster, whilst also meeting the changing standards set by digital people.

⌘ Companies have to keep up with evolving privacy laws and ethics in order to stay ahead and within bounds.

13.6 Key Terms

Black-hat SEO: Unethical strategies for improving a page's rank on search engine results.

White-hat SEO: SEO tactics that are good and which conform to the rules set out by search engines.

GDPR: A European data protection law that concerns itself with the privacy and consent of users.

CCPA: California law that lets people choose how companies can use their personal information.

Why You Need Data Minimization: Using as little information as needed for a specific purpose.

Manual Penalty: A penalty that is given by a human reviewer from a search engine.

Algorithmic Penalty: It refers to the automatic decrease in rankings that occurs as a result of updating the search algorithm.

Cloaking: Presenting different content to the users compared to what is visible by search engines in a deceptive manner.

Marketing & Data Profiling: User profiling for selection purposes.

User consent: User's informed and unforced consent to data processing.

Retargeting: Ad served after a user has interacted with the website.

Transparency on the (Digi) Web: Candid Sehlinha about how user data is collected and used.

13.7 Descriptive Questions

What are black-hat and white-hat SEO strategies? Provide examples.

What is the effect of GDPR on marketers when it comes to creating digital campaigns?

Describe the ethical dilemmas associated with behavioral targeting and profiling of users.

Key features of the CCPA What are some of the key aspects of CCPA and how does it contrast from GDPR?

Describe what are Google penalties on websites and why it has happened?

How can marketers incentivize ethical responsibility in digital advertising?

How Organizations Can Keep Up with the Expanding Scope of Global Privacy Rules

Explain the significance of openness in digital data collection and with user consent.

13.8 References

1. General Data Protection Regulation (EU) – Official Text
2. California Consumer Privacy Act – Legislative Framework
3. Digital Personal Data Protection Act, Government of India
4. Google Search Essentials – Webmaster Guidelines
5. Ethical Marketing Principles in the Digital Age – Journal of Business Ethics
6. SEO Best Practices – Industry Reports and White Papers

Answer Key to Knowledge Check – 13.4

1. b. Cloaking tactics
2. c. Link farms
3. d. User-focused content
4. b. Automated ranking drop
5. b. Submitting a reconsideration request

13.9 Case Study

Title: The Facebook–Cambridge Analytica Scandal and Its Implications for Digital Privacy Summary

The Facebook-Cambridge Analytica problem was a deal for people who use the internet. It showed that there are problems with how Facebook collects data from people who use Facebook. The Facebook-Cambridge Analytica controversy made a lot of people think about marketing and privacy. It made people wonder if Facebook is doing a job of keeping their personal information safe. The Facebook-Cambridge Analytica controversy is still an issue for people who care about what happens to their data, on Facebook.

People do not really understand what they are agreeing to when they give their consent and there is a chance that personal data will be misused for political and commercial purposes. The whole world was worried about this. The problem that came out of the scandal started big discussions about privacy ethics and how to make sure that people and companies are accountable for what they do, with personal data and if the rules need to be changed.

1 Problem Formulation 1.1 Unauthorized Data Aggregation

Cambridge Analytica took the information of up to 87 million Facebook users without asking them. They were able to do this because of a quiz app that someone else made. This quiz app did not just take the users information it also took information from their friends on Facebook. Cambridge Analytica got all this information, from Facebook users and their friends.

Solution

Now people who want to sell things and projects have to show that they really need the information and they have to be more careful. Users also got options to see what Apps can do and to stop Apps from doing things they do not like. Facebook made these changes to help users have control, over their information.

Issue 2: Non-Transparent Targeted Advertising

Cambridge Analytica is accused of taking the information it collected from people and using it to make profiles of individual voters. These profiles were used to show Cambridge Analytica voters personalized ads. The problem is that the people who had their information taken did not know what was happening to it. Cambridge Analytica did not make it clear that it was using the information it collected to target Cambridge Analytica voters with these ads.

Solution

They demonstrated the moral hazards of targeting practices that are opaque. And then Facebook rolled out the “Ad Library” to shed more light on political and issue advertising. All advertisers are now required to disclose organizations behind campaigns and users can understand why they’re being targeted. Marketers were beginning to shift toward transparent, permission-based targeting practices that respect users’ awareness and preference. Problem 3: On Shambhala and the Resentment of People Editor's Note: maybe dimension could be added?

Laws were not strong enough, at that moment of the scandal, to act against such a wholesale abuse of data. The incident has delivered a blow to already fragile public trust into Facebook and led to calls for immediate changes in law.

Solution

One of the international responses was a further wave of privacy regulation. The European Union began enforcement of GDPR in earnest. In the U.S., California passed CCPA. The scandal led to countries either adopting or strengthening data protection laws. Companies all over the world were hiring Data Protection Officers and executing compliance programs to mitigate such risks.

Reflective Questions

How do you allow for other people to securely access the data in your service?

What are some things marketing people can do to make targeting more clear?"

How did the scandal shape today’s privacy laws?

How can marketing messages that exploit fear and manipulation be considered not harmful?

What’s the worst-case scenario if companies refuse to adapt to more modern privacy norms?

Conclusion

The Facebook-Cambridge Analytica scandal will be a human-history teaching moment for digital ethics in much the same way Jenny Holzer explored redaction in light. It also laid bare how easily user data can be manipulated without appropriate oversight, transparency and consent structures. The episode served as a global wake-up call on digital privacy and produced reforms that were adopted around the world, not just to platform policies but also national laws and marketing ethics. Today's companies should treat user data as respectfully and carefully as a fine vase, that best set of silver or any other valuable asset. The lessons from this scandal are as timely as ever for any marketer attempting to traverse the flash point between growth, responsibility and trust in a digital age.

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 14 V3 (2).docx

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 SEO & SEM Strategy_BBA_3

 ATLAS SkillTech University

Document Details

Submission ID

trn:oid::3618:127593832

Submission Date

Feb 5, 2026, 2:55 PM GMT+5:30

Download Date

Feb 5, 2026, 3:00 PM GMT+5:30

File Name

SEO and SEM Strategy Unit 14 V3 (2).docx

File Size

219.3 KB

24 Pages

6,924 Words

38,326 Characters

1% Overall Similarity

The combined total of all matches, including overlapping sources, for each database.

Filtered from the Report

- ▶ Bibliography
- ▶ Quoted Text
- ▶ Cited Text
- ▶ Small Matches (less than 15 words)

Match Groups

- 1 Not Cited or Quoted 1%**
 Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
- 0 Missing Quotations 0%**
 Matches that are still very similar to source material
- 0 Missing Citation 0%**
 Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
- 0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
 Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 1% Internet sources
- 0% Publications
- 0% Submitted works (Student Papers)

Integrity Flags





0 Integrity Flags for Review

No suspicious text manipulations found.




Our system's algorithms look deeply at a document for any inconsistencies that would set it apart from a normal submission. If we notice something strange, we flag it for you to review.

A Flag is not necessarily an indicator of a problem. However, we'd recommend you focus your attention there for further review.

Match Groups

-  **1 Not Cited or Quoted 1%**
Matches with neither in-text citation nor quotation marks
-  **0 Missing Quotations 0%**
Matches that are still very similar to source material
-  **0 Missing Citation 0%**
Matches that have quotation marks, but no in-text citation
-  **0 Cited and Quoted 0%**
Matches with in-text citation present, but no quotation marks

Top Sources

- 1%  Internet sources
- 0%  Publications
- 0%  Submitted works (Student Papers)

Top Sources

The sources with the highest number of matches within the submission. Overlapping sources will not be displayed.

1 Internet

jemsu.com

<1%

Unit 14: SEO Strategy, Trends, and Future Outlook

Learning Objectives:

1. Know how SEO/ SEM fits into broader business and marketing goals, and what effect they have on brand visibility, customer acquisition, and revenue.
2. Explore practical examples to develop a better understanding of what works and what doesn't with SEO & SEM campaigns in multiple verticals.
3. Assess the latest and upcoming SEO trends such as AI-driven search, zero-click results, voice or visual search and more and see how it influences digital strategies.
4. Design holistic SEO-SEM campaigns to support business long term goals and improve digital omnichannel performance.
5. Predict and get ready for the future of search, which will involve a changing algorithm, generative AI rightsizing and changes in user intent and expectations.
6. Leverage trend prediction and competitive benchmarking to continuously optimize search strategies within a rapidly changing digital universe.
7. Foster flexible thinking to adapt to changing search technologies, laws and ethics regarding optimal digital design.

Content:

- 14.0 Introductory Caselet
- 14.1 Integrating SEO & SEM into Business Strategy
- 14.2 Case Studies of Successful SEO Campaigns
- 14.3 Latest SEO Trends
- 14.4 Preparing for the Future of Search
- 14.5 Summary
- 14.6 Key Terms
- 14.7 Descriptive Questions
- 14.8 References
- 14.9 Case Study

14.0 Introductory Caselet

Title: The Strategic Turnaround of an Iconic Brand

In 2020, a popular consumer electronics brand with more than 30 years of history was losing its footing in the increasingly digital-first competitive landscape. With a strong focus on off-line domination for decades, the high quality product supplier brand had traditionally passed on traditional retailing and depended largely on word of mouth. But as online shopping sped up, mobile-first behavior took off and competition from digitally-native startups intensified, its slump in web traffic became attributable to a lack of organic visibility growth which led to skyrocketing customer acquisition costs.

Fragmented digital footprint, outdated content strategy, and low investment on search marketing emerged as key barriers that the leadership realised needed to be addressed in real time. The website did not have SEO-friendly copy, mobile optimization or targeting of keywords. Search paid efforts Occasional toss in some budget-driven yes/no strategy, you-find-it-we'll-sell-it, with no audience insight or remarketing structures.

Google paid search campaigns were optimised for performance with traffic-based bidding, seasonal targeting and dynamic ad creatives.

Most importantly, SEO / SEM teams started collaborating across functions with product, analytics and branding teams to make their messaging consistent and performance driven.

In the first nine months, the brand saw organic traffic go up by 75%, paid search ROI rise by 50% and a significant uplift in customer engagement metrics across digital channels.

What started out as a tactical adjustment turned into a strategic shift—a transformation grounded in a new perception of search's value to the business.

Critical Thinking Question:

What can companies do to make sure SEO and SEM doesn't become two or three siloed initiatives in an organization but are woven into the fabric of long-term strategic planning and customer touchpoint?

14.1 Integrating SEO & SEM into Business Strategy

14.1.1 Role of SEO/SEM in Business Growth

SEO and SEM have resided as more than just "digital" marketing tactics, but rather UX and business practices for all other industries in the world. As consumer browsing

behaviour increasingly moves online, visibility within search results is integral to a brand's discoverability, authority and conversion performance.

SEO drives business growth by establishing organic visibility over the long term with content relevance, technical health, link authority, and user experience. When done well, SEO can produce the right audience at a low cost of acquisition, particularly compared to some paid channels. It also contributes to brand trust since having your page on the top means that users are likely to think of it as trustworthy or authoritative.

SEM, however, ensures that the ads are placed in front of individuals who are already in the purchasing mode or some time away from it (i.e., hitting their search engines). Unlike organic, SEM is dead accurate targetable geo, time of day and by platform and user intent. This enables businesses to align campaigns with active seasons, product launches and shifts in the competitive environment.

(Counter) SEO vs. SEM SE O&SEM On page & Off Page The battle between (Offsite) refers to the off page ranking factors, which are techniques you can use to improve your search rankings outside of your own website in these spaces obviously plays out as well with search marketing.

- In relation to Paid Search it's about future-proofing your business and building sustainable long-term equity in search visibility, through SEO.

14.1.2 Integrating SEO with Business Goals and Marketing Activity

Yet if SEO is to achieve any real business purpose it has to be deeply interwoven with the company's broader marketing and communications goals. This means there is a shift in philosophy from running classic wizardry magic that's technical SEO> to how strategic marketing combines content and optimization smack dab in the middle of brand building.

Content strategy: All SEO-optimized content must ladder up to the brand story and product marketing message.

For example, if a company promotes its sustainability, you may want to include long-tail search terms related to eco-friendly products, sustainable ways of making or delivering the product and certifications. Content calendars could also be based on campaign themes to plan the schedule of SEO in comparison to brand marketing.

Audience Alignment: Marketing personas should assist in keyword research and on-page optimization. The more you understand about your customers journey, the better you are for creating content that speaks to some one in all areas of this funnel (awareness through purchase) and how to keep it consistent across channels.

Funnel SEO: Your approach should work for the whole funnel. Top of funnel traffic can come from blog posts and resource hubs, but product landing pages and comparison

guides cater to mid-to-bottom funnel use cases. Your informational, navigational and transactional is in check which means you have full-funnel coverage.

Campaigns Integration: A seasonal offer, a product launch or the celebration of an event should be given SEO in advance. Designing landing pages, optimizing for hot queries, and internal linking strategies should be integrated into campaign planning cycles.

Data Integration: Whether it is the traffic from SEO, Rankings or clicks; comparing your metrics to other performance KPIs like conversion, click through rate and cost per acquisition will help you to keep report intelligent. This produces an integrated view performance dashboard, which associate SEO efforts to the actual marketing effects.

Collaborative Effort: SEO teams must collaborate with PR, content, social media and paid media teams in order to use the same keywords across each area of the business and to secure backlinks and amplify content wherever possible.

In the end, when SEO is aligned with marketing objectives, it go from being an island of activity to a central driver of growth - supporting brand results and performance media as well as customer education and retention.

14.1.3 Measuring ROI from SEO & SEM

Proving the ROI of SEO & SEM for Ecommerce Retailers is a conundrum that plagues many marketers and analysts today. Unlike other forms of marketing, where results may be more difficult to measure, search-based marketing has clear lines of sight for performance tracking — that is if it's structured properly.

In terms of SEO, it begins with defining what the value generated is:

- Growth of organic traffic: more non-paid visiting to important pages is the immediate result of successful SEO.

But SEO ROI cycle is delayed because of indexing, ranking and trust building periods. To close this distance, progressive companies declare ROI based on a benchmark consisting of historical performance and keyword opportunity, as well as CV.

For SEM, ROI is more immediate and quantifiable by:

- Cost per click (CPC) and Click through rate (CTR).
- Conversion rate on landing pages
- ROAS (Return on Ad Spend): Revenue / ad spend

- CUSTOMER LIFETIME VALUE (CLTV) VS Acquisition cost You know how much revenue a customer gets you. What's their margin? Advanced SEM tracking includes journey and goals setup requiring scrutiny and definition for the business.
- Other attribution models (first-click, last-click, position-based, data-driven).
- Conversion paths through Google Ads, GA4 or CRM integrations
- A/B testing of creatives and keywords to increase ROI over time

Key best practices to calculate SEO & SEM ROI:

- Establishing clear and measurable objectives (leads, sales, downloads, etc.)
- UTM parameters and funnel tracking to your Website, Bot or Page.
- Consolidating SEO/SEM reporting into business dashboards
- Segment traffic by channel and campaign intent type (unbranded vs. branded)

Did You Know?

“In a survey last month, Nielsen found that brands saw even higher conversion rates — up to 20% higher to be exact — when they were combining the use of both SEO and SEM together rather than only using one versus the other. ... Sufficed it so say, users are more likely to convert when they receive the same message within an organic search as compared to a paid search.”

Transparent ROI measurement can secure budgets, get stakeholders on the same page and optimize search strategies ongoing.

14.1.4 Building a Long-Term Digital Strategy

Quick wins are great, but it's a long-term play that keeps your brand front and center to prospective customers, engages current ones, and sets you up for scalable growth in an increasingly competitive online marketplace. Both SEO and SEM need to be considered long-term investments, not stop-gap solutions to traffic weaknesses.

Foundations of a Long-Term Strategy:

We need to take care of the Technical Health Maintenance at all times. This means we have to do audits and maintenance checks all the time. We want to make sure that the site loads quickly that search engines can find it that it works well on phones and that it follows the rules, for accessibility like the Web Content Accessibility Guidelines, which is also known as WCAG compliance and Technical Health Maintenance. We have to check these things to make sure the Technical Health Maintenance is optimized.

Search results are changing. You need to do more than just get your website to the top of the list. Think about things like featured snippets and knowledge panels. You should also consider video results and image carousels when you are trying to get a good SERP Positioning. This is important, for SERP Positioning.

We need to make sure that our search engine optimization and search engine marketing are working well with our social media, email marketing, influencer campaigns and public relations. This way our company can present a digital face to everyone. We should have a plan for cross-channel integration so that our search engine optimization and search engine marketing are supporting each other and also working well with our social media, email marketing, influencer campaigns and public relations.

That means, our search engine optimization and search engine marketing are a piece of puzzle that perfectly fits with our media, email marketing, influencer campaigns and public relations to show the entire picture of who we are as a company online. By doing this, we can ensure that our business is viewed in a good light – by everyone who encounters us on the Internet.

Education: We also need to establish some rules within the company for how we handle things like ensuring our website is easy for search engines to understand, preventing our pages from competing with each other and maintaining the functionality of our links. We should also educate our teams around search engine optimisation and what we can learn from the data we gather from it." That way, our teams will understand what to do when it comes to the SEO basics and data fluency. They will be able to address things like, SEO hygiene and cannibalization and link integrity."

We also need to watch what's happening with search algorithms and Monitor Trends. We got to employ some tools and kind of look at what's going on in the industry, see what people are searching for out there just like Monitoring Trends and new technologies. That's things like voice search, and what we call search. We need to keep to be on top of Monitoring Trends in order to understand how consumer trends and new technologies are playing out.

With a long-term perspective on SEO and SEM, financial institutions can help protect themselves from the ups and downs of changes in search engine algorithms, solidify their brand position, and withstand the continuous transformation that all aspects of digital technology constantly undergo.

Turning to strategic integration instead of responding to change, brands can predict and direct it.



Figure 14.1

14.2 Case Studies of Successful SEO Campaigns

14.2.1 E-commerce SEO Success Stories

SEO challenges associated with e-commerce sites There are several SEO issues to navigate when it comes to e-commerce websites including duplicate content, faceted navigation and product page optimization. That being said, SEO can be a tremendous growth engine if you approach it strategically. ASOS (a UK fashion e-commerce platform) is a great example of what this can look like in practice, by which I mean rebuilding their organic performance from the ground up through technical SEO, content scale and internationalisation.

ASOS lost traffic as a result of poor mobile experience, slow load times and non-optimised meta-data across thousands of product. The team also ran a full scale technical audit, which brought to light issues such as crawl budget waste, broken internal links and duplicate pages due to dynamic URLs.

To address those problems, ASOS re-engineered their site to lay out canonical tags and create better linking within content.

It's not about traffic; it's about getting high-intent visitors to the correct pages at the optimum time.

14.2.2 B2B SEO Campaign Examples

Business-to-business focused (B2B) SEO is not the same as B2C in many ways, including how you should deal with PPC and paid advertising or how to structure your campaign strategy. The poster child for success in B2B SEO is HubSpot, a CRM and marketing automation service.

The SEO side of HubSpot is actually based in the principles of inbound marketing. They focused on building a

topic cluster model about core services such as "email marketing," "lead nurturing," psychological forces you can use in your marketing campaign, and of course, the sales.weaponsg.com.

automation." Each cluster consisted of one large pillar page supported by multiple blog posts that answered specific questions about the topic. Not only did this build better cross linking, but it also sent signals of subject authority to search engines.

On top of this, HubSpot was putting resources into SEO-based gated content such as whitepapers, case studies, and reports that catered to bottom-of-funnel users. They used schema markup for articles, FAQs, and reviews to increase their presence on rich search results.

Another B2B achievement is Salesforce, who went after industry-oriented landing pages, SEM optimized with high-converting keywords. As a result of matching content to search terms such as "CRM for healthcare" or "sales automation in finance," Salesforce has also grown its presence (organic visibility) among niche enterprise verticals.

These efforts resulted in:

- Huge jumps in SERP domination with your other competitive B2B keywords
- Current lead flow from natural traffic sources
- Increased brand authority through educational content
- Initiated ideation program leading to new product and feature development.

In B2B, SEO is not so much about high volumes of traffic as it is about getting highly qualified leads with focused, relevant and authoritative content.

14.2.3 Local SEO Success Cases

Local SEO is pivotal for SMBs, service providers and location-based businesses. One great example of local SEO in action can be seen with Joe's Auto Repair, a multi-location automotive service company based in the US.

Joe's Auto Repair followed the hyper-local SEO method below:

- Build specific landing pages for each location, created to rank well organically for “auto repair near me” and geo-targeted terms.
- Organizing and validating their Google Business Profile for each location
- Asking customers for feedback and addressing it as soon as it's given
- Local schema markup to enhance visibility for local search results

They began to create local citations on business directories and other relevant local sites, which were trust signals to Google.

- Building position in the market with more confidence of customers and trust because of the reviews shown positive.

Another example could include a dentistry business that concentrated on NAP consistency (Name, Address, Phone Number) throughout the board. By maintaining awareness, causing word of mouth reviews, and publishing locally optimized content (blog posts with titles such as “how to select a dentist in [city]”), they achieved notable increased visibility and appointment holdings.

PPC for local businesses, is the easiest way to get new customers! And The Best Part? They serve as a powerful reminder to smaller companies that they can still win online by being relevant, near and reputable.

14.2.4 Global Brand SEO Campaigns

International brands have some unique SEO considerations, including language targeting, regional indexing and crawling compliance, global domain configurations and content localization. One of the best examples we've seen of global SEO is how Airbnb established their search presence worldwide, in many languages.

Country-subdomain approach (fr.airbnb, en.airbnb) that Airbnb employed (though it does seem to be changing). airbnb.com in France)

Their SEO victories were also the result of:

- All the host descriptions, reviews, etc. created by users on a massive scale

With keyword targeting and content optimization, IKEA increased engagement and conversions across the globe.

These international campaigns demonstrate the significance of technical execution, cultural understanding, and continuous localization for expanding SEO success globally.

Activity: Pulling Campaigns Apart – Real World SEO Success Stories to Learn From
Title: Reverse Engineering SEO Success

For this assignment, students will be placed in groups and provided with a real company (e.g., ASOS, HubSpot, Joe's Auto Repair, Airbnb). Each team will scrutinize the company's SEO performance with readily available tools (such as search results, page structure, content strategy). The objective is to understand what tactics were used, which keywords were pursued and what type of content was created which led to success. One by one each group will share their findings and suggest how similar strategies may be appropriated to a different business environment or industry.

14.3 Latest SEO Trends

14.3.1 Mobile-First Indexing

Mobile-first indexing is how Google crawls and indexes the web as a mobile device would be the primary source. This shift represents the growing power of mobile users in the world of internet. Mobile internet traffic has overtaken desktop usage since few years and it is highly important for businesses to convert them into prospects by getting their website adapted in accordance with the mobile devices, slower connections and user behaviour.

Mobile-first indexing treats the mobile version of a site as the primary version. "A mobile page that doesn't have the same amount of video or image content shouldn't be ranked as high because it is not a great user experience for the searcher," Illyes said. Thus, responsive design, mobile optimized layout and same content access on all devices are the inevitable part of up-to-date SEO.

Key takeaways for mobile-first indexing are:

- Responsive design adherence: Serving the same HTML and content to all devices, but configuring it differently depending on the screen size.
- Content parity: That is, content that is on the desktop must also be available on mobile -- including structured data, metadata and images.
- Touchable: It is not enough to add interactive elements, they also need be spaced appropriately and usable in touchscreen devices.

Mobile-first indexing also impacts crawl quotas and website structure. If you have large or not optimised mobile pages, those can be in the co-ordinal index or content updates might be delayed.

Business must check their mobile version frequently through tools like mobile emulators and do a real user test to maintain performance. Google now predominantly uses the mobile version for indexing and ranking, meaning that mobile SEO is no longer something to think about if you've time to spare; it's a mandatory part of digital marketing strategy, both in terms of performance and user experience as well.

14.3.2 Visual Search Optimisation

What is visual search optimization? Visual search optimization is the act of optimizing images and other visual content featured on your website to be found and turned into action through image-driven searches. As image-based search becomes popular with new platforms like Google Lens, Pinterest Lens and Bing Visual Search now available to consumers, users are getting accustomed to searching for products by taking photos instead of typing in a description.

This is a new trend that makes SEO strategy not about texts only. There are so many really amazing visual search experiences in fashion and home decor, travel and e-commerce. Those are all industries in which how something looks very important. How something looks can have a major impact on what consumers buy. Visual search is particularly helpful in these industries because it allows customers to find what they want by perusing photos. This is particularly so for fashion and home décor and travel and e-commerce, where visual search can matter.

Here are some elements of visual search optimization. These things include:

- **Images, quality:** We need quality images that are very clear and well lighted. And those images also ought to be very razor sharp. Have a lot of detail. This is significant because good visuals help us communicate to others what a product or concept is about, effectively. We want to try and communicate what we mean with the hi-res images.
- **Alt text and descriptive file names:** When we use metadata it assists search engines in determining what is on an image. For instance, if we name a photo "black-leather-armchair. jpg" You might as well call it something other than "IMG_4567. jpg". That way, alt text and descriptive file names such as "black-leather-armchair. jpg" make a difference.
- **Image metadata:** If instead you have schema markup for the images as Product, ImageObject, Recipe as we have it in our website then adding meta data or schema to the pages that contain your images can be somewhat helpful so figure out how those image seo tactics work.

This is called Rich Results for your images. You do this on the pages where you have images that're about products or recipes or just regular images. This way your images become eligible, for Rich Results.

- Image sitemaps: These are really helpful for search engines because they make it easier for them to find and list images the ones that use JavaScript to load the content. Image sitemaps are important, for images.
- On-page relevance is important. Images should be close to the text that's about them. They also need a caption that says what the image is about. This helps people who look at the website. It also helps search engines like Google understand what the image is. The caption should describe the image so that people and search engines know what the image is showing. This is good for images because it makes them more useful to people and, to search engines.

People use something called search when they shop online. This is also related to ecommerce seo. Now people want to take a picture of something they want to buy and see things that look like it. They do not want to type words into a search box. Visual search is getting better because computers are getting better at recognizing pictures. This means that people will be able to search for things in a way. Visual search will keep getting better as image recognition in computers improves. Visual search is really important, for ecommerce seo.

Visual SEO strategy needs to be more hybrid now: Technical optimization ON & Design quality also ON. When investing in visual content, brands that fail to optimize are missing out on highly targeted search traffic from image-led discovery.

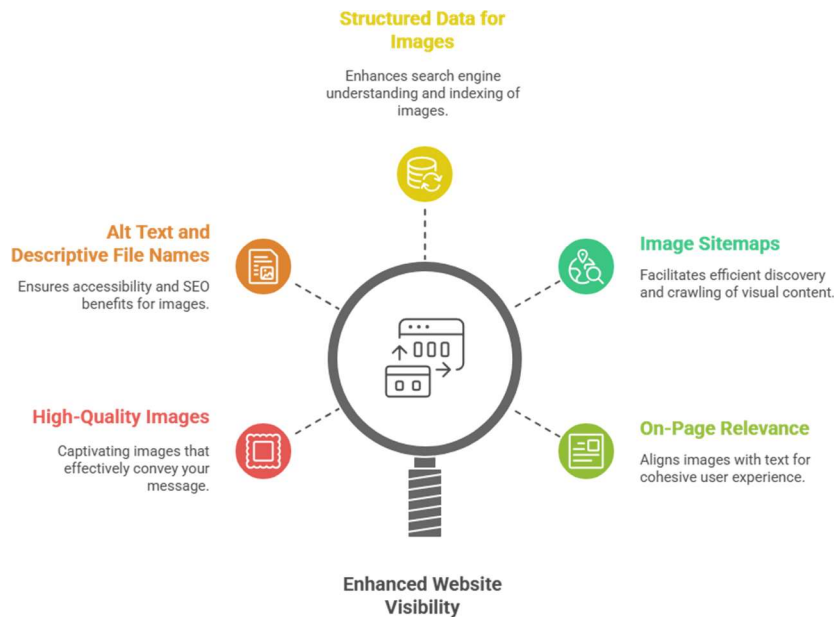


Figure 14.2

14.3.3 Hyperlocal SEO

That means that smaller companies serving a relatively contained area are able to get value out of hyperlocal targeting when going up against their larger rivals.

The key things to focus on in hyperlocal SEO are:

- **Local landing pages:** Developing local pages that are optimized with all of the necessary local keywords such as details, hours of operation and maps.
- **Google Business Profile (GBP) -** detailed descriptions, service areas and updating your GBP frequently to promote local visibility.

NAP consistency: Consistent Name, Address, and Phone information on all citations and directories.

- **Local citations:** “Citations,” or mentions of a business’s name, address and phone number, from other local news sites, community blogs and business associations increase domain relevance for localized search.
- **Customer reviews:** Requesting and responding to reviews on local sites / platforms help with brand reputation, and impacts the local pack rankings.

) **Geo-tagging images:** This is particularly useful for mobile SEO, as this adds location metadata to photos and increasing local search relevance.

Hyperlocal SEO is especially important for service industries, offline businesses (retail shops), real estate and health/medical services where the user's purchase decisions depend on proximity.

Did You Know?

“Mobile searches containing ‘near me’ have grown over 500% in the past few years, Google reports. Today, hyperlocal SEO has become a fundamental part of doing business for service-based and location-focused businesses to get found in map packs and local-based results.”

With development of voice search, mobile search and real-time tracking for location, hyper local SEO will grow to be more micro-targeted and personalized, providing businesses with opportunities to dominate their service area.

14.3.4 Voice Search Evolution

Search by voice is no longer a novelty, but an everyday interaction with devices. The rise of cleverbot assistants like Google Assistant, Alexa and Siri which engage through bigger volumes of intent rich conversational queries. Voice searches are longer, more deliberate and asked in a conversational tone as opposed to traditional keyword searches.

Voice queries to search, include:

- “What is the best pizza restaurant open right now near me?”
- “How do you naturally get rid of fruit flies?”
- Localized optimization: Voice search searches are often performed for local businesses, which means the best-optimized local SEO results get in voice.
- High load speeds and mobile-friendly: voice search-enabled devices require immediate answers; slow websites will be left in the dust.

Also, schema markup offers structured data that is easier for voice assistants to understand. For example, you can boost your odds of getting voice answers when optimized questions by using FAQPage or HowTo schemas.

The user will have a conversation with your website / business, but search decides will soon reward businesses/website which can enter into dialogue at the higher level of spoken search. Enterprises are going to need to learn how to write in plain English and think for users just as much as they structure content to be read by machines.

14.4 Preparing for the Future of Search

14.4.1 AI + Human Synergy in SEO

When you are looking for something on the internet you need to have a plan to find what you want. This is where content searches and strategy come together. To really make this work you need to use intelligence tools and also have people who are smart and can think critically. This is important for search engine optimization, which is called SEO for short. The machines that help us with this are not good enough to do everything on their own at not yet. There are some intelligence models, like topic clustering that can help with this. Content searches are a part of this and strategy is important too so you need to use artificial intelligence tools and human intelligence together to make it all work. Artificial intelligence models, like the ones I mentioned before are useful for things, like topic clustering. This is all part of content searches and strategy.

Algorithms and predictive key word tools and auto-generating content machines can easily find search opportunities. Create content and show where the optimization mark was missed.

Human strategists have domain knowledge and brand voice and ethical judgment and creative flair.

Achieving synergy involves:

- * Using algorithms and predictive key word tools and auto-generating content machines to find search opportunities

- * Letting human strategists use their domain knowledge and brand voice and ethical judgment and creative flair to create content

- * Making sure algorithms and predictive key word tools and auto-generating content machines work well with human strategists to get the best results.

- Research with the help of Artificial Intelligence like going through a lot of data and figuring out what is popular can find things to search for faster than a person can do it. This is because Artificial Intelligence can do things, like process datasets and make trend predictions, which helps it uncover new search queries more quickly.

- We need to check that the topics found by the intelligence system are what our brand is really, about and what the people we are trying to reach are looking for and that we are talking about them at the right time.

14.4.2 Predictive SEO and Personalisation

If we can figure out what will be popular before it happens we can get our websites to show up first in search results. The important parts of SEO include:

- * analytics
- * user behavior
- * machine learning

Predictive SEO helps us guess what people will search for next. This means we can get a head start and make our websites show up near the top of search results. Predictive SEO is, like being able to see into the future. We use SEO to stay one step ahead of everyone else.

- The people, at this company do trend predictions. They plan for the future. They want to help you find threats to your website before these threats take over the search engine results pages. They use a combination of intelligence and old data to do this. They have trend predictions and future planning to help you with this.

When you plan your content ahead of time you make sure the editorial roadmap matches what the audience is going to need. This is what I call content planning for the editorial roadmap, which is really, about using the editorial roadmap to anticipate what the audience needs from the editorial roadmap.

- The website does personalization. This means the website changes the content or experience, for the user. It does this based on what the user does what the user likes or where the user is. This helps when the user is searching for something and their search intent changes. Dynamic personalization helps with this by changing things for the user. The user gets an experience because of dynamic personalization.

Marketers can plan ahead with SEO. They do not have to wait for something to happen and then react to it. Instead they can get ready for what people will need. They can make changes to the content calendars and the resources and digital assets that they have. This way predictive SEO helps marketers to be ready for what's coming. They can make sure they have what people will need. That is a big help to them and, to the people who are searching for things online.

14.4.3 Ethical and Sustainable SEO Practices

At a time when search engine optimization is becoming more automated and based on a lot of information we really need some guidance. This is because search engine optimization that is good and fair is what matters now. Search engine optimization should be, about being sustainable focusing on quality rather than just a lot of stuff making sure users have a good experience and getting good results in the long run. Some important things to think about with search engine optimization include:

- Fair AI use, preventing bias or manipulation within automated content or targeting.
- When it comes to personalization we should be honest with users. We need to tell users that the results they see are chosen by intelligence.. These results are picked because of the information that the artificial intelligence has about the users. We have to be clear that the artificial intelligence is using the users data to decide what results to show them. This way users know that the artificial intelligence is looking at their data to personalize the results, for the users.
- And of course good old fashioned Content Neutrality is really important. It protects us from automated content that's not good and that can trick people or hurt the trust people have in a brand, which is Content Neutrality. Content Neutrality is what keeps quality content from bad automated content.
- Resourceful, server-side compression of the site's infrastructure to minimize energy use and facilitate accessibility.

Ethical and sustainable SEO is about ensuring optimisation works for users and society, not just algorithms.14.4.4 The Future of GEO (Generative Engine Optimization)

This approach is part of the Generative Engine Optimization (GEO) response to AI-based search systems – like ChatGPT, Google’s Search Generative Experience and AI assistants – that produce answers instead of results links. GEO involves:

- Formatting content for AI consumption — headings that make sense to a neural network, bullet points and tables and schema markup.
- Offering succinct, factual and semantically enriched answers that AI can effectively extract and cite.
- Technical Accessibility –speed up page load time and reduced use of JavaScript to enable AI crawling.
- Establishing brand consistency in web presence to build credibility in AI-generated responses.

GEO refocuses visibility goals from ranking position to answer inclusion, citation, and representation in AI-generated results.

Knowledge Check: Preparing for the Future of Search

1. What defines a successful AI-human synergy in SEO?
 - a) Full automation
 - b) Human oversight
 - c) Keyword stuffing
 - d) Random content
2. Predictive SEO is primarily about:
 - a) Tracking current trends
 - b) Forecasting future search demand
 - c) Paid advertising
 - d) Manual audits
3. Which is a hallmark of ethical SEO?

- a) Hidden text
 - b) Biased targeting
 - c) Transparency in personalization
 - d) Cloaking content
4. GEO focuses on optimizing for:
- a) Click-through rates
 - b) AI-generated answer inclusion
 - c) Display ads
 - d) Email open rates
5. Sustainable SEO considers:
- a) Only rankings
 - b) Only speed
 - c) Energy efficiency and integrity
 - d) Only authority

14.5 Summary

⊞ Developing SEO and SEM into a business strategy uses digital presence in line with revenue and growth objectives.

⊞ SEO is crucial to lowering customer acquisition costs and maximizing organic brand authority.

⊞ SEM : targeted real time visibility SEM makes possible and specially relevant for timed campaign to get absolute precise targeting and instant visibility § Intent based advertising inclusions or exclusions – Quick, easy, convenient & trustworthy.

⊞ To be successful, SEO needs a combination of technical optimization, content relevance and search intent matching.

⊞ E-commerce SEO is more about product findability, automation at scale and mobile performance.

- ⌘ B2B SEO focuses on thought leadership, collections of related topics and turning leads from educational content.
- ⌘ Optimized local listing, NAP consistency, and community involvement are the basis of Local SEO success.
- ⌘ Visual and voice search are emerging segments, where content formatting should adapt to a different types of formats.
- ⌘ Hyperlocal SEO serves a particular area or location and makes use of proximity to get the foot traffic and local conversions.
- ⌘ About Content: The next generation of SEO will involve the union between AI and human creativity, values and strategic vision.
- ⌘ Predictive SEO enables marketers to predict demand, plan content in advance and personalize experience.
- ⌘ Generative Engine Optimization (GEO) is a new frontier: optimizing for the AI generated results.

14.6 Key Terms

1 Topic Clusters: A content strategy in which a single “pillar” page acts as the main hub of content for an overarching topic and multiple content pages that are related to this same topic link back to the pillar page and to each other.

NAP Consistency – This is when the Name, Address and Phone of a business are consistent in various online directories.

Hyperlocal SEO – This refers to an SEO campaign that attempts to specifically target a group of people in an extremely localised region, such as a few blocks or even houses.

Featured Snippets – Abr. answers at the top of Google search results, generated from a webpage

Core Web Vitals – These are Google’s new user experience metrics which include load time, interactivity, and visual stability.

Voice Search SEO – Writing content to show up in voice inquiry search results by AI Assistants.

Predictive SEO – Analytics and AI being used to predict the future and present for search.

Generative Engine Optimization (GEO) – Writing content to appear in AI-generated search results vs tradition searches.

Schema Markup – There data on a web page designed to help search engines interpret the context of information contained on it.

SEO ROI – A way of calculating the return on investment on your SEO activity.

AI-Human Synergy – How machine-intelligence and human ingenuity can work together in digital marketing.

White Hat SEO – Relates to ethical and value based SEO strategies which have been developed over time in order to deliver long lasting results.

14.7 Descriptive Questions

What is the significance of having SEO conform with a business's overall marketing strategy?

The struggles and remedies for deploying a memorable B2B SEO strategy Time to generate leads? Byzantine B2B sales cycle huh, chief?

Contrast between Voice Search and Visual Search as SEO progresses.

Explain how predictive SEO can assist with future content strategy.

What are some common components of ethical and sustainable SEO?

How to use hyperlocal SEO for small businesses to become visible in the search engines and attract local customers.

How does AI change the future of SEO and what we can do as marketers?

Summarize some characteristic differences between classic SEO and Generative Engine Optimization (GEO).

14.8 References

1. Google Search Central, Search Engine Optimization (SEO) Starter Guide.
2. Moz. (2023). SEO Trends and Predictions Report.
3. HubSpot. (2023). The State of Inbound Marketing.
4. Search Engine Journal. (2024). Voice and Visual Search Optimisation.
5. Backlinko. (2023). The Definitive Guide to Local SEO.
6. Gartner. (2024). Future of AI in Marketing and Search Strategy.

Answer Key to Knowledge Check (14.4)

1. b) Human oversight
2. b) Forecasting future search demand
3. c) Transparency in personalization
4. b) AI-generated answer inclusion
5. c) Energy efficiency and integrity

14.9 Case Study – Example: How Airbnb and Shopify Changed Up SEO for New Trends Introduction

As people started searching for things in ways like using voice commands and looking for pictures and with the help of artificial intelligence assistants two big companies, Airbnb and Shopify changed their search engine optimization plan to get ready, for what is coming next. The way Airbnb and Shopify are doing this shows that they are flexible and able to adjust their search engine optimization to stay on top of the internet for a time.

Problem 1: Problem of Visibility in Decaying AIs Searching for Resources

Googles Search Generative Experience and tools like ChatGPT are changing the way people search for things. This is having an effect on companies like Airbnb and Shopify. They have noticed that fewer people are going directly to their websites from search results when they look for the company name or a type of product. For example when people search for Airbnb or a specific type of shop, on Shopify they are not going to the company website much as they used to. Airbnb and Shopify are seeing this change happen.

Solution:

Both were companies that took the fork of Generative Engine Optimization. These companies used Generative Engine Optimization to do things. Generative Engine Optimization was a part of what they did.

- Airbnb changed the way it shows information by using a kind of HTML and it also uses bullet points and gives straight answers to questions that people often ask when they

travel so that these answers show up when computers generate responses, to questions.

- Shopify added some things to their website like frequently asked questions and special boxes that explain what words mean. They also made sure the headings, on their pages are easy for computers to understand. This was done so that when people use assistants to search for things Shopifys website is more likely to show up in the results.

This change increased their visibility on unusual search engine results pages and voice assistant responses. The change really helped with search engine results pages. It also helped with voice assistant answers.

Problem 2: Scalability Issue of Personalized Content Among Different Markets

So it turned out that Shopify was having a problem with much content in categories that were very competitive like ecommerce platforms for specific industries. Shopify was finding it hard to stand out in these areas. Similarly Airbnb was having a time managing all the local travel information for smaller cities it was just too much for Airbnb to handle. This was an issue, for both Shopify and Airbnb.

Solution:

Two of the brands did something called SEO. They used this thing called SEO to do some work. The brands that did this were trying to get better at Search Engine Optimization so they used SEO.

- Shopify leveraged A.I. to find new industry verticals on the rise (like pet care or coaching services), and set up custom landing pages before its competitors.
- Airbnb did something cool with their website. They made pages for different regions. These pages are in the language and they have fun things to do in that area. They also have guides that tell you more about the place you want to visit. Airbnb made these

pages using information from people who use their site and what they think people will be searching for. This is what makes the pages on Airbnb so personal and helpful, for people who are planning a trip.

This offered the opportunity of first-mover advantage and better engagement with the new user segments. Problem 3: How to satisfy ethical and sustainable content requirements.

The sudden spike in computer-generated imagery led to a reassessment of content authenticity by consumers. And both companies had to find the right balance between automation and trust.

Solution:

They adopted Ethical SEO Guidelines:

- Airbnb tagged the output of AI-assisted content with author bios, clear sourcing and transparency tags.
- Shopify revealed its AI use on blog content, as well as highlighting feedback loops with users to improve the quality of content.

These initiatives increased content credibility, decreased bounce rates and satisfied increasing demand for transparency.

Reflective Questions

How did Airbnb adapt content for GEO and what other travel companies can learn from this?

How did Shopify leverage predictive SEO to dominate in new markets?

What exactly did they do to be able to grow AI-powered SEO while being ethical?

Why is transparency of content becoming essential in the era of generative AI?

What can smaller companies duplicate from Airbnb and Shopify's GEO playbook?

Conclusion

In the world of Airbnb and Shopify, what I'm pinning seems to me the best way of blowing up organic traffic is a small nugget that's reflected in a minor modern change to SEO — it's not about following the algorithm, but engineering an experience. And this was way ahead of schedule in future-proofing these brands — as in preparing for AI's impact on search — by leaning heavily forward into predictive intelligence and ethical rigor. Their journey provides a template for any business and TMT sector seeking to remain relevant in the next age of search.